Working Paper and Preprint
No. 92/4

WORLD INVENTORY OF SOIL EMISSIONS

IDENTIFICATION AND GEOGRAPHIC QUANTIFICATION OF SOIL FACTORS AND SOIL PROCESSES THAT CONTROL FLUXES OF CO_2, CH_4 AND N_2O, AND THE HEAT AND MOISTURE BALANCE

(Draft background paper for discussion)

N.H. Batjes & E.M. Bridges
June 1992

INTERNATIONAL SOIL REFERENCE AND INFORMATION CENTRE
sponsored by
NETHERLANDS NATIONAL RESEARCH PROGRAMME ON GLOBAL AIR
POLLUTION AND CLIMATE CHANGE

- Draft background paper for discussion -

WORLD INVENTORY OF SOIL EMISSIONS

IDENTIFICATION AND GEOGRAPHIC QUANTIFICATION OF SOIL FACTORS AND SOIL PROCESSES THAT CONTROL FLUXES OF CO_2, CH_4 AND N_2O, AND THE HEAT AND MOISTURE BALANCE

N.H. Batjes & E.M. Bridges

(June 1992)

INTERNATIONAL SOIL REFERENCE AND INFORMATION CENTRE
sponsored by
NETHERLANDS NATIONAL RESEARCH PROGRAMME ON GLOBAL AIR POLLUTION AND CLIMATE CHANGE

Preface

Terrestrial ecosystems are important sources and sinks of a number of radiatively active gases, such as water vapour, carbon dioxide, methane, nitrous oxide and nitric oxide, and as such play an important role in the so-called "greenhouse effect". The soil conditions and chemical, physical and biological processes which regulate the global emission and absorption of "greenhouse gases" in soils are not yet fully understood. As a contribution to increasing the understanding of these processes, and their interlinkage, the International Soil Reference and Information Centre (ISRIC) initiated a project on "Geographic Quantification of Soil Factors and Soil Processes that Control Fluxes of Greenhouse Gases". This 3-year project, which is presently being referred to as "World Inventory of Soil Emissions" (WISE), started in September 1991. It is a follow-up to the International Conference on "Soils and the Greenhouse Effect", and is carried out within the framework of the Netherlands National Research Programme on Global Air Pollution and Climate Change (NOP-MLK Project No. 851039).

The objective of WISE is to arrive at a geographic quantification of the soil conditions and soil processes that regulate: emissions of the greenhouse gases carbon dioxide (CO_2), methane (CH_4) and nitrous oxide (N2O); the hydrological cycle and the surface energy balance at the global level. First, the relevant soil and terrain factors and processes will be assessed through a literature study. Subsequently, it will be assessed if and how information on these soil and terrain factors can be derived from the 1:5 M FAO/Unesco Soil Map of the World, published in the period 1971-1981, which is to be "updated" with recent information on soil conditions where appropriate. Models for estimating global emissions of methane, carbon dioxide and nitrous oxide gases from soils, and their data requirements, will also be identified. The findings of these desktop activities will be presented and discussed during a small international workshop in August 1992.

Subsequent to the initial workshop a global soil database with a resolution of 1/2° longitude by 1/2° latitude will be compiled at ISRIC in close consultation with relevant agencies such as the Food and Agricultural Organization (FAO) of the United Nations. The ultimate database will be used to make a world-wide inventory of natural wetlands which are major sources of methane together with irrigated rice lands. It is then proposed to refine calculations of global emissions of methane from natural wetlands, and possibly also from paddy rice soils, using WISE and ancillary databases on climate, land use and field-emission data.

The present report forms the background document for the WISE workshop. *Comments and suggestions for improving the preliminary text are welcomed, and will be acknowledged.*

Acknowledgements

The organisers of the workshop are grateful for the sponsorship by the Netherlands National Research Programme on Global Air Pollution and Climate Change (NOP-MLK, Project No. 851039).

Special thanks are expressed to Lex Bouwman for critically reading Chapters 2 and 3, and for providing us with copies of recent papers on the subject matter.

The assistance of M-B. Clabaut in getting Chapter 5 ready for printing is gratefully acknowledged.

CONTENTS

Chapter 1 Introduction

Chapter 2 Methane

Chapter 6 The WISE database: proposed structure and attribute data

Chapter 1 Introduction

N.H. Batjes & E.M. Bridges

1.1 The greenhouse effect and climatic change

The gaseous composition of the atmosphere has changed markedly and rapidly during the last decades mainly through increased industrial emissions, fossil fuel combustion, widespread deforestation and related burning of biomass, as well as changes in land use and management practices. While most of these anthropogenic activities have resulted in increased emissions of naturally occurring radiatively active trace gases (e.g., CO_2, CH_4, N_2O), popularly known as "greenhouse gases", several industrial activities have produced new trace gases not occurring naturally in the atmosphere (Figure 1.1). These include the synthetic chlorofluorocarbons (CFCs) which, in the lower atmosphere trap heat and in the upper part of the troposphere cause chemical reactions leading to the degradation of the ozone layer, which protects the Earth's surface from harmful solar radiation. While CO_2 is chemically inert in the atmosphere, this is not the case for CH_4, N_2O and CFCs. The role of the latter gases in the photochemistry of the atmosphere has recently been reviewed by Levine (1989) and Bouwman (1990 p. 25-32).

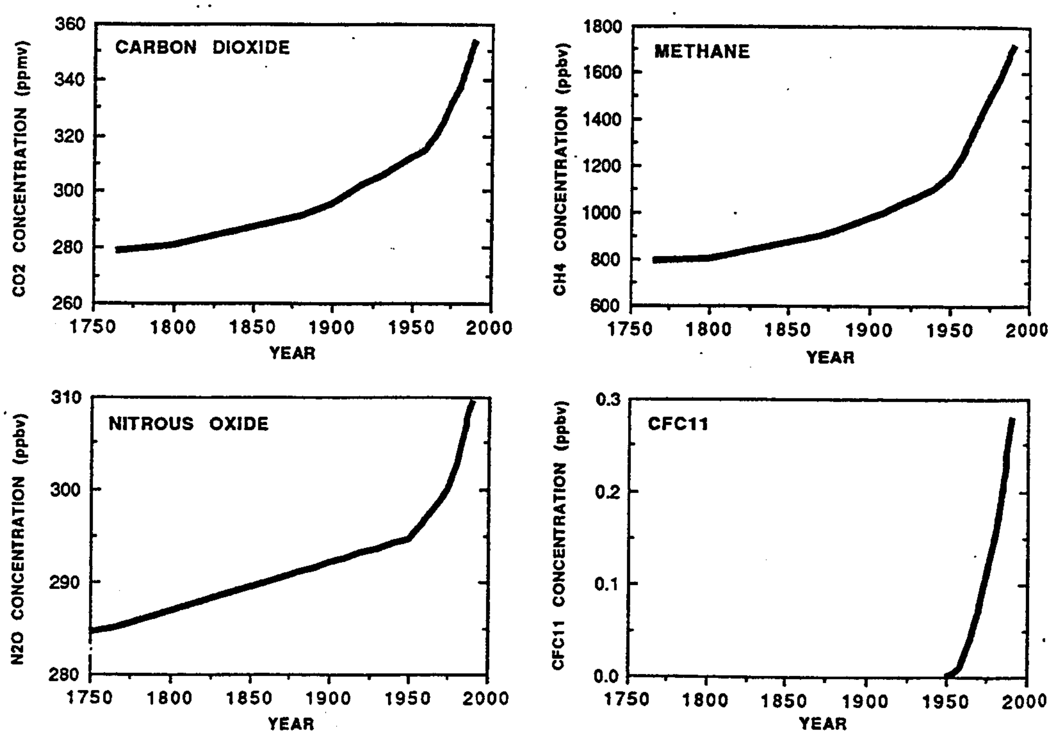


Figure 1.1 Increases in atmospheric concentrations of CO_2, CH_4, N_2O and CFCs since the year 1750 (Source: IPCC 1990 p. 16).

Biogenic trace gases contribute to the so-called "greenhouse effect" or "global warming" in that they are fairly transparent to the incoming shortwave solar radiation, but absorb and reflect longwave infrared radiation emitted from the warm surface of the Earth. Thereby part of the energy associated with the longwave radiation, reflected by the Earth's surface and lower atmosphere, is trapped within the atmosphere. This keeps the Earth's surface temperature at a higher average value than it would have been if the trace gas concentrations were low. In 1896 Arrhenius calculated that water vapour and carbon dioxide concentrations in the atmosphere have caused the Earth's temperature to increase from an average of -18 °C to +15 °C, a net change of +33 °C. If there were no trace gases, the longwave radiation re-emitted from the Earth's surface would largely be lost into space resulting in a cold, inhospitable globe. Alternatively, increasing concentrations of radiatively active trace gases in the atmosphere currently lead to an appreciable, *enhanced* warming of the globe (see ORNL 1990 p. 194). Due to this additional warming, the concentration of water vapour, the main greenhouse gas, will increase. This will further enhance the process of global warming. Contrary to CO_2, CH_4 and N_2O, the concentration of water vapour is determined internally within the climate system so that, on a global scale, it is not affected by human sources and sinks (see IPCC 1990).

The "greenhouse effect" is apparent to many climatologists through the concurrent rise in temperature and atmospheric CO_2 levels (*cf* Idso 1988). Between the 1760s and 1990s the atmospheric CO_2 concentration increased by about 74 ppmv, while in the same period mean global temperature increased by about 0.7-0.8 °C (Esser 1990). This would seem to suggest atmospheric CO_2 level and temperature are correlated, but as Esser (1990) observes "correlations never establish causal relationships". Similarly, Idso (1988) pointed out that the recent global warming is not necessarily caused by the increase of CO_2 or other greenhouse gases in the atmosphere. Idso stated that if "the temperature trend is viewed in a broader historical context the warming could be nothing but the natural expression of the Earth's recovery after the Little Ice Age (1550-1850 A.D.)". Alternatively, Hansen *et al.* (1990) studied the extent to which global warming might be moderated by variations in solar radiation and atmospheric dust (aerosols). They conclude that solar variability will not counteract global warming, and that despite uncertainties in the effects of dust, greenhouse gas emissions must be reduced if the climate and environment are to remain "bearable" for biota. With reference to analyses of 1400 year old tree-ring records of Scots pine (*Pinus sylvestris* L.), Briffer *et al.* (1990) concluded that "it will not be possible to detect a regional greenhouse effect (with 95% confidence) until around 2020". Similarly, the IPCC (1990) working group recently concluded that an "unequivocal detection of the enhanced greenhouse effect from observations is not likely to occur for a decade or more".

In spite of the various views on the subject, as portrayed in the above examples, most natural scientists agree that global climatic changes related to the greenhouse effect are liable to occur. As the possible consequences thereof are likely to have profound environmental and socio-economic repercussions, the controlling processes need to be elucidated further. The desire to meet this need is reflected in the large array of studies that currently are devoted to understanding the possible influence of global climate warming on processes, and their dynamics, in the oceans, sea-ice-caps, terrestrial ecosystems and atmosphere (e.g., Arnold *et al.* 1990; Scharpenseel *et al.* 1990, IGBP 1990). For instance, there can be an associated release of pollutants previously believed to be held firmly in soils and sediments (e.g., Batjes & Bridges 1991; Stigliani 1988), widespread human-induced soil degradation (Oldeman *et al.* 1991) and changes in land use and sea levels (e.g., Brouwer *et al.* 1991, Parry 1990), thereby ultimately limiting the carrying capacity of Earth for biota.

The above problems often transcend national boundaries. Policy makers increasingly recognise the need for internationally accepted, abatement measures to ensure a sustainable and equitable use of the environment. However, there still seems to be no consensus about how this objective should be achieved (e.g., 1992 United Nations Conference on Environment and Development, UNCED). Well known international programmes adressing global change include the International Geosphere-Biosphere Programme (e.g., IGBP 1988 & 1990) and World Climate Research Programme (WCRP). Closely related national programmes include the Terrestrial Initiative in Global Environmental Research (TIGER) of the United Kingdom, and the Netherlands National Research Programme on Global Air Pollution and Climate Change (NOP-MLK).

The atmospheric concentrations of trace gases such as methane and nitrous oxide are increasing more rapidly than is the case for CO_2 so that their relative importance in modifying climate is changing (Bolin *et al.* 1986). Global concentration increases of greenhouse gases over the last 200 years are about 20% for CO_2, 8% for N_2O and over 200% for methane (Lorius, 1988). The heat absorption potential of these gases depends on factors such as their relative concentration in the atmosphere, infrared absorption profile and atmospheric life-time, and as a consequence it varies widely between these gases. An additional molecule of CH_4, for example, will trap about 32 times as much heat as an incremental CO_2 molecule would, while this is about 150 times that for a molecule of N_2O (Esser 1990). After 20 years a molecule of CH_4 is 63 times more potent than a molecule of CO_2, decreasing to 21 times after 100 years and 9 times after 500 years (see JEA/EPA 1990 p. 2). In the case of man-made CFCs, differences are even more pronounced; an incremental molecule of CFC traps about 20,000 times more heat than a CO_2 molecule (Esser 1990). Since the atmospheric life times of CO_2, CH_4, N_2O and CFCs are relatively long (Table 1.1), this means that increased atmospheric concentrations of these trace gases - and their atmospheric derivatives - may markedly affect climate and thereby biodiversity on Earth. It also means that abatement measures aimed at stabilizing or reducing atmospheric concentrations of the so-called "long-lived" greenhouse gases (i.e., CO_2, N_2O, CFCs) can first have a noticeable effect on a time scale in the order of several decades to centuries, as opposed to within decades for methane. Stabilization of the concentrations of the "long lived" trace gases at their present levels would require at least a 60% reduction in their current anthropogenic emissions, whereas this would be 15 to 20% for methane (Table 1.1).

Table 1.1 Atmospheric life time, pre-industrial and current concentrations, and yearly average increases in atmospheric concentrations of CO_2, CH_4, N_2O and CFCs, and reductions in anthropogenic emissions necessary to stabilize these concentrations at their current levels (Adapted from IPCC 1990).

	CO_2	CH_4	N_2O	CFC-11	CFC-12
Atmospheric lifetime (yr)	50-200 yr	10 yr	150 yr	65 yr	130 yr
Pre-industrial conc. (1750-1800)	280 a	0.8 a	288 b	0 c	0 c
Present day levels (1990)	353 a	1.72 a	310 b	280 c	484 c
Current average yearly increase	0.5 %	0.9 %	0.25 %	4 %	4 %
Reduction in emissions required for stabilization at current levels	> 60 %	15-20 %	70-80 %	70-75 %	70-85 %

Note: Concentrations specified as: a = ppmv = parts per 10^6 by volume; b = ppbv = parts per 10^9 by volume; c = pptv = parts per 10^{12} by volume.

The accumulated greenhouse forcing for the periods 1850-1957 and 1958-1989 is 0.87 and 1.17 W m^{-2}, respectively (Figure 1.2). This forcing may increase to 4.6 W m^{-2} by the year 2025 if the "business-as-usual" scenario of IPCC (1990 p. 45) is used, which clearly reflects the need for appropriate emission abatement measures now. During the period 1850-1957 CO_2 and CH_4 dominated, but since then there has been a clear increase in the importance of CFCs and N_2O on greenhouse forcing. Increased concentrations of troposheric and stratospheric O_3 may be responsible for 10 % of the total forcing since pre-industrial times (IPCC *op cit.*). As CO_2, CH_4 and N_2O are to a large extent associated with sources in the biosphere it is important to evaluate the possible biotic and abiotic sources and sinks of these trace gases in the biosphere. In the present study we shall limit ourselves to terrestrial ecosystems.

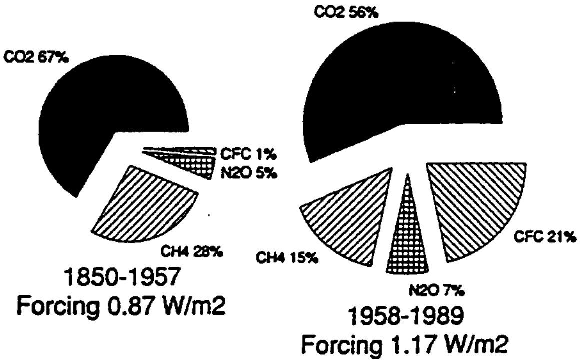


Figure 1.2 Accumulated greenhouse forcings for the periods 1850-1957 and 1958-1989 (Source Matson & Ojima 1990 p. 1).

1.2 Soil mapping and classification

Just over 100 years ago, soil science emerged as a separate scientific study in its own right. This was mainly the result of studies in Russia and the United States, although an early interest in soils was not confined to these countries, as for example, The Netherlands, Britain, Hungary, Germany and many other countries were following their own more localised interests at this time. It was in Russia, particularly as a result of the work of Dokuchaev, that the *soil profile* with it different *horizons* was recognised as the unique expression of the soil forming processes which operate on the surface of the earth. Dokuchaev also identified, but did not quantify, a number of *soil forming factors* which provided the overall parameters for soil formation; these included climate, vegetation, relief and the age of the land.

Until the time of the World War Two, subsequent workers attempted to provide soil maps, not only of their own countries, but also of the whole world. The first of these appeared at the end of the nineteenth century, when sufficient information had been gathered to enable the first soil maps of the world to be compiled. These were mostly in the category of derived maps, as little direct soil information was available to be included, they were mostly deductive maps using climate or vegetation as a surrogate for first-hand soil information. Such an approach led to the concept of *Great Soil Groups* which dominated soil geography until the 1960s.

Throughout the first half of the twentieth century, soil knowledge increased greatly, both in understanding the formative processes which operated and also in the geographical distribution of different soil types. This took place as a result of the former colonial powers attempting to understand the environment and increase the productivity of their overseas possessions. The knowledge gained only partly confirmed the earlier concept of great soil groups, and so in 1960 at the instigation of the International Society of Soil Science, FAO in conjunction with Unesco, began the development of a new Soil Map of the World (FAO/Unesco 1971-1981). This map, at a scale of 1:5 M, was intended to be a first appraisal of the world's soil resources, assembled on a uniform basis. It was meant to provide a scientific basis for the transfer of knowledge and experience between different areas with similar environments and to provide a generally accepted framework of soil classification throughout the world. Published between 1971 and 1981, the FAO-Unesco Soil Map of the World largely achieved these objectives, and in the last decade has come to be an invaluable document for soil scientists and others to use. Since the work on the compilation of this map was begun, much new information has become available, and parts of the original map are known to lack the desired accuracy. Consequently, a revised version of the classification was issued jointly by FAO and ISRIC in 1988, and proposals have been drawn up to revise certain areas of the Soil Map of the World. This has already occurred in East Africa, and it is hoped that funding will become available to deal with other areas , such as the Amazonian area of South America in the near future.

The FAO-Unesco Soil Map of the World has retained many of the traditional names given to soils, but has combined these with concepts of diagnostic horizons and properties which bring to the classification system an element of quantification and mutual exclusivity. (Officially, the system is a map legend not a classification, but it is widely used as a means of comparison of soils from different parts of the world). Differentiating criteria for diagnostic horizons and properties are the natural properties of the soil itself, defined in terms of measurable and observable properties. Certain "clusters" of these properties have been selected for the definition of diagnostic horizons; many of these properties are relevent to soil use and have a value for practical applications. Hence, the units employed on the Soil Map of the World have a predictive value, not only for the use of the soil, but for many other purposes as well.

The twenty-eight soil units of the revised legend of the Soil Map of the World (FAO 1988) may be separated into eight groups based on common geographical and evolutionary backgrounds:

Group 1 includes Fluvisols, Gleysols, Regosols and Leptosols, soils which are not associated with any specific zonal climatic conditions of formation.

Group 2 comprises soils the formation of which is strongly conditioned by the nature of the parent material. These are the Arenosols, Andosols and Vertisols.

Group 3 has only one soil unit, the Cambisols, representing a range of soil formation more strongly expressed in other soils.

Group 4 includes those soils which possess accumulations of salts, Calcisols, Gypsisols, Solonetzes and Solonchaks.

Group 5 has soils where an accumulation of base-saturated organic matter occurs; these are the Kastanozems, Chernozems, Phaeozems and Greyzems.

Group 6 includes soils with accumulations of clay or sesquioxides and organic matter in the subsurface horizons. These are the Luvisols, Planosols, Podzoluvisols and Podzols.

Group 7 is dominant in the tropics and sub-tropics, where weathering is intense, and includes Lixisols, Acrisols, Alisols, Nitisols, Ferralsols and Plinthosols.

Group 8 is confined to the Histosols, organic soils in contrast to the mineral soils of all the other groups.

1.3 Role of soils

Soils are an essential part of natural ecosystems, and are necessary for the growth of food, fibre and timber crops. While until recently it was assumed that they could endlessly absorb contaminants, it is now generally accepted that "loading" by some chemical compounds has become such that it is disrupting the natural functions and productivity of soils. Currently, almost 12% of World soils have been degraded by chemical deterioration. Additionally, 56% of World soils have been degraded by water erosion, 28% by wind erosion, and 4% by physical degradation (for more details see Oldeman *et al.* 1991). Since soils form the essential link between the inanimate geosphere and the living biosphere, it is of crucial importance that measures to protect soils from further physical and chemical deterioration be implemented rapidly. In recent years, it is also increasingly recognized that soils and their biota play a significant role in the so-called "greenhouse effect". Consequently, in a recent discussion paper, Greenland (1991) wrote soil scientists must "provide answers to questions such as what proportion of the greenhouse gases - CO_2, CH_4, N_2O, NO - entering the upper atmosphere are derived from the soil, how the amounts evolved are affected by land use, and how far soils act as a sink for those gases and for gases derived from other sources". While many of these topics have been the subject of discussion during the recent international conference on "Soils and the Greenhouse Effect" (Bouwman 1990), as well as other scientific meetings (e.g., Bolin *et al.* 1986, Trabalka *et al.* 1986, Matson & Ojima 1990), there remain significant areas of uncertainty in our current knowledge. This applies, for instance, to the chemical, physical and biological processes which control the production or absorption of the respective trace gases in a particular ecosystem, the possible interactions between these processes (synergism or antagonism), and their ultimate effect on the rates and magnitudes of the associated gas fluxes. Additional difficulties are associated with the measurement of trace gas fluxes in the field, and subsequent extrapolation or "scaling up" of these values to regional and global scales through modelling (see Bouwman 1990, Rosswall *et al.* 1988). Georeferenced databases can provide the "geographic" framework for "scaling up" results of flux measurements and fundamental process studies to ecosystems at the global level (e.g., Bliss 1990, IGBP 1990, Matthews 1990, Moore III *et al.* 1989, Oldeman & Sombroek 1990, Van Breemen & Feijtel 1990). Hence the need for developing appropriately scaled and compatible databases of the main environmental resources of relevance to studies of global change, including soils (e.g., Sombroek 1985 & 1990, Bouwman 1990, Oldeman & Sombroek 1990).

1.4 Purpose of study

The present booklet forms a background document for the WISE workshop, scheduled for August 1992. It consists of 6 Chapters and a Glossary. Chapter 2 is a review of the soil factors and soil processes that control the production/consumption and net emission of methane in terrestrial ecosystems, while Chapter 3 concerns nitrous oxide, and Chapter 4 carbon dioxide. Chapter 5 is a review of the physical controls of the balance of heat and water, and gases in soils. In the present context, where it is required to compile a map and database of *the geographic quantification of the soil conditions and processes that regulate emissions of 'greenhouse gases' from soils*, the predictive use of the Soil Map of the World becomes of significant importance. In the context of the WISE database, the areas of soils on the Soil Map of the World are to be used as a cartographic basis for the preparation of the 1/2 x 1/2 degree grids. For each rectangle of the grid, it is proposed to take the spatially dominant soil units as shown by the map; this is the "area data". To each area on the map will be attached, by appropriate descriptors, actual profile data from a representative pit. This is the "soil point data". The attributes proposed for use in the WISE database are listed in Chapter 6.

The actual database will be developed in close consultation with organizations such as the Food and Agricultural Organization (FAO), using the recommendations of the WISE workshop participants. ISRIC subsequently proposes to use the WISE database to make a world-wide inventory of wetlands at a scale of 1:5 M so as to quantify methane emissions from these areas. Other applications of the WISE database may include revised calculations of CO_2 and N_2O emissions from soils. The soil database could also from an important data layer in an Environmental Geographical Information System (GIS) and in General Circulation Models (GCMs).

1.5 References

Arnold, R.W., I. Szabolcs & V.O. Targulian 1990. *Global soil change*. Report of IIASA-ISSS-UNEP task force on the role of soil in global change. International Institute for Applied Systems Analysis, Laxenburg.

Batjes, N.H. & Bridges, E.M. (eds) 1991. *Mapping of soil and terrain vulnerability to specified chemical compounds in Europe at a scale of 1:5 M.* Proceedings of an International Workshop organised in the framework of the Chemical Time Bomb Projects of the Netherlands Ministry of Housing, Physical Planning and Environment and the International Institute for Applied Systems Analysis (Wageningen, 20-23 March 1991). International Soil Reference and Information Centre, Wageningen.

Bliss, N.B. 1990. A hierarchy of soil databases for calibrating models of global climate change. In: *Soils and the greenhouse effect* (ed. A.F. Bouwman). John Wiley and Sons, Chichester. p. 523-529.

Bolin, B., B.R. Böös, J. Jäger & R.A. Warrick (eds) 1986. *The greenhouse effect, climatic change and ecosystems.* SCOPE 29, John Wiley & Sons, Chichester.

Bouwman, A.F. (ed.) 1990. *Soils and the greenhouse effect*. John Wiley & Sons, Chichester.

Briffer, K.B., T.S. Bartholin, D. Eckstein, P.D. Jones, W. Karlen, F.M. Schweingruber & P. Zettenberg 1990. A 1400 year tree-ring record of summer temperature in Fennoscandia. *Nature 346, 434-439.*

Brouwer, F.M., A.J. Thomas & M.J. Chadwick (eds) 1991. *Land use changes in Europe: Processes of change, environmental transformations and future trends*. Volume 18, The GeoJournal Library, Kluwer Acad. Publ., Dordrecht.

Esser, G. 1990. Osnabrück Biosphere Model: Construction, structure, results. In: *Facets of modern ecology* (eds G. Esser & Overdieck). Elsevier, Amsterdam. p. 3-30 (In press).

FAO 1988. *Soil map of the world (Revised legend)*. World Soil Resources Report 60, FAO, Rome.

FAO/Unesco 1971-1981. *Soil Map of the World, 1:5 M.* Volumes 1 to 10, Unesco, Paris.

Greenland, D.J. 1991. The contributions of soil science to society - past, present, and future. *Soil Science 151, 19-23.*

Hansen, J.E. & A.A. Lacis 1990. Sand and dust versus greenhouse gases: An assessment of their relative roles in global climate change. *Nature 346, 713-718.*

Idso, S.B. 1988. Greenhouse warming or little ice age demise: A critical problem for climatology. *Theor. Appl. Climatology 39, 54-56.*

IGBP 1988. *The International Geosphere-Biosphere Programme: A study of global change.* Report No. 7.2, IGBP, Stockholm.

IGBP 1990. *The International Geosphere-Biosphere Programme: A study of global change.* Report No. 12, IGBP, Stockholm.

IPCC 1990. *Climate Change: The IPCC scientific assessment.* Edited by J.T. Hopkins, G.J. Jenkins & J.J.Ephraum. Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change, WMO/UNEP, University Press, Cambridge,

JEA/EPA 1990. *Methane emissions and opportunities for control.* Workshop results of Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change. Coordinated by Japan Environmental Agency and United States Environmental Protection Agency.

Levine, J.S. 1989. Photochemistry of biogenic gases. In: *Global ecology: Towards a science of the biosphere* (eds M.B. Ramble, L. Margulis & R. Fester),. Academic Press Inc., Boston. p. 51-74.

Lorius, C.J. 1988. Polar ice cores and climate. In: *Climate and Geo-Sciences: A challenge for science and society in the 21st century* (eds. A. Berger, S. Schneider & J.Cl. Duplessy). Kluwer Acad. Publ., Dordrecht. p. 77-103.

Matson, P.A. & D.S. Ojima (eds) 1990. *Terrestrial biosphere exchange with global atmospheric chemistry.* Global Change Report No. 13, International Geosphere-Biosphere Programme, Stockholm.

Matthews, E. 1990. Global databases for evaluating trace gas sources and sinks. In: *Soils and the greenhouse effect* (ed. A.F. Bouwman). John Wiley and Sons, Chichester. p. 311-325.

Moore III, B., M.P. Gildea, C.J. Vorosmarty, D.L. Skolle, J.M. Mellilo, B.J. Peterson, E.B. Rastetter & P.A. Steudler 1989. Biogeochemical cycles. In: *Global ecology: Towards a science of the biosphere* (eds M.B. Ramble, L. Margulis & R. Fester), Academic Press Inc., Boston. p. 113-141.

Oldeman, L.R. & W.G. Sombroek 1990. Use of the SOTER database to model global change. *Transactions 14th International Congress of Soil Science, Kyoto. Volume V, 136-141.*

Oldeman, L.R., R.T.A. Hakkeling & W.G. Sombroek 1991. *World map of the status of human-induced soil degradation. An explanatory note (Second revised edition).* International Soil Reference and Information Centre, Wageningen / United Nations Environment Programme, Nairobi. Published in cooperation with the Winand Staring Centre, International Society of Soil Science, Food and Agricultural Organization of the United Nations, and International Institute for Aerospace Survey and Earth Sciences.

ORNL 1990. *TRENDS '90: A compendium of data on global change* (eds. T.A. Boden, K. Kanciruk & M.P. Farell). Carbon Dioxide Information Centre, Env. Sciences Division, Oak Ridge National Laboratory, Oak Ridge, Tennessee.

Parry, M. 1990. *Climate change and world agriculture.* Earthscan Publication Limited (In association with IIASA & UNEP), London.

Rosswall, T., R.G. Woodmansee & P.G. Risser (eds) 1988. *Scales and global change: Spatial and temporal variability in biospheric and geospheric processes.* SCOPE 35, John Wiley & Sons, Chichester.

Scharpenseel, H.W., M. Schomaker & A. Ayoub (eds) 1990. *Soils on a warmer Earth: Effects of expected climate change on soil processes, with emphasis on the tropics and sub-tropics.* Developments in Soil Science 20, Elsevier, Amsterdam.

Sombroek, W.G. 1985. *Establishment of an International; Soil and Land Resources Information Base.* Discussion paper for the ISSS Working Group on Digital Mapping of Global Soil Resources. ISRIC, Wageningen.

Sombroek, W.G. 1990. Geographic quantification of soils and changes in their properties. In: *Soils and the greenhouse effect* (ed. A.F. Bouwman). John Wiley & Sons, Chichester. p. 225-244.

Stigliani, W.M. 1988. Changes in valued "capacities" of soils and sediments as indicators of non-linear and time-delayed environmental effects. *Environmental Monitoring and Assessment 10:245-307.*

Trabalka, J.R. & D.E. Reichle (eds) 1986. *The changing carbon cycle: A global analysis.* Springer-Verlag, New York.

Van Breemen, N. & T.C.J. Feijtel 1990. Soil processes and properties involved in the production of greenhouse gases, with special relevance to soil taxonomic systems. In: *Soils and the greenhouse effect* (ed. A.F. Bouwman). John Wiley & Sons, Chichester. p. 195-223.

Chapter 2 Methane

N.H. Batjes

2.1 Introduction

2.1.1 Background

Methane is one of the major greenhouse gases and strongly influences the photochemistry of the atmosphere (e.g., Cicerone & Oremland 1988). Based on present calculations, it accounts for about 15% of the current increase in commitment to global warming (JEA/EPA 1990). Methane's strong ability to absorb infrared radiation and its relatively short atmospheric lifetime (8-12 years), combined with the fact that a large fraction of the atmospheric CH_4 originates from paddy soils, makes CH_4 control an important opportunity for addressing global climate change. The latter especially since a 60% increase in rice production, from 480 10^6 ton in 1989 to 780 10^6 ton by the year 2020 and corresponding increase in "harvested" area, would be needed to nourish the projected increased population (IRRI as quoted by Braatz & Hogan 1991).

Ice core measurements are the exclusive source of information on the concentrations and trends of methane before the middle of the 20th century. Measurement on ice cores at Byrd Station and Dye3, both in Antarctica, show that atmospheric methane concentration was only about 350 ppbv about 20,000 year B.P. (≈ last glaciation), in comparison with a mean preindustrial level of about 650 ppbv, and a present mean value of 1650 ppbv (Stauffer *et al.* 1988). Average atmospheric CH_4 concentrations are lower in the southern hemisphere, possibly due to less anthropogenic input. Short-term temporal and spatial variability is common and influenced by geographic location, seasonality, mixing patterns, and diurnal cycles (e.g., Khalil & Rasmussen 1983; Blake & Rowland 1988).

Atmospheric methane concentrations have increased at an average rate of 16.6 ± 0.4 ppbv yr^{-1} or 1.02 ± 0.02% over a period of 8 years (Khalil & Rasmussen 1990). According to these researchers the trend has not been constant but has varied between 12 ± 2 and 23 ± 2 ppbv yr^{-1} over 2 years after seasonal changes were observed. Rasmussen & Khalil (1981) and Khalil & Rasmussen (1983) reported annual global increases of nearly 2% and 1.3% yr^{-1}, respectively. The current increase is about 1.1 % per year according to Khalil & Rasmussen (1987), while Steele *et al.* (1987) reported an increase of slightly less than 0.8% yr^{-1} for atmospheric methane. The observed increase is presumably due to more extensive and intensive use of paddy fields, increased number of ruminants, biomass burning, escape of methane from coal mines, and leakage of natural gas wells and distribution systems. Most global methane budgets show that irrigated rice fields and ruminant cattle are the largest anthropogenic sources of methane on a global scale. Quantification of the individual contributions of the various sources and sinks, however, remains a challenge (e.g., Bouwman 1990; Crützen 1991; see Appendix). Until we know better the reasons for the observed increases in atmospheric methane it will be difficult to project future increases with any degree of certainty, but a 20-50% increase during the next 50 yr seems plausible (Bolin *et al.* 1986).

The major removal processes of methane in the atmosphere are reviewed, amongst others, by Cicerone & Oremland (1988) and Bouwman (1990). In addition to being an additive factor to global warming phenomena, methane is destroyed in the atmosphere by oxidation with free hydroxyl radicals, with an estimated loss of 420 ± 80 Tg yr^{-1} (Crützen 1991), with the production of carbon monoxide and hydrogen. Methane is also a source of stratospheric water vapour. Alternatively, elevated levels of methane may help to protect the stratospheric ozone layer from destruction by halo-carbons and $O(^1D)$, corresponding with a CH_4 loss of 10 ± 5 Tg yr^{-1} (Crützen 1991). Additional atmospheric losses include the uptake of 30 ± 15 Tg yr^{-1} by soil sinks. The total atmospheric sink of methane is thus estimated to be 460 ± 100 Tg yr^{-1}. With an annual increase in the atmospheric loading of about 54 ± 5 Tg, the total methane source thus is 504 ± 105 Tg yr^{-1} (Crützen 1991). In the preceding analysis, Crützen (1991) took into account the fact that the rate at which methane reacts with hydroxyl radicals may have been overestimated by up to 25 per cent in the past (Vaghjiani & Ravishankara 1991).

While oceans account only for about 15 ± 12 Tg CH_4 yr^{-1}, which is less than 5 per cent of the total budget (e.g., Seiler 1984, Bolle *et al.* 1986, Cicerone & Oremland 1988), soils are an important source of atmospheric methane. This methane is produced mainly by microbial degradation of organic substrates in rice paddies (100 ± 50 Tg yr^{-1}), natural wetlands (100 ± 50 Tg yr^{-1}), and landfills (50 ± 20 Tg yr^{-1}) which together account for about half of the total CH_4 emission of 496 ± 251 Tg yr^{-1}. Non-soil related sources of atmospheric methane include ruminants (85 ± 15 Tg yr^{-1}), burning of biomass (80 ± 20 Tg yr^{-1}), and leakage related to activities such as natural gas winning and coal mining (233 ± 60 Tg yr^{-1}) (Schütz *et al.* 1990). Biogas generators do not contribute markedly to the global atmospheric methane budget ($<<$ 1 Tg yr^{-1}; Khalil *et al.* 1991). The most recent estimates of the various sources and sinks of CH_4, as computed by IPCC (1992), are presented in Appendix I.

Taking into consideration the fact that the atmospheric methane concentration is increasing at a much higher rate that the atmospheric CO_2 concentration, and that an incremental molecule of CH_4 may trap about 32 times as much heat as an incremental molecule of CO_2 (e.g., Dickinson & Cicerone 1986), methane is likely to become an even more important contributor to the greenhouse effect in the future (see ORNL 1990), unless appropriate abatement measures are rapidly implemented. Several causes for the current increase in atmospheric methane concentrations are recognized by Papen & Rennenberg (1990):

a. The current increase in global methane sources (e.g., increase in harvested paddy rice acreage);
b. A reduction in methane sink strength;
c. A reduction in both sink strength and an increase in source strength.

2.1.2 Structure of chapter

Three main processes determine the net emission of greenhouse gases to the atmosphere, namely production, consumption and transfer processes. In Section 2.2 we review the biotically mediated processes of methane formation and consumption. Possible transfer processes of CH_4 from terrestrial ecosystems to the atmosphere are discussed in Section 2.3. Following examples of temporal and spatial variations in measured methane fluxes (Section 2.4), and data on global methane fluxes from selected terrestrial environments (Section 2.5), the presently recognised abiotic process controlling factors are discussed in Section 2.6. In Section 2.7 we review the methodological approaches used by three research groups to calculate global CH_4 emissions using global databases, and thereafter discuss the possibilities for process-based simulation of methane production. In Chapter 6 the soil data that could be stored in a global soil database with a resolution of 1/2 x 1/2 degree grid are discussed. In the final

Section, we establish the clear need for a global soil database of the WISE type within the framework of studies of environmental change.

2.2 Methanogenesis and methane consumption

2.2.1 General

The balance between the microbial processes of methanogenesis and methane consumption controls to a great extent whether a certain terrestrial ecosystem will function as a sink or source of atmospheric CH_4. The main biological processes leading to methane production and consumption are reviewed in the present Section. A discussion of biogenic methane emissions caused by biomass burning and landfills is beyond the scope of this study (see e.g., the review by Bouwman 1990).

2.2.2 Methanogenesis

Methanogenesis, the biological formation of methane, is a geochemically important process that occurs in all anaerobic (or anoxic) environments in which organic matter undergoes decomposition: lakes, wetlands, paddy fields, as well as the digestive tracts of ruminants and termites. Methane of apparently biogenic origin has also been detected in several anoxic, hypersaline environments such as the Great Salt Lake, as well as in thermophilic environments (see review by Oremland 1988). Vogel *et al.* (1988) prepared an extensive review of the biochemistry of methane formation for the past 80 years.

The biogenic CH_4 results from the metabolising activity of a small and highly specific bacterial group, which are terminal members of the food chain in their environment. These strictly anaerobic bacteria convert fermentation products formed by other microorganisms, notably CO_2, H_2, and esters and salts of methanoic acid (HCOOH) into CH_4, but other substrates may be used as well (Koyama 1963, Cicerone & Oremland 1988, Oremland 1988, Stainer *et al.* 1976). Neue & Scharpenseel (1984) prepared a generalized scheme for the degradation of organic matter to methane in anaerobic environments. In this report we shall exemplify some of the possible reactions with reference to the type of methanogens involved (adapted after Papen & Rennenberg 1990):

a) H_2 reduction of CO_2 by obligate chemolithotrophic (or: chemoautotrophs) methanogens:
$CO_2 + 4\ H_2 \text{--->} CH_4 + 2\ H_2O$

b) The so-called "quasi-chemolithotrophic" methanogens can also use HCOOH or CO as a substrate for producing methane in addition to CO_2 and H_2 (see Papen & Rennenberg 1990):

$4\ HCOOH \text{---->} CH_4 + 3\ CO_2 + 2H_2O$

$4\ CO + 2\ H_2O \text{--->} CH_4 + 3\ CO_2$

c) Methane can also be produced by methylotrophic methanogenic bacteria which use methyl-group containing substrates such as methanol, acetate, and trimethylamine (see Papen & Rennenberg 1990):

$4\ CH_3OH \text{ ---> } 3\ CH_4 + CO_2 + 2\ H_2O$

$CH_3COOH \text{ ---> } CH_4 + CO_2$

$4\ (CH_3)_3\text{-}N + 6\ H_2O \text{ ---> } 9\ CH_4 + 3\ CO_2 + 4\ NH_3$

Methane was mainly produced from H_2 - CO_2 (30-50%) and from acetate in the radiotracer studies of Schütz *et al.* (1989b). Takai & Wada (1990) recognize the decarboxylation of acetic acid (CH_3COOH) as being the most important biochemical pathway of methane formation in waterlogged paddy soils. Yavitt *et al.* (1987) observed that methane production proceeded primarily through the CO_2-reduction pathway in deep peat (30-45 cm) and that the rate was controlled, in part, by the availability of H_2. Addition of glucose and H_2 - CO_2 to peat stimulated methanogenesis in the experiment of Williams & Crawford (1984), whereas addition of acetate inhibited methanogenesis.

2.2.3 Methane consumption

Some aerobic terrestrial ecosystems function as sinks for methane (e.g., Seiler *et al.* 1984, Steudler et a. 1986, Schütz *et al.* 1990). In the study of Oremland & Culbertson (1992), methanotrophic bacteria consumed more than 90 % of the methane potentially available. Some of the microorganisms that are responsible for the oxidation of methane are strictly *aerobic*, obligate methylo- or methano-trophic Eubacteria. These microorganisms can use methane as substrate as well as other C_1-compounds such as methanol. Papen & Rennenberg (1990) exemplified the reactions as follows:

$CH_4 + NADH + H^+ + O_2 \text{ --(1)--> } CH_3OH + NADH + H^+ + H_2O$

$CH_3OH + PQQ \text{ --(2)--> } CH_2O + PQQH_2$

$CH_2O + NAD^+ + H_2O \text{ --(3)--> } HCOOH + NADH + H^+$

$HCOOH + NAD^+ \text{ --(4)--> } CO_2 + NADH + H^+$

With: 1) methane-monooxygenase; 2) methanol-dehydrogenase; 3) formaldehyde-dehydrogenase; 4) formate-dehydrogenase; PQQ= methotaxin.

Some aerobic chemolithotrophic NH_4^+-oxidizers can use CH_4 in addition to ammonium as a substrate (see Papen & Rennenberg 1990):

$CH_4 + O_2 + XH_2 \text{ --(1)--> } CH_3OH + H_2O + X$

With: 1): ammonia-monooxygenase; X, XH_2: coenzyme and cosubstrate in the reduced and oxidized form respectively.

Addition of ammonium as NH_4Cl to intact soil cores decreased the aerobic CH_4 flux in the experiment of Conrad & Rothfuss (1991), suggesting that oxidation of methane was apparently inhibited by the addition of ammonium. Possibly, the supplied ammonium stimulated nitrification in favour of CH_4

oxidation and/or it may have constrained the availability of oxygen (Conrad & Rothfuss 1991). The role of methane-oxidizing bacteria in the methane budget can be revealed by using methylfluoride, which is a specific inhibitor of oxidation of CH_4 by methane-monooxygenase (Oremland & Culbertson 1992).

There is experimental evidence that methane-oxidation could occur in some anaerobic sediments (e.g., Alperin & Reeburgh 1985, Yavitt *et al.* 1990). Since sulphate is the only apparent oxidant present in sufficient quantity to cause a significant removal of methane under these conditions, it is possible that sulphate reducers consume methane under anaerobic conditions (e.g., Yavitt *et al.* 1990). Bartlett *et al.* (1987) observed that methane and sulphate concentrations are inversely related, which supports the coupling of methanogenic and sulphate reducing bacteria suggested by other studies. The anaerobic, sulphate dependent, oxidation of methane still has to be elucidated further (see Oremland 1988, pp. 647-650). Papen & Rennenberg (1990) exemplified the possible reaction as follows:

$$CH_4 + SO_4^{2-} \text{--->} HCO_3^- + HS^- + H_2O.$$

2.3 Processes regulating the transfer of CH_4 to the atmosphere

2.3.1 Ebullition

Several researchers recognise ebullition of gasses entrapped in sediments and peats as being possibly a common form of methane release to the atmosphere. Factors which might influence the ebullition process, include wind speed, water temperature, solar radiation, water level, local water table and atmospheric pressure (Mattson & Likens 1990).

In the study of Bartlett *et al.* (1988) some 49-64% of the total methane flux was attributed to ebullition, while Crill *et al.* (1988) reported values of up to 70%. Ebullition accounted for 34% of the total methane flux recorded during the study period in a Virginian Swamp, although ebullition occurred in less than 20% of the measurements (Wilson *et al.* 1989). During the observation period the average bubble flux was $34\ 10^{-3}$ g CH_4 $m^{-2}d^{-1}$ and the average diffusive flux $66\ 10^{-3}$ g CH_4 $m^{-2}d^{-1}$. In an Amazonian floodplain ebullition was the dominant mechanism of methane emission, accounting for 85% of the total release (Devol *et al.* 1988).

Submergence of soils can seriously reduce the rate of gas exchange between the soil and the atmosphere, as a result of which methane, as well as other gases, may be entrapped in the soil. The continuing production of these gases causes the pressure to increase, sometimes causing a "vesicular structure" in sediments (see Moormann & van Breemen 1978), so that these gases may be released as bubbles to the atmosphere (Ponnamperuma 1984). The rate of methane ebullition from paddy soils can vary, amongst others, with the fertilizer treatment. In a Typic Albaqualf from the Crowley Rice Research Station, Louisiana, the entrapment of methane in KNO_3-treated microplots was significantly lower ($P<0.05$) at all sampling dates than for urea treated plots (Lindau *et al.* 1990). It should be noted, however, that no rice plants were grown in the experiment of Lindau *et al.* (*op cit.*). Rice plants may reduce the entrapment of methane gases in flooded soils (see Section 2.3.3; Figure 2.1).

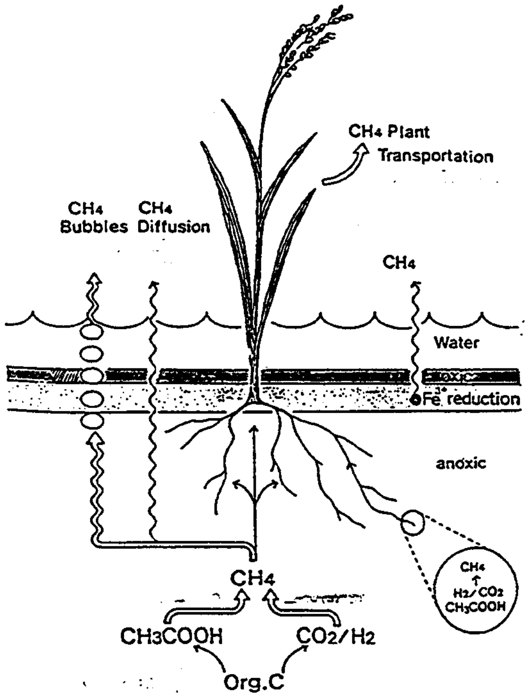


Figure 2.1 Schematic representation of methane production and its release in a rice paddy (After Takai & Wada 1990).

Holzapfel-Pschorn *et al.* (1986) found that gas bubbles entrapped in unvegetated soils had significantly higher CH_4 mixing ratios than in soils planted in rice. In addition the CH_4 mixing ratio of gas bubbles emitted from the inundated soil were significantly lower than those recorded in bubbles taken directly from the submerged soil. This could be an indication of active oxidation of CH_4 in the oxidized surface layer of the submerged soil or in the oxidized zones within the rhizosphere.

Methane emissions from fields without rice plants amounted to about 50% of those observed in fields planted with rice and that during these measurements the emissions from the un-planted field were almost exclusively due to ebullition (Schütz *et al.* 1989). In Japan, Takai & Wada (1990) observed that methane ebullition is important during the early stage of flooding (June-July), when rice plants are small, whereas vascular transport becomes more important as the rice plants grow (August-October).

Sporadic methane bubble releases from the sediments of a 11 m deep lake, which has thick organic sediments and becomes anoxic below 9 m depth by mid-summer, were correlated with changes in local air pressure (Mattson & Likens 1990). Low air-pressure events usually associated with storm systems induced ebullition (18% increase per millibar drop in air pressure, corresponding with 0.14 mmol CH_4 $m^{-2}d^{-1}$), whereas high pressure inhibited ebullition. Although the methane ebullition rates were erratic during the 1987 observation period, with an average rate of 0.76 and a maximum of 4.26 mmol $m^{-2}d^{-1}$ at the deepest site, the proportion of methane in the bubbles was relatively constant (70 ± 7 %). The CH_4 flux rates may not be a simple linear function of atmospheric pressure changes. According to

Mattson & Likens (1990) there may be an hysteresis effect on ebullition which is related to the porosity of the sediments.

Bartlett *et al.* (1988) observed high concentrations of dissolved CH_4 in root mats of floating meadows suggesting *in situ* methanogenesis with restricted flow when water can become deficient in dissolved oxygen. Another possible explantation is that methane may be entrapped by the mats and subsequently released as bubbles (Bartlett *et al.* 1988).

2.3.2 Diffusion

The diffusion of gases in water is about 10^4 times slower than in air, so that the exchange of gases almost stops when soils are waterlogged. The actual diffusion of methane from rice fields is a function of the methane supply to the floodwater, the actual CH_4 concentration in the floodwater, and the prevailing wind speed (Sebacher *et al.* 1983). Bartlett *et al.* (1985) found that the methane concentration gradient between sediments and water was a factor controlling rates of diffusive methane flux in a Virginian swamp. In the incubation experiment of Conrad & Rothfuss (1991) about 80% of the potential diffusive CH_4 flux through the water was oxidized in the thin oxic surface layer. Microbial methane oxidation in the thin aerobic top zone of anaerobic soils, may thus remove a large part of the bacterially formed CH_4. Similarly, Whalen & Reeburgh (1990) found that the subsurface CH_4 oxidizing activity is important in controlling upward CH_4 fluxes in tundras at sites where vascular plants are absent, particularly when the CH_4 evolves by dry diffusion rather than by ebullition.

Consumption of atmospheric CH_4 by soils depends on transport to zones of consuming activity. Transport in waterlogged tundra soils is by aqueous molecular diffusion. Waterlogged tundra soils have a methane consumption maximum centred near the water table (the oxic/anoxic boundary), sustained by upward diffusion of dissolved CH_4. By contrast, transport in dry tundra soils is by gas-phase diffusion so that porous low-resistance tundra soils do not limit the supply of methane (Whalen & Reeburgh 1990).

2.3.3 Vascular transport

In a number of aquatic plants as well as rice methane can be transported through the aerenchyma (e.g., De Bont *et al.* 1978; Cicerone & Shetter 1981; Seiler 1984; Sebacher *et al.* 1985; Inubushi *et al.* 1989, Wilson *et al.* 1989). This transport process could circumvent CH_4 oxidation by methanotrophs (e.g., De Bont *et al.* 1978; Sebacher *et al.* 1985). Holzapfel-Pschorn *et al.* (1986) found that during the growing season of a rice crop 67% of the CH_4 produced was oxidized, and only 23% actually emitted to the atmosphere. The percentage of methane that was oxidized in the paddy soils studied by Sass *et al.* (1990) ranged from 24-68% and 19-22% throughout the growing season, respectively.

In the study of Seiler *et al.* (1984) over 95% of the total CH_4 release from paddy soils to the atmosphere was through diffusive transport through the aerenchyma of rice plants, while transport by bubbles or diffusion through the paddy water were of minor importance. Similarly, Holzapfel-Pschorn (1986) observed that 80% of the observed methane transport of 6 weeks old rice plants was by diffusion through the stems of these plants. The presence of rice plants also enhanced the escape of

CH_4 to the atmosphere in the study of De Bont *et al.* (1978). Schütz *et al.* (1989b) observed that as the rice plants grew not only the contribution of plant mediated CH_4 emission increased but also the percentage of produced CH_4 that was reoxidized, and hence not emitted. Takai & Wada (1990) found that planting of rice suppresses methane formation due to the aeration caused by the diffusion of oxygen from the rice rhizosphere. In this context Ueckert *et al.* (1990) found a clear correlation between the aerenchyma size of *Leptochloa fusca* L. Kunth (Kallangra grass) and the oxygen concentration in the rhizosphere after 24 hours of incubation. They noted also that it is the percentage of root porosity rather than the absolute volume of the aerenchyma which is important for root aeration, and thereby possibly for the rate of methane oxidation in the rhizosphere.

Inubushi *et al.* (1990a) observed that the amount of CH_4 emitted through rice plants varied between 3 soil types, being the highest in the soil type with the highest methane production. In the absence of rice plants about 35% of the CH_4 produced was emitted, but the actual production of methane was much lower than for soils planted in rice (Holzapfel-Pschorn *et al.* 1986). Emissions via the plant constituted more than 90 per cent of the total emissions. The flux rate was controlled by the rate of CH_4 production in the soil and was not curtailed by limitations of the diffusion processes from the soil into the root system or through the aerenchyma of the rice plant (Holzapfel-Pschorn *et al.* 1986).

Inubushi *et al.* (1990a) injected water saturated with CH_4 into the rhizosphere, causing an immediate increase in the amount of CH_4 transported through the rice plants which they saw as an indication that roots of rice plants may take up methane along with water. Nouchi *et al.* (1990), however, observed no clear correlation between changes in transpiration rate and change in CH_4 emission rate. They also observed that methane was mainly released at the culm, an aggregation of leaf sheaths, but not from the leaf blade. Based on these findings, Nouchi *et al.* (1990) proposed that CH_4 dissolved in the soil water surrounding the rice roots diffuses into the cell-wall water of the root cells, gasifies the root cortex, and then is mostly released through the micropores in the leaf culm. Nouchi *et al.* (1990) also found that the rate of emission of methane through rice plants is proportional to the methane concentration in the culture solution. Sass *et al.* (1990) found that soil pore methane and plant stem gas concentration are related to the distribution in the soil of methane production as well as root biomass. In one of the rice fields studied by Sass *et al.* (1990) the methane emission was strongly related to the above ground biomass.

The resistance to gas diffusion through rice plants is likely to vary with the growth stage, as well as the cultivar (e.g., floating rice *versus* short straw high yielding cultivars). Rice plants at the ripening stage, for instance, released about 20 times as much CH_4 than 2 week old seedlings in one study (De Bont *et al.* 1978). Inubushi *et al.* (1990b) found that methane fluxes through rice plants reached maximum values at the heading stage. In this experiment, the maximum emission could be reduced to 40-70% by a percolation treatment equivalent to 51 mm water per 2 weeks.

Schütz *et al.* (1989b) observed that the percent of hourly methane emitted from a paddy field by a rice plant can vary between 0-97% over a growing season. The diffusion of CH_4 through the aerenchyma of rice plants is likely to vary on a daily basis as a result of effects of fluctuating environmental conditions on the rate of photosynthesis/respiration (see Bouwman 1990, p. 84). Indeed, Raskin & Kende (1985) have related the rate and direction of air movement in rice plants to photosynthesis. It is thus possible that less oxygen is transported to the root system at night, so that methane oxidation would be reduced. With respect to algal mats King (1990) observed that shifts from light to dark on methane emissions are best explained as a result of changes in the availability of oxygen. Seiler *et al.* (1984), however, found no correlation between light intensity and CH_4 release in their experiment, which they saw as an indication that the CH_4 release is independent of the photosynthesis and/or width of the stomata of rice plants.

2.3.4 Other processes

Another transport process that could be of importance for methane transport in waterlogged soils is advection. In the glacial peatlands of Lake Agassiz, Minnesota, it was not clear whether gas transport through the peat is mostly by diffusion (Clymo 1984) or by ground water advection (Siegel 1983). Studies have recently been initiated to assess the relative importance of these processes in the Lake Agassiz peatlands (see Siegel & Glaser 1991).

2.4 Temporal and spatial variation in CH_4 emissions

2.4.1 Temporal variability

Generally, methane emissions in a given location show strong diurnal and seasonal variations the pattern of which changes from year to year (e.g., Schütz *et al.* 1989b). Cicerone *et al.* (1983), however, did not find significant diurnal variations in CH_4 emissions in a Californian paddy during their experiments. Holzapfel-Pschorn & Seiler (1986), however, found a strong dependence of time of day on CH_4 emissions in an Italian paddy. Both Cicerone *et al.* (1983) and Holzapfel-Pschorn & Seiler (1986) observed two seasonal peaks in emissions, although the magnitude and times of occurrence of these peaks varied between the sites studied. With respect to the Italian paddy (Holzapfel-Pschorn & Seiler 1986), the seasonal emissions peaks were attributed to mineralization of organic matter prior to flooding and the subsequent release of organic root exudates respectively. Similarly, in a temperate swamp high methane fluxes were observed during autumn, corresponding with the period maximum leaf fall (Wilson *et al.* 1989). Methane emissions may also vary markedly with the water regime or with temperature variations in the upper decimeter of paddy soils (e.g., Seiler *et al.* 1984). The CO_2, acetate and formate which is produced during biomass burning, upon dissolving in the standing water of wetlands, may serve as the substrate for methanogenesis which would explain post-burn enhancement of methane emissions (Levine *et al.* 1990).

The seasonal variation in methane fluxes from a Japanese paddy field as modified by applications of straw, compost and mineral fertilizers and the irrigation/drainage regime is shown in Figure 2.2. According to Yagi *et al.* (1990), the seasonal variation of methane fluxes from paddy fields to the atmosphere is mainly related to the variation in methane production in these paddy fields. The CH_4-emission rates varied both with the soil type and application of organic matter. Sass *et al.* (1990) reported a 3-fold emission difference between two rice fields on different soil types in Texas, even though the soils were treated in the same way and located in close proximity of each other. This may mean that if methane emission measurements for paddy soils are to make sense, comparative measurements must be made in the major soils representative of the major rice producing areas of the globe, particularly in Asia (*cf* IGBP 1990).

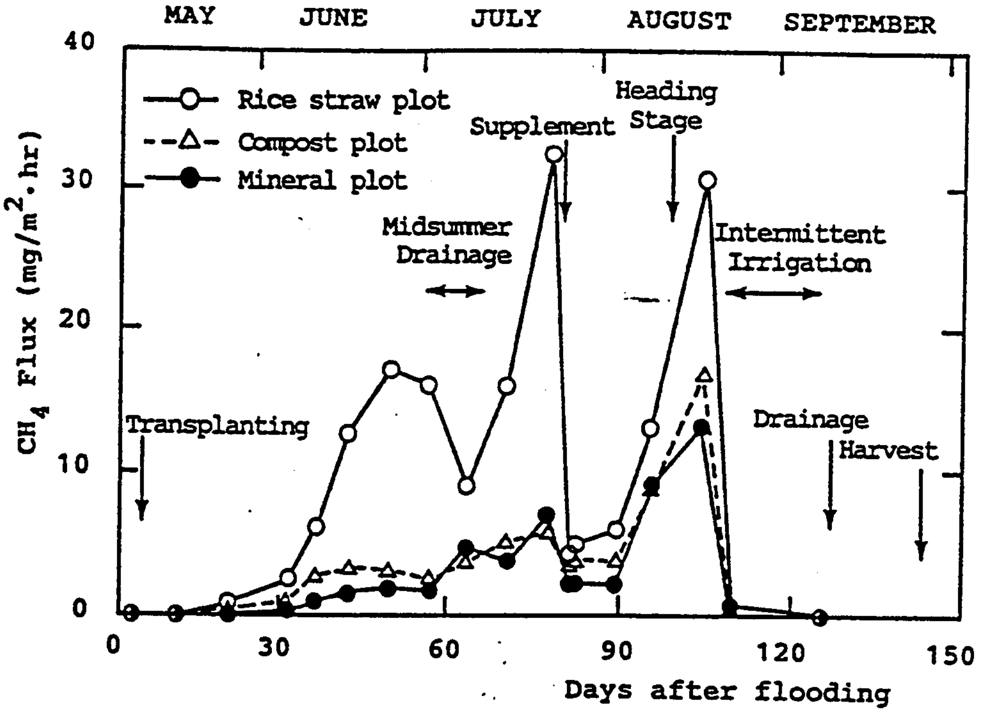


Figure 2.2 Seasonal variation in the methane fluxes from the alluvial, Ryugasaki paddy field as influenced by mineral and organic amendments and the drainage regime (Source: Yagi *et al.* 1990).

Schütz *et al.* (1990) observed two maxima in CH_4 production corresponding with the early vegetative period of the rice crop (i.e. end of April - end of June) grown in Hangzhou Province in the People's Republic of China. During the early vegetative period, maximum CH_4 emissions, occurred at noon and during the night, while the CH_4 emissions peaked only in the night during the late vegetation period. It is possible that less oxygen may be transported to the root system of rice plants at night so that the methane oxidation would be reduced, resulting in higher net emissions (Raskin & Kende 1985).

After the heading stage, Inubushi *et al.* (1990a) injected the rhizosphere of rice plants with various solutions to clarify the effects of several substances on the transfer of methane through rice plants. The amount of CH_4 transferred through the rice plants varied diurnally and also with the age of the rice plant, ranging from 0.5 to 23 mg C-CH_4 $hr^{-1}m^{-2}$. In this study, the maximum emissions were observed late in the afternoon, and at the heading stage.

Seasonal variations in methane emissions may also be influenced by thawing of permafrost. In acid peats in subarctic mires, methane formation was restricted to the upper horizon of the peat, and there was no correlation between the depth of the permafrost and methane fluxes (Svensson & Rosswall 1984). Maximum concentrations of methane occurred in the layer below the layer of maximum production. According to Svensson & Rosswall (1984) this may be due to the freezing proper, which starts at the surface and proceeds downwards to the permafrost with subsequent entrapment of gases. This would also explain the peaks in methane emissions recorded for subarctic fens during the spring melt (Moore & Knowles 1987). Similarly, Harris *et al.* (1982) reported high levels of methane release in early spring in the Great Dismal Swamp. According to Wilson *et al.* (1989) the increase in methane flux in spring most likely reflects the mineralisation of organic materials accumulated in the soil during the winter, when microbial activity is low. As the temperature rises, this organic matter is rapidly decomposed by fermentation bacteria which produce the substrates required for methanogenesis.

Seasonal variation in methane emissions in the People's Republic of China showed three maxima during the early rice growing period, the first at tillering, the second during the reproduction phase, and the third at flowering. High average methane emission rates were observed at the very beginning of the late rice growing period and also during tillering (Schütz *et al.* 1990). Holzapfel-Pschorn & Seiler (1986) also reported an increased releases of methane during the flowering stage of rice. Similarly, Wilson *et al.* (1989) observed high rates of release of methane during the flowering stage of *Petlandra virginica L.* (arrow-arum) in a temperate swamp.

Seasonal variations in CH_4 fluxes have also been attributed to other plant related effects. Methane emission in two Japanese paddy soils was controlled not only by the soil conditions but also by the growth stage of the rice plant (Inubushi *et al.* 1990b). In China, Schütz *et al.* (1991) found that within "regions" daily CH_4 emissions are more than 3 times greater for "late" than for "early" maturing rice cultivars. The temporal and spatial distribution of CH_4 production is related to rice root biomass (Sass *et al.* 1990), which may be seen as cultivar and soil dependent property. This shows the importance of considering the actual length of the growing cycle, in addition to the cropped acreage and cultivar type, when calculating CH_4 emissions from paddy fields. Besides these cultivar effects, diurnal variations and seasonal variations in methane fluxes may also be influence by meteorological factors such as the atmospheric pressure (see Mattson & Likens 1990). Precipitation, through its effect on the soil aeration status, may also influence the net flux of greenhouse gases from soils. In a catena under native short-steppe grassland, Mosier *et al.* (1991) found the N_2O flux for all 3 sites considered was highest immediately following precipitation. Under very dry conditions, both the CH_4 uptake and CO_2 emissions declined and remained low until soil water content increased (Mosier *et al.* 1991).

2.4.2 Spatial variability

The spatial and temporal variability in methane emission, strictly speaking, should not be discussed as separate entities since they are inherently linked. Wilson *et al.* (1989) studied methane flux measurements at 4 sites in a freshwater temperate swamp over a 13 month period, finding that methane emissions were highly variable between sites and over time at any one site. Laboratory incubations of soils cores showed that methanogenesis is highest near the soil surface in the rice row and decreases with depth and distance from the rice plant (Sass *et al.* 1990), so that plant density may form a possible source of spatial variation in CH_4 emissions from paddy fields.

A high spatial and temporal variability in methane flux was observed in the field study of Bartlett et al. (1985; 100 measurements over a 2 year period), ranging from -2.4 to 21.3 mg CH_4 $m^{-2}d^{-1}$. Estimates of annual methane emission within a creek system were 0.42 g CH_4 m^{-2} for a salt meadow, 1.3 g CH_4 m^{-2} for short *Spartina alterniflora,* and 1.2 g CH_4 $m^{-2}d^{-1}$ for tall creek *S. alterniflora.*

Barlett *et al.* (1988) performed 186 methane measurements, over a 3-monthly period, in primary Amazon floodplain environments of open water lakes, flooded forests and floating grass mats. They found that emissions of methane were lowest over open water, increasing for flooded forests and floating grass mats (27 ± 5, 192 ± 27, and 230 ± 72 mg CH_4 $m^{-2}d^{-1}$, respectively).

Bartlett *et al.* (1988) also reported a large spatial variability in average methane emission through ebullition for Amazonian floodplain, with estimated losses of 168 ± 32 mg CH_4 $m^{-2}d^{-1}$ for flooded forest, 346 ± 128 mg CH_4 $m^{-2}d^{-1}$ for floating grasses, and 173 ± 5 mg CH_4 $m^{-2}d^{-1}$ for open water. On the average this corresponded with a 49, 54 and 64% methane loss through ebullition for open water, flooded forest and floating grass mats, respectively. Similarly, Devol *et al.* (1988) observed that water surfaces covered by macrophytes in an Amazonian floodplain had the highest CH_4 emission (590 mg CH_4 $m^{-2}d^{-1}$), while emissions from flooded forest were 110 mg CH $m^{-2}d^{-1}$, and 120 mg CH_4 $m^{-2}d^{-1}$ for open lakes during the observation period in an Amazonian floodplain. These findings illustrate that this variability in source strength, both in space and time, will be a crucial issue in making low spatial resolution estimates of methane emissions for "complex" ecosystems.

In the study of Harris & Sebacher (1981) the variability of methane flux within two cypress swamps was greater than the differences in average flux between the undisturbed swamps studied. They hypothesized that nutrient enrichment and organic soil enrichment are important variables influencing methane flux in these cypress swamps. This means that pollution of wetlands by fertilizers, acid rain or waste effluents may substantially change the CH_4 emissions, making estimates of global CH_4 source strength from freshwater swamps difficult (*cf* Harris & Sebacher 1981).

Whalen & Rheeburg (1988) studied the spatial variability in methane fluxes for a tundra ecosystem which included *Eriophorum* tussocks, inter-tussock depressions, moss-covered areas, and *Carex* stands. They observed a high diel, seasonal, intra site and between site variability. *Eriophorum* tussocks and *Carex* were the main contributors to the release of CH_4 to the atmosphere (8.05 ± 2.50 and 4.88 ±0.73 g CH_4 $m^{-2}d^{-1}$, respectively), with the fluxes from moss sites and inter-tussock depressions being much lower (0.47 ± 0.16 and 0.62 ±0.28 g CH_4 $m^{-2}d^{-1}$, respectively). Over 90% of the mean annual methane flux from *Eriophorum*, inter-tussock depressions and *Carex* sites occurred between thaw and freeze up, while 40% of the CH_4 flux for mosses occurred in winter (Whalen & Rheeburg 1988).

Bartlett *et al.* (1989) found that the unit area methane flux to the atmosphere from a water saturated Everglades environment, measured *in situ*, varied over more than an order of magnitude (4.2 - 81.9 mg CH_4 $m^{-2}d^{-1}$), depending on which habitat component was sampled. In this study the observed physical characteristics of the surface - water and soil depth and temperature - were not quantitatively associated with the variability in flux rates. However, the distribution of the vegetative community types provided an empirical indicator of flux, permitting an inventory of CH_4 emission to be based on a mapping exercise of regional patterns of vegetation. Bartlett *et al.* (1989) could thus use high-resolution, orbital remote sensing to reduce the uncertainty in the CH_4 emission inventory of the Everglades by directing *in situ* sampling exercises to important habitats, and by providing a means for calculating an area-weighted, mean flux for the area as a whole. The study of Bartlett *et al.* (1989) thus shows that spatial variability in measured methane flux within a major wetland ecosystem can introduce uncertainty when extrapolating these values to large areas, even if the extent of the major ecosystem is known. Whiting *et al.* (1991) found a direct relationship between spatial variability in plant biomass, net ecosystem production, and methane emissions in a natural *Cladium* spp. wetland.

Svennson (1986) found that the most important factor involved in the regulation of methane formation in acid tundra mires, from a spatial point of view, was the peat moisture content. Similarly, Moore *et al.* (1990) observed that although methane flux was weakly correlated with either peat temperature at 0.1 m depth or water table position within each site a strong association of flux and these variables occurred. This is an indication of the value of "ecological" attributes in identifying the pattern of CH_4 fluxes.

2.5 Global CH_4 emissions from various environments

2.5.1 Rice paddies

Methane emission and consumption are highly sensitive to a wide range of biotic and abiotic factors. Estimates of global CH_4 emissions from paddy soils that are based on laboratory experiments therefore cannot adequately reflect the wide diversity of environmental and agricultural conditions observed in the field (Moormann & van Breemen 1978, De Datta 1981, Hackman 1979, Kawaguchi & Kyuma 1977, Ponnamperuma 1984, Watanabe & Roger 1985, Neue 1989 and many others). The total global acreage of rice is about 143 10^6 ha. Of these, about 51% is irrigated, 27% rainfed, 8% consists of deep-water rice and about 14% of upland rice (*cf* Braatz & Hogan 1991). In this context, it may be noted that terms such as "upland" rice may not be appropriate to characterize rice land ecologies. Almost two decades ago Moormann & Van Breemen (1978) proposed to replace the commonly used crop-oriented terminology with land-oriented terms. In this system, they consider the hydrological situation, the natural source of water supply for rice land, as well as the possible man-induced changes in the natural microtopography and water regime. The resultant classes are "pluvial", "phreatic" and "fluxial" rice lands (*cf* Moormann & Van Breemen 1978).

Koyama (1963) extrapolated the results of one incubation experiment to the global rice acreage, which give a predicted a CH_4 emission from paddy soils of 190 Tg CH_4 yr^{-1} *anno* 1960. Similarly, Ehhalt (1974) and Ehhalt & Schmidt (1978) used laboratory flux measurements to arrive at their global CH_4 emissions of 220 to 280 Tg yr^{-1} for paddy soils. Based on the first field measurements, recorded in a short term trial in a Californian rice paddy, the total CH_4 emission was estimated to be 59 Tg CH_4 yr^{-1} (Seiler 1984). Using semi-continuous field measurements of CH_4 fluxes from Spanish and Californian rice paddies, Seiler (1984) and Holzapfel-Pschorn & Seiler (1986) arrived at global estimates of 30 to 75 Tg CH_4 yr^{-1} and 70 to 170 Tg CH_4 yr^{-1}, respectively. The lower figures obtained using the results for the Spanish paddy (Seiler 1984) were later attributed to the possible presence of sulphates originating from Mediterranean inflow. This "justification" clearly illustrates that extrapolation of a limited number of CH_4 measurements to the global level can easily be fraught with errors.

Bolle *et al.* (1986) estimated the global emissions of CH_4 from rice paddies to be 70 to 170 Tg yr^{-1}. Cicerone & Oremland (1988), reported similar ranges with a central estimate of 110 Tg yr^{-1}. Seiler (1989) arrived at 70 to 110 Tg yr^{-1} using preliminary field measurements in the Peoples Republic of China, one of the major rice growing areas in the world. Seiler (1989) accounted for varying lengths of growing periods as well as for varying seasonal effects. Schütz *et al.* (1990) estimated the emissions of CH_4 from paddy fields to be 100 ± 50 Tg yr^{-1} of the total CH_4 emission of 496 ± 251 Tg yr^{-1}. Around the same time, Neue *et al.* (1990) arrived at an annual global emission of CH_4 from wetland rice of 25 to 60 Tg based on their finding that only 80 10^6 ha of paddy soils are potential sources of methane production (see Section 2.7.1). This is much less than the preliminary estimate of about 100 Tg CH_4 yr^{-1} for the Far East alone which was obtained using CH_4 emissions from rice paddies in Hangzhou area in the Peoples Republic of China; the actual measurements were for a period of 1.5 years and covered 3 growing/vegetation periods (Wang *et al.* 1990, quoted by Schütz *et al.* 1990). The review of Bouwman (1990) estimates the total release of methane from rice paddies at 51 to 111 Tg yr^{-1}.

The preceding global methane emissions from paddy soils range from 25 to 170 Tg CH_4 yr^{-1}, that is they differ by a factor of about 7. The reported differences in calculated global fluxes are the consequence of the large hourly, daily and seasonal variation in measured CH_4 emissions, uncertainty about the relative importance of the respective process controlling factors, and the subsequent extrapolation of results of generally obtained for short term measurements to areas for which they are not necessarily representative (see Section 2.7). In this respect it may be observed that of the about 146 10^6 hectares of paddy harvested annually in the 1990's over 90% occur in Asia, one of the areas with relatively few CH_4 emissions measurements so far.

2.5.2 Natural wetlands

The major natural wetlands of the world are in boreal, low Arctic and tropical ecosystems. Similar to CH_4 emission measurements for paddy soils, the temporal and spatial variability in recorded CH_4 emissions from natural wetland ecosystems is large. A comprehensive review on CH_4 emissions from swamps, marshes, fens, tundras, and a number of saltwater environments, all broadly described in terms of type of "vegetation" and geographical location, can be found in Bouwman (1990 p. 93-94). Again the interpretation of the factors that may control methane fluxes in these ecosystems is complicated by the extreme diversity in climatological, vegetational as well as soil conditions in these environments (e.g., Kyuma 1985, Zoltai & Pollet 1983). Soil water content, temperature, and other seasonal climatological factors as well as vegetation and land use are all potentially critical factors in determining whether natural wetlands function as a source or as a sink of atmospheric CH_4.

Matthews & Fung (1987) arrived at a total of 110 Tg CH_4 yr^{-1} using methane emissions considered representative for 5 broadly defined categories of natural wetlands, with corrections for the effects of latitude ($\approx$ the CH_4 production period). Schütz *et al.* (1990) obtained CH_4 emissions from natural wetlands of 100 ± 50 Tg yr^{-1}. These figures are higher than the 25 to 70 Tg CH_4 yr^{-1} that Bolle *et al.* (1986) reported for natural wetlands.

2.5.3 Methane consumption in terrestrial ecosystems

Under aerobic conditions, some soils may act as a sink of atmospheric CH_4. Based on the few available data on CH_4 uptake, the global sink strength of soils may be as high as 23 to 56 Tg (Schütz *et al.* 1990). According to Seiler *et al.* (1984) the global methane consumption must be at least 20 Tg yr^{-1}, while Seiler & Conrad (1987) estimate the global CH_4 consumption of soils as 32 ± 16 Tg yr^{-1}. As the role of large potential areas of CH_4 uptake are unknown (e.g., savannas, deserts, tundras) these figures remain highly speculative. The latter even more so since the present temporal increase of CH_4

mixing ratios in the atmosphere, may cause an increase of the sink strength with time (Schütz *et al.* 1990).

Tussock and low-shrub tundra, with 35-50% vascular plant cover, are expected to show larger CH_4 consumption than wet meadow tundras with 80-90% vascular plant cover (Whalen & Reeburgh 1990). Harriss *et al.* (1982) found that a fresh water peat under waterlogged conditions was a net source of CH_4 to the atmosphere with seasonal variations in emission rates of <0.001 to 0.02 g CH_4 m-2d^{-1}. During conditions of drought, however, these swamps consumed atmospheric methane at rates of <0.001 to 0.005 g CH_4 m-2d^{-1}. Methane consumption may, however, also occur under anaerobic conditions in peat (e.g., Yavitt *et al.* 1990).

The CH_4 uptake at the surface of soils in semi-arid climates ranged from 3 10^{-4} to 24 10^{-4} g CH_4 $m^{-2}h^{-1}$ (Seiler *et al.* 1984). A CH_4 consumption of 0.13 mg CH_4-C $m^{-2}h^{-1}$ in hardwood plots in temperate forests and of 0.11 mg CH_4-C $m^{-2}h^{-1}$ in pine plots has been reported by Steudler *et al.* (1986). Using these values, the estimated global consumption by temperate forests amounts to 0.6 to 9.31 Tg CH_4-C yr^{-1} (Steudler *et al.* 1986). Methane uptake in subtropical broad-leafed savannah amounted to 52 CH_4 $m^{-2}h^{-1}$ (Seiler *et al.* 1984). Steudler *et al.* (1989) predicted that tropical forests consume from 1.26 to 2.53 Tg CH_4-C yr^{-1} on the basis of a literature survey. Hao *et al.* (1988), however, found no methane consumption in their experiment with tropical forest soils. Keller *et al.* (1983) found methane uptake rates of 6-24 10^{-6} g CH_4 m^{-2}h-1 in tropical forests. Whalen & Reeburgh (1990) observed uptake rates of 0-112 10^{-6} g CH_4 m^{-2}h-1 in tundra soils. Methane uptake in the Colorado semi-arid grassland, however, ranged from 6 to 61 10^{-6} CH_4 m^{-2}h-1 (Mosier *et al.* 1991). If Mosier *et al.*'s (1991) measurements are representative for CH_4 uptake by semi-arid grasslands globally, then 0.5 to 5.6 Tg of CH_4 are removed from the atmosphere in these grasslands each year.

The study of Mosier *et al.* (1991) shows that recent changes in land use or management, such as cultivation of grassland, have decreased the CH_4 uptake, and increased the N_2O efflux to the atmosphere. This means that remedial measures for CH_4 may affect N_2O production.

2.6 Abiotic regulating factors of methane production and consumption

2.6.1 General

Since methane production and consumption are biologically mediated processes, any factors affecting the physical, chemical or biological characteristics of the terrestrial environment will influence the net CH_4 production. The soil related controlling factors of methane production include: organic substrate supply, temperature, texture, mineralogy, Eh/pH buffer systems, hydrologic conditions, and salinity. Soil and floodwater properties will interact with the meteorological regime by temperature, changes in reflectivity, heat capacity, thermal conductivity, incoming water temperature and water flow (Neue *et al.* 1990). In view of the variety of soils (e.g., FAO/Unesco 1971-1981) and agro-ecological conditions occurring at the international level, it is difficult to establish unambiguous relationships between the various factors controlling net methane emissions. In this Section we shall discuss the abiotic flux controlling factors in separate paragraphs for convenience's sake, although we recognize that many interactions do occur. Wilson *et al.* (1989) justly wrote that "because methane flux is a function of a variety of processes and release mechanisms, which may vary seasonally and among sites, simple correlation with factors such as temperature provide, of necessity, only approximations of the true dynamics of methane flux".

2.6.2 Effects of Temperature

Temperature plays an important role in the rate of activity of soil microorganisms, including those involved in methane production (see Zeikus & Winfrey 1976) and consumption. Wahlen & Reeburgh (1990) observed microbially mediated CH_4-oxidation in Alaskan tundra soils at a temperature of about 7 °C; this population was capable of oxidizing methane at concentrations 10 times lower than the ambient atmospheric methane concentration. Alternatively, Sebacher *et al.* (1986) recorded significant CH_4 emissions in tundra areas where the peat temperature was 2-4 °C and permafrost occurred a 25 cm below the surface. Svensson (1984) reported a Q_{10} of 5.5-8.0 for the temperature interval from 2-10 °C. Yagi *et al.* (1990), however, found very little methanogenesis at 5 °C and 15 °C in Japanese paddy fields. Wilson *et al.* (1989) observed major changes in methane fluxes between 10 and 16 °C in a temperate swamp. Svensson (1984) found evidence for the possible existence of strains of low-temperature adopted methanogens, and also reported different temperature optima for acetate (20 °C) and H_2-utilizing (28 °C) methanogens in peat.

Pacey & De Gier (1986) found that methane production drastically decreases below 10-15 °C, and generally ceases above 60 °C. Thermophilic environments, such as hot springs, however can be sites of active methanogenesis (see Oremland 1988). According to Neue & Scharpenseel (1984) most methanogenic bacteria display optimum rates of CH_4 production around 30 °C. Inubushi *et al.* (1990a) found that a high temperature enhances CH_4 formation, especially above 30 °C. Additionally, they observed that fluctuations in air temperature, during incubation experiments, enhanced the formation of CH_4. Temperature changes from 20 to 30 °C or from 30 to 40 °C during incubation had a larger effect on methane production than constant temperature of 30 °C or 40 °C, respectively. Based on these findings, Inubushi *et al.* (1990a) concluded that we must be careful when estimating the amount of CH_4 formed in paddy fields where temperatures vary widely. Svennson & Rosswall (1984) observed that methane emission correlation with temperature probably not only reflects the immediate response of methanogens, but also an effect on the methane diffusion rate, which increases with soil temperature.

CH_4 emissions from an Italian rice field increased exponentially with rising temperatures. Holzapfel-Pschorn & Seiler (1986) found almost a doubling of methane emission rates when the soil temperature rose from 20 to 25 °C, corresponding with a Q_{10} of about 4. Similarly, incubation under N_2-atmosphere of paddy soil samples from 12 Japanese Agricultural Experimental Stations and 4 sites in Louisiana at 35 °C led to substantially higher production of methane than at 25 °C, although there were large differences between CH_4 production by the various soils studied (Yagi *et al.* 1990). In other experiments, however, methane emissions are poorly correlated with temperature (e.g., Sebacher *et al.* 1986, Cicerone *et al.* 1983). For example, the seasonal variation in methane emission in a rice paddy at Vercelli, Italy, was not clearly related to soil temperature. However, the diel changes in CH_4 fluxes were significantly correlated with the diel changes of the temperature at a particular soil depth (Schütz *et al.* 1990b). Similarly, methane production in a Mississippi deltaic peat was related to temperature in the 0-40 cm depth zone, but it was relatively constant below a depth of 40 cm (Delaune *et al.* 1986).

There are several possible explanations for the temperature dependency of methane production/consumption. Yamane & Sato (1967), for instance, observed that with increasing temperatures (10-35 °C) organic acids persisted for a shorter time and that more methane was produced. The studies of Svensson (1984) and Yavitt *et al.* (1987) indicate that methane production will not respond to an increase in temperature if one or more of the other environmental factors is limiting production. Yavitt *et al.* (1988), for instance, found that low temperature constrained the potential for methane production in peat in winter, while the chemical status of the peat substrate appeared to control the CH_4 production in summer.

Sebacher *et al.* (1986) showed that the total CH_4 flux from tundras are of the same magnitude as those from wetlands located in "more" temperate regions, even though temperature are much lower. Svennson (1986) observed that the CH_4 production in cold areas, *in casu* the Antarctica moss carpets ($\approx$ 2 °C) and subarctic mires in Sweden, are comparable to those found in "warmer" areas such as Florida and Italy. Similarly, the literature review of Bouwman (1990) shows that although high temperatures seem to stimulate CH_4 formation, annual methane emissions estimated from field measurements are in the same order of magnitude (1-200 g $m^{-2}yr^{-1}$) for tropical, cool temperate and subarctic environments.

2.6.3 Effects of soil pH

Different opinions have been expressed in the literature on the effects of soil pH on methanogenesis. Svensson (1986), for instance, found that differences in pH values between wetlands seem to have little effect on methane emission to the atmosphere. It would seem that methanogenesis is favoured by neutral or slightly above neutral pH, with the exact optimum pH influenced by the type of soil (Minami 1989) and strain of methanogens. According to Williams & Crawford (1985) methanogens adopted to acidic conditions may produce methane at a similar rate as the methanogens inhabiting neutral areas in terms of pH. One of the methanogenic strains studied by Williams & Crawford (1985) was able to form methane from CO_2 - H_2 (4:1) at rates that were similar over a range of pH values. Moore & Knowles (1987), however, observed differences in methane fluxes between a fen (pH of 4.9; 28 mg CH_4 $m^{-2}d^{-1}$) and a bog (pH of 3.7; 0.7 mg CH_4 $m^{-2}d^{-1}$) which appeared to be related to the acidity of the environments and their microbial characteristics. Delaune *et al.* (1986) found that the CH_4 production rate in Mississippi river deltaic peat is pH dependent, with an optimum rate of methanogenesis at pH 7.7. In laboratory experiment by Williams & Crawford (1984), the optimum pH for methanogenesis was found to be 6.0 for peat soils with initial field pH values of 3.8 to 4.3. According to Pacey & de Gier (1986) the optimal pH for methane production is between 6.8 and 7.2, and methane generation is not inhibited unless the pH drops below 6.0. Harris *et al.* (1985), however, observed no differences between ombrotrophic peat (pH of 3-4) and minerotrophic peat (pH of 6 to 7) in methane production, while Svensson & Roswall (1984) reported higher CH_4 production in minerotrophic peats.

Yavitt *et al.* (1987) studied the combined effect of pH adjustment and acetate amendment. In the experiment where the pH was modified in presence of acetate, they found that the untreated peat incubated at a pH of 3.1 showed lower methane production than at a pH of 4.5. The methane production did not increase markedly either when the pH was increased to 6.4.

Ponnamperuma (1984) discusses the effect of flooding on the soil pH. In surface soils with an initial pH of 5 to 6, the increase in alkalinity (HCO_3^-) associated with the reduction of ferric oxide to aqueous Fe^{2+} will cause an increase in pH, normally from 6.5 to 7.0. In calcareous soils, however, the mobility of Fe^{2+} is generally lower, and less balancing HCO_3^- ions are formed. Under these conditions, the acidifying effect of the accumulated CO_2 is dominating, causing a fall in pH to 6.5 - 7.0. Strongly alkaline soils with pH over 9 that are low in inorganic matter content, however, will show little reduction upon flooding. The pH of these soils tends to remain around 8.5, unless the soils are amended with organic matter (see Moormann & van Breemen 1978).

2.6.4 Effects of organic substrates

The degradation and mineralization of organic substrates in flooded rice soils are promoted by several actions (see Neue *et al.* 1990):

a. Thorough puddling of the soil before planting of the soils;
b. Soil temperature of the puddled layer of 30-35 °C;
c. Neutral to alkaline pH of flooded soils;
d. High soil/water ratio associated with a low bulk density (0.2-0.8 g cm^{-3}) of the puddled layer;
e. Shallow depth of the floodwater standing on the paddy;
f. High and well balanced nutrient supply.
g. Permanent supply of energy rich photosynthetic aquatic and benthic biomass;
h. High diversity of micro- and macro-organisms;
i. Supply of oxygen into the reduced root layer by rice roots, excretion and diurnal supersaturation of the floodwater with oxygen.

Yagi *et al.* (1990) found no close correlation between methane production rates and total carbon contents in soils. They observed that these results suggest that other factors controlling methane production were important, such as the balance of bacterial population and oxidizing capacity of the soil. Alternatively, it may indicate that total carbon contents - which are routinely collected during most soil surveys - are not a good indicator for the availability of organic substrates for biogenic methane production. Yagi & Minami (1990) found a positive correlation between the annual emission rate of CH_4 and the contents of readily mineralizable carbon in precultivated paddy soils. Inubushi *et al.* (1990a) found that the mineralizable-N content was most significantly related to the amount of CH_4 produced. Based on these findings, Inubushi *et al.* (1990a) concluded that CH_4 is derived mainly from the easily decomposable fraction of soil organic matter through decarboxylation of acetic acid and reduction of CO_2. The observed enhancing effect of organic matter application on CH_4 formation was also seen as evidence for this consideration.

CH_4 emissions from an Italian rice field increased considerably in the early stages of growth after application of organic matter (Schütz *et al.* 1989). Incorporation of rice straw caused a significant increase in CH_4 emissions, whereas addition of compost did not in a Japanese paddy field (Yagi & Minami 1990). Inubushi *et al.* (1990a) found that CH_4 formation in incubation experiments of paddy soils was enhanced by the application of rice straw; wheat straw; glucose; alanine; and Na-acetate. Except for paddies with high percolation rates or aeration periods, a rapid decay of organic substrate and fats turnover is always associated with high CH_4 production (Neue *et al.* 1990). Inubushi *et al.* (1990b) found that the total amount of methane emitted during the cropping season of a rice crop decreased by about 40-98% due to percolation (equivalent to 51 mm water per 2 weeks). Williams & Crawford (1984) observed an inhibition of methanogens by acetate, and concluded that CH_4 and other C-derivatives which may accumulate in peats at some depth can become inhibitory to methanogens. Similarly, Delaune *et al.* (1987) observed that the accumulation of metabolic end-products in a peat matrix appeared to be important in limiting methanogenesis in a peat from the Mississippi delta. Yavitt *et al.* (1987) reported that acetate became a toxin for methanogens when the pH of an acid *Sphagnum*-derived peat was lowered from the original pH value of 4.5 to 3.1. According to Yavitt *et al.* (1987), the undissociated forms of organic acids can permeate the cytoplasmic membranes of microorganisms and acidify the cytoplasm. At a pH of 6.4, however, the addition of acetate stimulated the methane production over that in the unamended peat (pH of 4.5) 2.2 and 1.6 fold for the 0-5 cm and 20-25 cm depth zone, respectively. Yavitt *et al.* (1987) presumed that in other studies where addition of acetate enhanced methane production, as was the case in the study of Svensson (1984), the pH of the environment must have been greater than the pK of acetic acid.

Seiler *et al.* (1984) observed seasonal peaks in CH_4 fluxes that may be associated with an increase in soil organic matter content. The peaks were observed after the incorporation of crop residues prior to flooding, and following the release of soil organic matter as root exudates and litter at the heading and flowering stages of rice. Holzapfel-Pschorn & Seiler (1986) reported peaks in CH_4 fluxes shortly after inundation of a paddy and an upland soil, which they attributed to mineralization of the organic matter. A second peak was observed in planted field in the physiologically most active period of rice growth. This peak was attributed to the supply of organic materials in the form of root exudates. Swarup (1988) observed that the second peak may also be related to the drop in Eh of the soil, which was lowest after 30 days of crop growth. Such a drop in Eh, however, may also be seen as the expression of a microbial population explosion caused by the increase in readily decomposable organic materials under anaerobic conditions. The amount of CH_4 formed in paddy soils is positively correlated with several soil parameters such as the content of organic-C and water soluble organic-C, and mineralizable-N (Inubushi *et al.* 1990a).

Application of rice straw at a rate of 12 ton per hectare enhanced the rate of methane emission by a factor 2 as compared with the control plot, while higher applications did not result in any additional increases (Schütz *et al.* 1989a). Incorporation of rice straw 1 or 2 months before submerging the paddy soil reduced subsequent methane emissions to 15-50% of the amounts recorded when straw was incorporated at the time of flooding (Inubushi *et al.* 1990b). Application of rice straw to paddy fields significantly increased the CH_4 fluxes in all sites studied by Yagi *et al.* (1990). The annual emission rate from the paddy plots supplied with 6000 kg ha^{-1} of rice straw and a mineral fertilizer increased by a factor 2-3 as compared with the rates observed at the sites which only received the mineral fertilizer. The methane fluxes measured by Yagi *et al.* (1990) differed between 3 paddy soils amended with rice straw, with annual emissions of 44.8, 27.0, 9.8, and 1.1 g CH_4 m^{-2} yr^{-1} for the "peaty", "alluvial", "humic Andosol" and "light coloured andosol" respectively. The interpretation of this type of results, in terms of possible effects of soil conditions on methane fluxes, would be facilitated to some extent if the soils were fully characterized and classified according to a widely accepted system (e.g., FAO/Unesco 1971-1981).

Kimura *et al.* (1991) observed that the decomposition of soil organic matter, and thereby the potential CO_2 and CH_4 production, are primarily determined by the soil chemical properties and the temperature, and not by the agricultural practices. According to this study, the agricultural management, such as mid-summer drainage and intermittent irrigation, may only influence the CO_2/CH_4 ratio.

In conclusion, it appears that the nature (e.g., C/N quotient), volume, timing and mode of application/incorporation of organic substrates to waterlogged soils may both affect CH_4 production and consumption.

2.6.5 Effects of nutrient status and mineral fertilizers

Svensson (1986) observed that nutrient availability and H-mediated interactions between nitrogen fixing cyanobacteria and methanogenic bacteria may influence CH_4 fluxes in an acid tundra mire. Cicerone & Shetter (1983) found CH_4 fluxes to be related to peat depth and nutrient enrichment through upward seepage.

Mosier *et al.* (1991), in studies in the Colorado short grass steppe, nitrogen-fertilized and wheat-growing prairie soils from spring to late autumn 1990, found that nitrogen fertilization and cultivation can both decrease CH_4 uptake and increase N_2O production. Similarly, nitrogen fertilization applied as urea decreased the CH_4 uptake in a Colorado shortsteppe grassland (Mosier *et al.* 1991). Steudler *et al.* (1989) reported similar observations for temperate forest soils. In the annual fertilized sites (AFS), annual N-urea applications caused the CH_4 uptake to decrease by an average of 41% ($P < 0.01$). Methane uptake by the midslope site decreased from 6.3 to 4.1 g C $ha^{-1}d^{-1}$ as a result of applying 45 g m^{-2} urea-N in 1981 ($P < 0.01$). A similar application to the more fertile swale soil in 1982 did not alter the CH_4 uptake, which averaged 3.6 g CH_4 $ha^{-1}d^{-1}$. The data suggested that high N-turnover, whether native or due to fertilization, suppresses CH_4 uptake (Mosier *et al.* 1991).

Cicerone & Shetter (1983) reported a 5-fold increase in methane emissions in a Californian rice field upon the application of $(NH_4)_2SO_4$. Schütz *et al.* (1989), however, recorded reduced CH_4 fluxes after addition of $(NH_4)_2SO_4$ or urea to rice paddies. In the case of ammonium sulphate the decrease was attributed to the presence of sulphates. Due to the nature of the reduction sequence in waterlogged soils, addition of fertilizers including compounds such as nitrates or sulphates may suppress methanogenesis (see Section 2.6.8). According to Jacobsen *et al.* (1981) this may be due to a two-fold effect: a) nitrate delays the formation of methane through its effect on the redox conditions, b) nitrate may have a toxic effect on methanogenesis.

Preliminary results reported by Schütz *et al.* (1990) showed that the application of the mineral fertilizers KCl and K_2SO_4 as well as various organic manures (i.e. animal excreta, rape seed cake), as commonly used in the Hangzhou area, did not significantly affect the CH_4 emission rates. Lindau *et al.* (1991) reported a significant urea-fertilizer effect in a flooded Louisiana rice field. The observed CH_4 emissions were highly variable during the observation period, with maximum methane emissions from the 0, 100, 200, 200 and 200 kg urea-N treatments amounting to 6.0, 8.9, 9.8 and 11.2 kg CH_4 $ha^{-1}dm^{-1}$ respectively. The effect of fertilizer application is also influenced by the mode of application. Deep incorporation in contrast to surface application of urea increased total the CH_4 emission by 19% on a crop-season basis in an Italian paddy (Schütz *et al.* 1989a).

A tabular review of methane emissions from various types of wetland rice fields, subjected to different fertilizer and/or organic amendments, has been prepared by Bouwman (1991).

The above quoted studies indicate that the relationship between CH_4 flux and mineral fertilizer amendment is complex and depends on crop factors, soil factors as well as cultivation practices such as rate, timing, mode of application, and type of fertilizers in relation to water management practices.

2.6.6 Effects of redox conditions

Takai & Kimura (1966) recognize two stages in the reduction of submerged soils. During the first stage, facultative or obligate anaerobes, consume O_2 or reduce NO_3^-, Mn^{4+} and Fe^{3+}. In the subsequent stage, obligate anaerobes reduce sulphate and form methane. Earlier, Takai (1961) found that the CO_2/CH_4 ratio in Japanese rice fields depends on the "oxidizing capacity", expressed by the amount of O_2, NO_3^-, Mn^{4+} and Fe^{3+}. Figure 2.3 shows the critical redox potential at which oxidized inorganic redox systems begin to undergo reduction in flooded soils. The sequence of the reduction processes occurring in anaerobic soil can be described with the Nernst equation (e.g., Novozamsky *et al.* 1978).

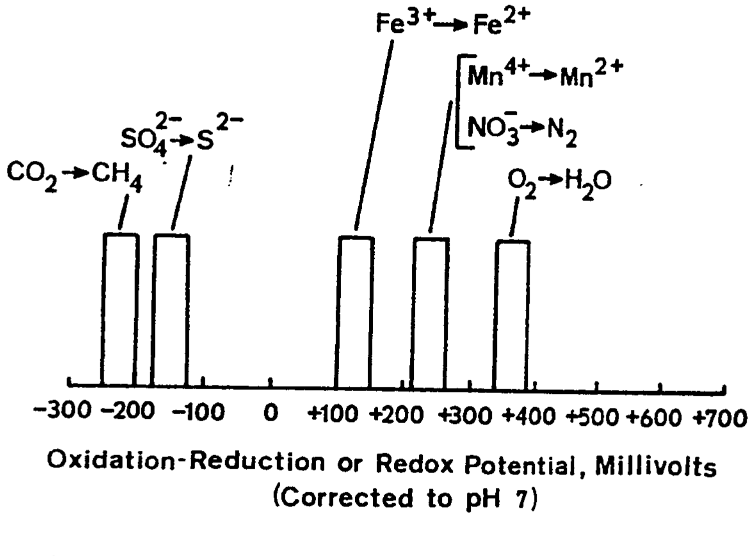


Figure 2.3 Schematic representation of the critical redox potential at which oxidized inorganic redox systems begin to undergo reduction in flooded soils (After Patrick 1981).

In soils with high contents of iron and organic matter the Eh falls to -50 mV and may then slowly decline over a period of a month to -200 mV. Soils low in active iron with high organic matter contents attain Eh values of -200 to -300 mV within 2 weeks after submergence (e.g., Ponnamperuma 1972, 1981). Flooded rice soils may have Eh values as low as -250 to -300 mV (Patrick Jr. 1981), while redox potentials (corrected to pH 7) of -150 mV to -190 mV are needed for methane formation (Neue *et al.* 1990). Lindau *et al.* (1991) observed no methane formation above -100 mV, while Jacobsen *et al.* (1981) only observed a small amount of CH_4 formation at a redox potential of -120 mV.

Yagi *et al.* (1990) observed strong seasonal variations in CH_4 fluxes in field experiments. The CH_4 emission began to increase as the Eh decreased, nearly a month after flooding of the paddies. The fluxes increased as the rice plant grew further. Considerable decreases in CH_4 fluxes were recorded during the period of mid-summer drainage (increase in Eh) and shortly after top-dressing the rice plants. Methane emissions were not detected or very low during dry soil conditions in a Louisiana rice field, corresponding with the pre-flood period and time prior to harvest (Lindau *et al.* 1991). After drainage and aeration the redox potential rapidly rises from negative to positive values of 300 to 600 mV typical for aerated soils (e.g., Moormann & van Breemen 1978). Methane consumption may thus increase when the soil is temporarily drained. Methane production may however continue for as long as the interior of clods remain reduced and adequate substrates are present in these aggregates.

2.6.7 Effects of depth of water table

The depth of the water table may influence methane production in different ways. Methane fluxes from tundras (Sebacher *et al.* 1986) and swamp sites (Harriss *et al.* 1982) are positively correlated with the level of the water table (see also Section 2.6.6). Moore & Knowles (1987) found that methane evolution in Canadian peatland soils decreased in a log-relationship as the water table was lowered; the molar ratios of CO_2/CH_4 increased from 4-173 under inundated conditions to >2500 when the water table was at a depth of 70 cm. Wilson *et al.* (1989), however, found that the water depth was poorly correlated with the methane flux in a temperate swamp. Similarly, Lindau *et al.* (1991) found no relationship between floodwater depth in a flooded rice paddy (5-10 cm) and CH_4 emission. In the study of Harriss & Sebacher (1981) soil-water temperature and water depth did not exhibit any relationship to methane flux. Sebacher *et al.* (1986), however, found that CH_4 emissions increased with water depth up to a depth of about 10 cm, but thereafter the emissions decreased. According to DeBont *et al.* (1978) and Delaune *et al.* (1983) microbial oxidation of CH_4 may occur in aerobic water columns deeper than 10 cm, possibly due to transport of oxygen to the rhizosphere through the aerenchyma of vascular plants. Inubushi *et al.* (1990a) found that methanogenic activity was higher at 5-10 cm than at 0-2 cm depth in a submerged paddy soil, which was sampled at different depths after harvest, although the overall activity was generally low. Inubushi *et al.* (1990a) attributed this to the fact that in the upper part of the solum, which included the oxidized layer, more CH_4 is oxidized than in the lower part during rice cultivation, and that most of the organic substrates in the soil are depleted at harvest time.

Moore & Knowles (1989) found that CH_4 evolution decreased in a log-relationship as the water table was lowered in a laboratory column filled with peat. Similarly, twenty per cent of the stations studied during a high-latitude transect, all with a lowered water table, had zero or negative CH_4 fluxes possibly as a result of methane oxidation (Whalen & Reeburgh 1990). Thus lowering of the water table in tundras as a result of a warmer, drier climate will decrease methane fluxes and could cause these areas to provide a negative feedback for atmospheric methane. Alternatively, oxidation of peat following a drop in the watertable may form a substantial source of atmospheric CO_2, another important greenhouse gas (e.g., Moore & Knowles 1987).

2.6.8 Effects of sulphates and salts

Bartlett *et al.* (1985, 1987) found that methane concentrations and sulphate concentrations are negatively correlated. Similarly, Delaune *et al.* (1983) found that CH_4 emission was inversely related to salinity and sulphate concentration, with CH_4 increasing and salinity and sulphate decreasing with distance from the ocean. Sulphate depletion in a Humic Fluvisol, developed under marine influence, lead to intensive methanogenesis (Giani & Giani 1990).

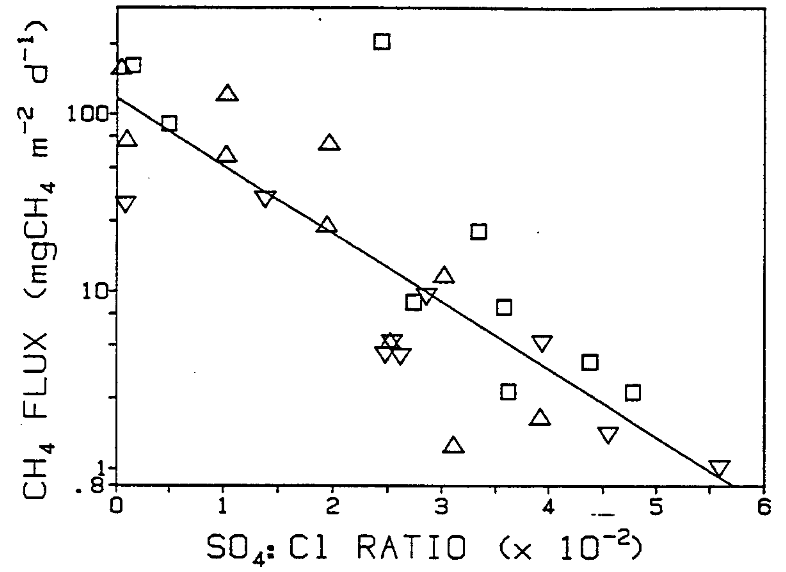


Figure 2.4 Average SO_4^{2-}/Cl^- ratios in the top 15 cm of marsh soils and methane emissions across the air-soil interface ($r = -0.824$, $P < 0.1$; After Bartlett *et al.* *1987*).

Sulphate and sulphides may be toxic to methanogens (Jacobsen *et al.* 1981). A concentration of 10 m*M* sulphate is considered inhibitory for methane evolution (Delaune *et al.* 1983). In incubation experiments, the formation of CH_4 is suppressed by the application of Na_2SO4, possibly because methane forming bacteria may be overcome by sulphate reducing bacteria in competing for hydrogen (Inubushi *et al.* 1990a). The partial pressure of hydrogen utilized by sulphate reducing bacteria is lower than the one required by methane forming bacteria (Schönheit *et al.* 1982). Hori *et al.* (1990) found that sulphate reducing bacteria and methane forming bacteria compete for acetic acid in submerged paddy soils. Such a competition for acetic acid has also been found in peat soils (Yavitt *et al.* 1987) and in sediments (Ward & Winfrey 1985). Sulphate depletion allows methanogenic bacteria to use acetate and H_2/CO_2 as substrates (Mountfort *et al.* 1980; Winfrey *et al.* 1981), otherwise the acetate is used by sulphate reducers (Kristjansson *et al.* 1982; Winfrey *et al.* 1981). According to Thauer *et al.* (1977) the presence of sulphate prevents methane formation, due to the competition between sulphate-reducing and methanogenic bacteria for hydrogen and acetate, because sulphate-reduction produces more energy per mole H_2 or acetate than CH_4-formation. Bartlett *et al.* (1987) found a strong correlation between SO_4^{2-}/Cl^- ratios and CH_4 release to the atmosphere across a salt marsh (Figure 2.4), and saw this as an indication that the activity of sulphate reducers as a primary control of CH_4 flux. Oremland *et al.* (1982), however, have suggested that competition with sulphate reducing bacteria may not be important in salt marsh sediments due to the utilization of "non-competitive" substrates such as methanol and methylated amines. Zaiss (1981) reported that the inhibitory effect of sulphates on methane production in freshwater sediments can be reversed by addition of acetate or H_2.

Lawongse & Wada (1988) found that addition of NaCl and Na_2SO4 suppressed denitrification and Fe^{3+} reduction, and enhanced the accumulation of various organic acids such as acetic acid, propionic, lactic, and p-hydroxy-phenylacetic acids. On the basis of these observations they concluded that CH_4 formation and sulphate reduction are more strongly suppressed with salts than the biochemical reactions responsible for the formation of these organic acids. Alternatively, a possible explanation could be that rice varieties differ in their susceptibility to salinity. Moormann & van Breemen (1978) wrote that at a given salinity level, rice plants are more sensitive to NaCl at high light intensities and low relative humidity, and consequently can withstand a given level of salinity better during the wet than during the dry season. This may be seen as an additional complicating factor in interpreting the effect of NaCl on CH_4 emissions.

In the study of Saenjan & Wada (1990) the suppressive effects of NaCl on CO_2 and CH_4 formation varied widely depending on the type of organic acids present (i.e. acetic, propionic, lactic, p-hydroxyphenilacetic, ± Na_2SO4), becoming more evident with increasing NaCl concentration. Among the two main pathways of CH_4-formation, the reduction of CO_2 is less susceptible to NaCl than the decomposition of acetic acid (Saenjan & Wada 1990). In the control plot examined without addition of organic acids, CH_4-formation was slightly more susceptible to NaCl than to SO_4^{2-} reduction (Saenjan & Wada 1990).

2.6.9 Effects of "topographic position"

Many paddy fields and natural wetlands occur in "depressed" topographic positions and hydrological settings that favour the supply of bases as well as organic detritus from surrounding sites. The topographical and related hydrological situation may thus influence the nutrient status and thereby indirectly affect the production and emission of CH_4.

Only a few measurements of trace gas fluxes have been made along toposequences. Moore *et al.* (1990) found that topography and water table elevation were important controls on methane emission in subarctic fens. Mosier *et al.* (1991) measured the CH_4 uptake along a toposequence - sandy loam upland (mid slope) versus sand clay loam lowland (swale) - in a shortgrass steppe in Colorado to assess whether the landscape position affected the uptake of CH_4. The methane uptake rates in the unfertilized grassland averaged 3.6, 5.8 and 6.3 g C $ha^{-1}d^{-1}$ in the swales, CAFS (control annual fertilized), and midslope sites respectively, between March and December 1990. Methane uptake was significantly less in the swale ($P<0.001$) than at the CAFS and midslope sites. The midslope and CAFS soils were similar in texture and total N-content, whereas the swale soil had finer texture and higher total-N content. The soil nitrate and ammonium contents were similar. Annual in situ mineralisation at the midslope, however, was substantially lower than in the swale (41 compared to 55 kg N $ha^{-1}yr^{-1}$), suggesting that it was the N-turnover (mineralization and nitrification), rather than the mineral N-content, which directly influenced the CH_4 uptake (Mosier *et al.* 1991).

2.6.10 Effects of soil type

Since soil conditions generally are poorly described in CH_4 emission studies, little experimental evidence is available on the possible effects of texture and mineralogy on methane emissions. Soil texture and mineralogy, through their effect on puddling, can affect percolation rates and thereby the net emission of CH_4 in waterlogged paddy soils (Neue *et al.* 1990). Table 2.1 shows methane emissions for three Japanese paddy fields, reflecting differences in mean fluxes between these soils (Inubushi *et al.* 1990a). Similarly, Yagi & Minami (1990) found a relationship between CH_4 emissions from paddies and soil type, the emissions decreasing in the sequence "peaty soils", "alluvial soils" and "andosols". With respect to Japanese paddy fields, Kimura *et al.* (1991) reported a significant correlation between the CO_2/CH_4 ratio and the content of free iron and the amount of NH_4^+ produced during incubation.

Asami & Takai (1970) added amorphous iron oxide to anaerobically incubated soils, which depressed the formation of volatile fatty acids and methane. Similarly, the content of free Fe-oxide was negatively correlated with the amount of CH_4 produced, except for 2 of the 13 Japanese paddy soils investigated. Takai & Wada (1990) postulate that the content of bio-active iron may be the most important controlling factor for methane fermentation.

Table 2.1 Differences in CH_4 emission from 3 Japanese paddy fields (After Inubushi *et al.* 1990a).

Cropping pattern	Japanese soil type	CH_4 emission* range resp. mean	
With rice plants	Gley soil	1.9 - 22.7	12.7
	Gray lowland soil	0.1 - 15.8	5.2
	Brown lowland soil	0.5 - 3.3	1.8
Without rice plants	Gley soil	0.2 - 5.1	1.9
	Gray lowland soil	0.02 - 0.2	0.06
	Brown lowland soil	0.3 - 1.4	0.9

Note: Methane emissions specified in mg CH_4-C $h^{-1}m^{-2}$

The following soil conditions are considered adverse to CH_4 production (Neue *et al.* 1990):

- Electrical conductivity (EC) greater than 4 mS cm^{-1} while flooded.
- Low soil pH (acidic or allitic reactions)
- Ferritic, gibbsitic, ferruginous or oxidic mineralogy.
- More than 40 % of kaolinitic or halloysitic clay minerals
- Less than 18% of clay in the fine earth fraction if the water regime is epiaquic.
- Occasional drying of the soil during the cultivation period.

This type of soil conditions usually occurs within the order of Oxisols, most of the Ultisols and some of the Aridisols, Entisols and Inceptisols (*cf* USDA 1987). Methane production is often favoured in rice soils formed on Entisols, Histosols, Inceptisols, Alfisols, Vertisols and Mollisols (*cf* Neue *et al.* 1990). These considerations indicate the usefulness of having a global soil data base to show where potentially suited areas of potential CH_4 emissions occur. The aim of the WISE programme is to develop such a global database, with a 1/2 x 1/2 degree longitude by latitude resolution, containing data on the main chemical and physical properties of the major soils of the world. The interest for this type of data has recently been expressed by several research groups (see Sombroek 1990, Braatz & Hogan 1991).

2.7 Modelling CH_4 emissions from paddy soils and natural wetlands

2.7.1 Empirical models

Three global modelling exercises of CH_4 emissions are discussed in this Section, namely those of Matthews & Fung (1987), Aselmann & Crützen (1990), and Neue *et al.* (1990). In this report we use the term "empirical model" for approaches in which the total emission of methane from rice paddies or natural wetlands is basically calculated as follows:

$$\text{Emission}_{CH4} = \text{Sum}\ (A_i.R_i.t_i)$$

with: A_i the harvested area of rice (or area of natural wetland); R_i the average release of methane from the individual areas over the respective release periods as measured in the field; t_i the average length of the respective vegetation periods.

Natural wetlands

Matthews & Fung (1987) combined three data bases in their study of global CH_4 emissions from natural wetlands: 1) the vegetation data base of Unesco (1973), 2) the Soil Map of the World (FAO/Unesco 1971-1981, as digitized by Zobler 1986), and 3) the Operational Navigational Charts to estimate the fractional inundation on a 1 degree grid basis. The integration of these databases produced 3233 grids of 1 x 1 degree, which comprise 130 vegetation types covering 100 units of the FAO/Unesco Soil Map of the World with fractional inundation ranging from 1 to 100%. Since only few methane measurements, from well defined ecosystems, are available presently, Matthews & Fung (1987) reduced the information on wetlands to 5 broad functional groups: forested bog, non-forested bog, forested swamp, non-forested swamp, and alluvial formations. Methane fluxes, considered representative for each of these groups, were subsequently used to compute global CH_4 emissions from natural wetlands. The "representative" fluxes ranged from 0.03 g CH_4 $m^{-2}d^{-1}$ for the alluvial formations, to 0.2 g CH_4 $m^{-2}d^{-1}$ for forested and non-forested bogs. Based on the above assumptions and methodology Matthews & Fung (1987) arrived at emissions of 110 Tg CH_4 yr^{-1} from natural wetlands. With respect to the study of Matthews & Fung (1987), Wilson *et al.* (1989) noted that latitudinally averaged methane productive seasons may induce considerable error terms, at least in temperate regions, since the seasonal changes in methane flux may be closely linked to the growing dynamics of the respective vascular plant communities (see also Section 2.4.2).

Aselmann & Crützen (1990) developed a global data set on the geographic distribution and seasonability of freshwater wetlands and rice paddies using a 2.5 degrees latitude by 5 degrees longitude grid. The data set was complied from wetland monographs, surveys and maps, while information on the seasonality was derived from climatic records and hydrological data of major catchment areas. The natural wetlands were grouped into six broad categories, termed: bogs, fens, swamps, marshes, flood-plains and shallow lakes. In the initial approach, published net primary production (NPP) data were used to develop latitude dependent mean NPP values for each of the six categories of natural wetlands. When the average CH_4/NPP ratio (on a carbon basis) of 2-7% is applied to the averaged NPP values of the six wetland categories a total emission of 50-360 Tg CH_4 yr^{-1} is obtained, which is far too large a range to be consistent with the overall CH_4 budget. Aselmann & Crützen (1990) therefore concluded that use of the CH_4/NPP ratio seems inappropriate to obtain reasonable CH_4 emission estimates. In a subsequent effort, they extrapolated geometric means of measured CH_4 fluxes to the six categories of wetlands and obtained global emissions of 60-140 Tg yr^{-1} for natural wetlands.

Although Matthews & Fung (1987) and Aselman & Crützen (1990) calculated the global acreage of natural wetlands as 5.3 10^{12} m^2 and 5.7 10^{12} m^2 respectively, it is interesting to note that the geographical distribution of these wetlands varies due to differences in the methodologies used (*cf* Bouwman 1990). Additionally, the definitions used for the various wetland categories (e.g., bogs, fens) do not seem be standardized internationally. An important contribution to refining global estimates of CH_4 fluxes from wetland soils would be the production of a global data base showing the extent of hydromorphic soils using actual soil survey information (see Section 2.7.4). There is also a clear need for more "representative" methane emission measurements from well defined categories of wetlands and paddies (e.g., IGBP 1991, Matthews *et al.* 1991). Bouwman's (1990, p. 93-94) tabular review of the variability and range in CH_4 fluxes from broadly defined categories of swamps, marshes, bogs, tundras and salt water environments illustrates this point. This brings us to a general problem encountered in global data bases. The key attributes of the spatial units (grids or polygons) of necessity are characterized using point observations (e.g., for soils, fluxes, rainfall), which by definition are limited in space and time. Interpolation or extrapolation of this information to larger areas remains a sensitive, and unresolved, issue of discussion (e.g., Nielsen & Bouma 1985, Bouma & Bregt 1988).

Rice paddies

Estimated global methane emissions from rice paddies also differ considerably between different studies. Matthews & Fung (1987), for instance, arrived at a figure of 40-160 Tg yr^{-1} for rice paddies. According to Neue *et al.* (1990), however, only 80 10^6 million ha of harvested wetland rice lands are potential sources of CH_4 formation, corresponding with a global emission from wetland rice of only 25-60 Tg. Neue *et al.* (1990) discriminated the global rice area harvested in 1988 with respect to major rice ecologies (irrigated, rainfed, deep water and upland) and considered four groups of soil related controlling factors (temperature; texture and mineralogy; Eh/pH buffer systems; salinity) in their analysis. Subsequently, they assumed an average CH_4 emission of 200-500 mg CH_4 m^{-2} during an average growing season of 130 days. This assumption of an average growing period of 130 days for rice globally seems rather tricky alike the use of one single flux range for all rice ecologies. For instance, there is a considerable acreage of floating rice, which grows with increasing water depths. It is likely that in the deep water areas (floating rice) the methane release may be lower than those observed in well managed, shallowly irrigated (about 10 cm), rice paddies.

2.7.2 Process-based models

There is a recognized need for process-based models of CH_4 production, as well as a general recognition that the present understanding of the controlling factors and processes is not yet sufficient for such activities (e.g., Van Breemen & Feijtel 1990; IGBP 1991). In order to develop process-related models of methane production additional research will be needed on (see JEA/EPA 1990):

a) The biogeochemistry of methane production, both in paddies and natural wetlands, including methanogenesis, methanotrophs, and regulating factors;
b) The effects of climate, soil, water management, cultivars, fertilizers application, cultural practices on CH_4 fluxes;
c) Variation in CH_4 fluxes between sites in time;
d) Effects of techniques reducing CH_4 emissions on emissions of N_2O;
e) Field level measurements to assess spatial variability, and simulation models to synthesize the process and field level data. Mosier (1990) reviewed the techniques which can be used to measure trace gas fluxes in terrestrial ecosystems. Possible procedures for "scaling up" field measurements to larger spatial areas have recently been discussed by IGBP-IGAC (1991).

Whereas process-related simulation for CH_4 emissions from natural wetlands should be seen as a very distant goal, proposals for developing process-related models for methane emissions by rice paddies have recently been initiated. Braatz & Hogan (1991) discuss how such a process based model could be structured. They propose to develop three major, interactive modules describing the soil redox processes, the development of the rice plant, and the "physical and microbial" dynamics. Braatz & Hogan (1991) formulate the minimum data requirements of these models as follows:

a) Daily climate data (solar radiation, rainfall, irradiation, maximum and minimum temperature).
b) Experimental site data (latitude, longitude, planting date, rice variety)
c) Soil and fertilizer data (soil nitrate, ammonium, iron, manganese, organic carbon, oxidation state, bulk density, pH, crop residue, C/N ratio; timing, type, amount and depth of incorporation of mineral or organic fertilizers; initial concentration and addition of sulphate; root exudation and die back coefficients; gas transport properties; changes in redox potential at 2, 5 and 10 cm depth with time; floodwater depth; percolation rate; depth of perched water table; and soil disturbances)
d) Emission data, including hourly CH_4 (and N2O) emissions.

Only a limited number of the soil data requirements listed under item c) are collected on a routine basis during routine soil surveys (*cf* Msanya 1987). Additionally, the description of soil conditions in most greenhouse gas related studies is rather basic (e.g., acid clay). This means that a coordinated effort must be made to collect the "basic" datasets according to uniform procedures at all the present/new experimental sites in order to develop, test and validate the proposed process-based CH_4 models.

2.7.3 Stochastic models

Deterministic versions of process-based models by definition will produce results pertaining to single events. However, since the environmental and land use factors are always subject to spatial and temporal variability there will be a degree of stochastic uncertainty in the results of deterministic models. Future developments should consider the possibility of combining a stochastic and deterministic approach in one single CH_4-model; this should be seen as a long term objective.

2.7.4 Required global digital databases

Matthews (1990) discusses the design and development of global digital databases and their integration in studies of terrestrial sources and sinks on greenhouse gases, proposing a sequential approach. First, primary databases on major surface characteristics are prepared. These databases are subsequently integrated to produce secondary sets of source categories (e.g., soils, vegetation, hydrology). Finally, these secondary databases are combined with measured flux to produce tertiary data sets on emissions. The basic data bases required in estimating biogenic sources/sinks of methane include vegetation, soils, land use, seasonal inundation, temperature and precipitation (see review by Matthews 1990). A review of global land databases has been prepared by Bouwman (1990 p. 36) and Sombroek (1990). IIASA has recently completed a 1/2 x 1/2 degree resolution global database of mean monthly values of temperature, precipitation, and cloudiness (Leemans & Cramer 1991). Matthews *et al.* (1991) developed a data base on the geographic and seasonal distribution of rice cultivation on a global scale.

A wealth of information on soil conditions can be inferred from the FAO/Unesco terminology (see Sombroek 1990 p. 228). Groenendijk (1990) compiled a 1/2 x 1/2 degree resolution soil dataset to estimate the water-holding capacity of soil in Europe using soil maps at a scale of 1:1 M to 1:5M. For each grid cell the three dominant major soil types were specified, together with information on topsoil texture, stoniness and dominant slope (Groenendijk 1990). In Chapter 6 of the background document we shall discuss the proposed list of soil attributes for the 1/2 x 1/2 degree grid WISE soil database.

2.8 Conclusions

This literature survey shows that there are many microbial, climatic, hydrological, soil, crop and management factors that control the production, consumption and transfer of methane in terrestrial ecosystems in different ways. Some of these factors work additively whereas other have antagonistic effects on CH4 production and emission. At this moment it is still proves difficult to establish to what degree the respective process controlling factors will quantitatively affect the net CH_4 production and emission in a given terrestrial ecosystem at a particular point in time. This is why proposals for developing process-related CH_4-models have only recently been formulated, initially with respect to rice paddies. The preliminary data requirements of these models in terms of soil conditions, as formulated by Braatz & Hogan (1991), already exceed the level of information held in most existing high resolution soil survey reports, so that new data collection activities should be initiated at the level of the experimental site.

Refined estimates of global CH_4 production can already be obtained by extrapolating seasonally averaged, field measured CH_4 emission rates considered representative for well described natural wetlands or rice ecosystems, as occurring in the various regions of the globe, to the corresponding "ecosystem". Such a refined extrapolation will not only require additional CH_4-flux data but also knowledge of the geographic and seasonal distribution of the various types of natural and man-made wetlands (cf Matthews *et al.* 1991) as well as more detailed and up to date information about the distribution and main characteristics of potential methane producing soils. The global soil data base that will be developed in the WISE programme will be very useful to have available in the context of these activities. This database could also be used in other studies related to global change, such as emissions of nitrous oxide from soils, climate-vegetation models, as well as to assess the vulnerability of soils to chemical pollution. As such, the WISE database will form an essential "data layer" of a 1/2 x 1/2 degree grid based Geographical Information System for modelling terrestrial processes of global change.

2.9 References

Alperin, M.J. & W.S. Reeburgh 1985. Inhibition experiments on anaerobic methane oxidation. *Applied and Environmental Microbiology 50, 940-945.*

Asami, T. & Y. Takai 1970. Relation between reduction of free iron oxides and formation of gases in a paddy soil (in Japanese with English summary). *Journal of Science of Soil Manure 41, 48-55.*

Aselmann, I. & P.J. Crützen 1990. A global inventory of wetland distribution and seasonality, net primary productivity, and estimated methane emissions. In: *Soils and the greenhouse effect* (ed. A.F. Bouwman). John Wiley & Sons, Chichester. pp. 441-449.

Batjes, 1990. *Macro-scale land evaluation using the 1:1 M World Soils and Terrain Digital Database: Identification of a possible approach and research needs.* SOTER Report 5, International Society of Soil Science, Wageningen.

Bartlett, K.B., R.C. Harriss & D.I. Sebacher 1985. Methane flux from coastal salt marshes. *Journal of Geophysical Research 90, 5710-5720.*

Bartlett, K.B., D.S. Bartlett, R.C. Harriss & D.I. Sebacher 1987. Methane emissions along a salt marsh salinity gradient. *Biogeochemistry 4, 183-202.*

Bartlett, K.B., P.M. Crill, D.I. Sebacher, R.C. Harriss, J.O. Wilson & J.M. Melack 1988. Methane fluxes from the central Amazonian floodplain. *Journal of Geophysical Research 93, 1571-1582.*

Bartlett, D.S., K.B. Bartlett, J.M. Hartman, R.C. Harriss, D.I. Sebacher, R. Pelletier-Travis, D.A. Dow & D.P. Brannon 1989. Methane emissions from the Florida Everglades: Patterns of variability in a regional wetland ecosystem. *Global Biogeochemical Cycles 3, 364-374.*

Blake, D.R. & F.S. Rowland 1988. Continuing worldwide increase in tropospheric methane. *Science 239, 1129-1131.*

Bolin, B., B.R. Böös, J. Jäger & R.A. Warrick (eds) 1986. *The greenhouse effect, climatic change and ecosystems.* SCOPE 29, John Wiley and Sons, Chichester.

Bolle, H.J., W. Seiler & B. Bolin 1986. Other greenhouse gases and aerosols: assessing their role for atmospheric radiative transfer. In: *The greenhouse effect climatic change and ecosystems* (eds B. Bolin, B.R. Döös, B.A. Warrick and D. Jager). SCOPE 29, John Wiley & Sons, New York. pp. 157-203.

Bouma, J. & A.K. Bregt (eds) 1989. *Land qualities in space and time.* Pudoc, Wageningen.

Bouwman, A.F. 1990. *Soils and the greenhouse effect.* John Wiley & Sons, Chichester.

Bouwman, A.F. 1991. Agronomic aspects of wetland rice cultivation and associated methane emissions. *Biogeochemistry* (accepted).

Braatz, B.V. & K.B. Hogan 1991. *Sustainable rice productivity and methane reduction research plan.* U.S. Environ. Prot. Agency. Office of Air and Radiation, Washington DC.

Cicerone, R.J. and R.S. Oremland 1988. Biogeochemical aspects of atmospheric methane. *Global Biogeochemical Cycles, 2, 299-327.*

Cicerone, R.J. and J.D. Shetter 1981. Sources of atmospheric methane: Measurements in rice paddies and a discussion. *Journal of Geophysical Research, 86, 7203-7209.*

Cicerone, R.J. & J.D. Shetter 1983. Seasonal variation of methane flux from a California rice paddy. *J. Geophys. Res. 88, 11022-11024.*

Cicerone, R.J., J.D. Shetter and C.C. Delwiche, 1983. Seasonal variations of methane flux from a California rice paddy. *Journal of Geophysical Research, 88, 11022-11024.*

Clymo, R.S. 1984. The limits of peat growth. Philos. *Trans. R. Soc. London B303, 605-654.*

Conrad, R. & F. Rothfuss 1991. Methane oxidation in the soil surface layer of a flooded rice field and the effect of ammonium. *Biol. Fert. Soil 12, 28-32.*

Crill, P.M., K.B. Bartlett, R.C. Harriss, E. Gorham, E.S. Verry, D.I. Sebacher, L. Madzar & W. Sanner 1988. Methane flux from Minnesota peatlands. *Global Biogeochemical Cycles 2, 371-384.*

Crill, P.M., K.B. Bartlett, J.O. Wilson, D.I. Sebacher, R.C. Harris, J.M. Melack, S. MacIntyre, L. Lesack & L. Smith-Morill 1988. Tropospheric methane from an Amazonian floodplain lake. *Journal of Geophysical Research 93, 1564-1570.*

Crützen, P.J. 1991. Methane's sinks and sources. *Nature 350, 380-381.*

De Bont, J.A.M., K.K. Lee & D.F. Bouldin 1978. Bacterial oxidation of methane in a rice paddy. *Ecological Bulletin 26, 91-96.*

De Datta, S.K. 1981. *Principles and practices of rice production*. John Wiley & Sons, New York.

Delaune, R.D., C.J. Smith & W.H. Patrick Jr. 1983. Methane release from Gulf coast wetlands. *Tellus 35B, 8-15.*

Delaune, R.D., C.J. Smith & W.H. Patrick Jr. 1986. Methane production in Mississippi River deltaic peat plain. Org. Geochem. 9, 193-197.

Devol, A.H., J.E. Richey, W.A. Clark & S.L. King 1988. Methane emissions to the troposphere from the Amazon Floodplain. J. Geophysical Res. 93, 1583-1592.

Dickinson, R.E. & R.J. Cicerone 1986. Future global warming from atmospheric trace gases. Nature 319, 109-114.

Ehhalt, D.H. 1974. The atmospheric cycle of methane. *Tellus 26, 58-70.*

Ehhalt, D.H. & U. Schmidt 1978. Sources and sinks of atmospheric methane. *Pageoph. 116, 452-464*

FAO/Unesco 1971-1981. Soil Map of the World (1:5 M scale). Volumes I to 10. Unesco, Paris.

FAO/Unesco 1988. *Soil Map of the World, Revised Legend*. World Resources report 60. FAO, Rome (Reprinted as Tech. Paper 20. ISRIC, Wageningen 1989).

Giani, L. & D. Giani 1990. Characteristics of a marshland built up from marine and peat material. *Geoderma 47, 151-157.*

Groenendijk, H. 1990. Compilation of a soil dataset for Europe. In: *Soils and the greenhouse effect* (ed. A.F. Bouwman). John Wiley & Sons, Chichester. pp. 535-539.

Hackman, Ch. W. 1979. Rice field ecology in northeastern Thailand. The effect of wet and dry season on a cultivated aquatic ecosystem. *Monographiae Biologicae 34*, W. Junk Publ.

Hao, W.M., D. Scharffe & P.J. Crützen 1988. Production of N2O, CH_4 and CO_2 from soils in the tropical savanna during the dry season. *Journal of Atmospheric Chemistry 7, 93-105.*

Harriss, R.C. & D.I. Sebacher 1981. Methane flux in forested freshwater swamps of the southeastern United States. *Geophysical Research Letters 9, 1002-1004.*

Harris, R.C., D.I. Sebacher & F.P. Day 1982. Methane flux in the Great Dismal Swamp. *Nature 297, 673-674.*

Harriss, R.C., E. Gorham, D.I. Sebacher, K.B. Bartlett and P.A. Flebbe 1985. Methane flux from northern peatlands. *Nature 315, 652-654.*

Holzapfel-Pschorn, A. and W. Seiler 1986. Methane emissions during a cultivation period from an Italian rice paddy. *Journal of Geophysical Research 91, 11803-11814.*

Holzapfel-Pschorn, A., R. Conrad & W. Seiler 1986. Effects of vegetation on the emissions of methane from submerged rice paddy soil. *Plant and Soil 92, 223-233.*

Hori, K., K. Inubushi, S. Matsumoto & H. Wada 1990. Methane formation in the submerged paddy soil as viewed from the angle of sequential occurrence of reduction reactions and organic matter decomposition. In: *Transactions 14th International Congress of Soil Science* (August 12-18, 1990), Kyoto. Vol. II, pp. 255-260.

IGBP 1990. *Global Change: The initial core projects*. Report No. 12, International Geosphere and Biosphere Programme.

IGBP-IGAC 1991. *Report of initial planning meeting of IGAC-IGBP Activity 7.2: Exchanges of N2O, CH4 and CO between terrestrial ecosystems and the atmosphere in mid-latitudes*. Held at NCAR, Boulder, Colorado (September 23-26 1991).

Inubushi, K., K. Hori, S. Matsumoto, M. Umebayashi & H. Wada 1989. Methane emission from a flooded paddy soil to the atmosphere through rice plants (In Japanese, with English summary). *Japanese Journal Soil Science and Plant Nutrition 60, 318-324.*

Inubushi, K., M. Umebayashi & H. Wada 1990a. Methane emission from paddy fields. In: *Transactions 14th International Congress of Soil Science* (August 12-18, 1990), Kyoto. Vol. II, pp. 249-254.

Inubushi, K., Y. Muramatsu, D. Taja & M. Umebayashi 1990b. Control of methane emission from paddy soil. In: *Transactions 14th International Congress of Soil Science* (August 12-18, 1990), Kyoto. Vol. II, pp. 431-432.

IPCC 1992. *IPCC supplement: Full scientific report. Working group 1, Scientific assessment of climate change. Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change* (for discussion). WMO/UNEP.

Jacobsen, P., W.H. Patrick Jr. & B.G. Williams 1981. Sulphide and methane formation in soils and sediments. *Soil Science 132, 279-287.*

JEA/EPA 1990. *Methane emissions and opportunities for control.* Workshop results of Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change. Coordinated by Japan Environmental Agency and United States Environmental Protection Agency.

Kawaguchi, K. & K. Kyuma 1977. *Paddy soils in tropical Asia, their material, nature and fertility.* Univ. Press of Hawaii, Honolulu.

Keller, M., W.A. Kaplan & S.C. Wofsy 1986. Emissions of N2O, CH_4 and CO_2 from tropical forest soils. *Journal of Geophysical Research 91, 11791-11802.*

Keller, M., S.C. Wofsy, T.J. Goreau, W.A. Kaplan & M.B. McElroy 1983. Production of nitrous oxide and consumption of methane by forest soils. *Geophysical Research Letters 10, 1156-1159.*

Khalil, M.A.K. & R.A. Rasmussen 1983. Sources, sinks and seasonal cycles of atmospheric methane. *Journal of Geophysical Research 88, 5131-5144.*

Khalil, M.A.K. & R.A. Rasmussen 1987. Atmospheric methane: Trends over the last 10,000 years. *Atmospheric Environment 21, 2445-2452.*

Khalil, M.A.K. & R.A. Rasmussen 1991. Atmospheric methane: Recent global trends. *Environmental Science and Technology 24, 549-553.*

Khalil, M.A.K., R.A. Rasmussen, M.X. Wang & L. Ren 1990. Emission of trace gases from Chinese rice fields and biogas generators: CH_4, N_2O, CO, CO_2, chlorocarbons and hydrocarbons. *Chemosphere 20, 207-226.*

King, G.M. 1990. Regulation by light of methane emissions from a wetland. *Nature 345, 513-514.*

Kimura, M., H. Ando & H. Haraguchi 1991. Estimation of potential CO_2 and Ch4 production in Japanese paddy fields. *Environ. Sci. 4, 15-25.*

Koyama, T. 1963. Gaseous metabolism in lake sediments and paddy soils and the production of atmospheric methane and hydrogen. *Journal of Geophysical Research 68, 3971-3973.*

Kristjansson, J.K., P. Schönheit and R.K. Thauer 1982. Different Ks values for hydrogen of methanogenic bacteria and sulphate reducing bacteria: An explanation for the apparent inhibition of methanogenesis by sulphate. *Arch. Microbiol. 131, 278-282.*

Kyuma, K. 1985. Fundamental characteristics of wetland soils. In: *Wetland soils: Characterization, classification and utilization.* International Rice Research Institute, Los Banos, Philippines.

Lawongse, P. & H. Wada 1988. Effects of salts on microbial metabolism in submerged soils. *Proceedings of the First International Symposium on Paddy Soil Fertility.* Chiengmai (Thailand). pp. 601-613.

Leemans, R. & W.P. Cramer 1991. *The IIASA database for mean monthly values of temperature, precipitation, and cloudiness on a global grid.* Research Report RR-91-18, IIASA, Laxenburg.

Levine, J.S., W.R. Cofer II, D.I. Sebacher and 6 others 1990. The effects of fire on biogenic emissions of methane and nitric oxide from wetlands. *J. Geophys. Res. 95, 1853-1864.*

Lindau, C.W., P.K. Bollich, R.D. Delaune, W.H. Patrick & V.J. Law 1991. Effect of urea fertilizer and environmental factors on CH_4 emissions from a Louisiana rice field. *Plant and Soil 136, 195-203.*

Lindau, C.W., W.H. Patrick, R.D. Delaune & K.R. Reddy 1990. Rate of accumulation and emission of N2, N2O and CH_4 fluxes from a flooded rice soil. *Plant and Soil 129, 269-276.*

Matthews, E. 1990. Global data bases for evaluation trace gas sources and sinks. In: *Soils and the greenhouse effect* (ed. A.F. Bouwman). John Wiley & Sons, Chichester. pp. 311-325.

Matthews, E. and I. Fung 1987. Methane emissions from natural wetlands: Global distribution, area, and environmental characteristics. *Global Biochemical Cycles 1, 61-86.*

Matthews, E. I. Fung & J. Lerner 1991. Methane emission from rice cultivation: Geographic and seasonal distribution of cultivated areas and emission. *Global Biogeochemical Cycles 5, 3-24.*

Mattson, M.D. & G.E. Likens 1990. Air pressure and methane fluxes. *Nature 347, 718-719.*

Moore, T.R. & R. Knowles 1987. Methane and carbon dioxide evolution from subarctic fens. *Can. J. Soil Sci. 67, 77-81.*

Moore, T.R. & R. Knowles 1989. The influence of water table levels on methane and carbon dioxide emissions from peatland soils. Can. J. Soil Sci. 69, 33-38.

Moore, T., N. Roulet & R. Knowles 1990. Spatial and temporal variations of methane flux from subarctic/northern boreal fens. *Global Biogeochemical Cycles 4, 29-46.*

Moormann, F.R. & N. van Breemen 1978. *Rice: soil, water, land.* International Rice Research Institute, Los Banos.

Mosier, A.R. 1990. Gas flux measurement techniques with special reference to techniques suitable for measurements over large ecologically uniform areas. In: *Soils and the Greenhouse Effect* (ed. A.F. Bouwman). John Wiley & Sons, London. pp. 289-301.

Mosier, A.R., D.S. Schimel, D. Valentine, K. Bronson and W. Parton 1991. Methane and nitrous oxide fluxes in native, fertilized and native grasslands. *Nature 350, 330-332.*

Mountfort, D.O., R.A. Asher, E.L. Mays & J.M. Tiedje 1980. Carbon and electron flow in mud and sandflat intertidal sediments at Delaware Inlet, Nelson, New Zealand. *Appl. Envir. Microbiol. 39, 686-694.*

Msanya, B.M. 1987. *Soil resources inventories: Characterization, quality and evaluation of their adequacy for specific land use*. PhD. Thesis, Faculty of Sciences, State University of Ghent, Belgium.

Neue, H. 1989. Rice growing soils: Constraints, utilization and research needs. In: *Classification and management of rice growing soils*. FFTC Book Series, Food and Fertilizer Technology Centre for the ASPAC Region, Taiwan.

Neue, H.U. & W.W. Scharpenseel 1984. Gaseous products of decomposition of organic matter in submerged soils. In: *Organic matter and rice*. International Rice Research Institute, Los Banos. pp. 311-328.

Neue, H.U., P. Becker-Heidmann & H.W. Scharpenseel 1990. Organic matter dynamics, soil properties, and cultural practices in rice lands and their relationships to methane production. In: *Soils and the greenhouse effect* (ed. A.F. Bouwman). John Wiley & Sons, Chichester. pp. 457-466.

Nielsen, D.R. & J. Bouma (eds) 1985. Soil spatial variability. Proc. Workshop ISSS and SSSA, Las Vegas. Pudoc, Wageningen.

Nouchi, I., S. Mariko & K. Aoki 1990. Mechanism of methane transport from the rhizosphere to the atmosphere through rice plant. *Plant Physiology 94, 59-66.*

Novozamsky, I., J. Beek & G.H. Bolt 1978. Chemical equilibria. In: *Soil chemistry. A. Basic elements* (eds. G.H. Bolt & M.G.M. Bruggenwert). Elsevier Scientific Publ. Co., Amsterdam. pp. 13-42.

Oremland, R.M. 1988. Biogeochemistry of methanogenic bacteria. In: *Biology of anaerobic microorganisms* (ed. A.J.B. Zehnder). John Wiley & Sons, New York. pp. 641-706.

Oremland, R.S. & C.W. Culbertson 1992. Importance of methane-oxidizing bacteria in the methan budget as revealed by the use of a specific inhibitor. *Nature 356, 421-423.*

Oremland, R.M., L.M. Marsh & S. Polcin 1982. Methane production and simultaneous sulphate reduction in anoxic, marsh sediments. *Nature 296, 143-145.*

ORNL 1990. Trends '90: A compendium of data on global change (eds T.A. Boden, K. Kanciruk & M.P. Farell). Carbon Dioxide Information Analysis Centre, Env. Sciences Div., Oak Ridge National Laboratory, Oak Ridge, Tennessee.

Pacey, J.G. & J.P. De Gier 1986. The factors influencing landfill gas production. In: *Energy from landfill gas*. Proceedings of a conference jointly sponsored by the United Kingdom Department of Energy and the United States Department of Energy (October 1986). pp. 51-59.

Papen, H. & H. Rennenberg 1990. Microbial processes involved in emissions of radiatively important trace gases. In: *Transactions 14th International Congress of Soil Science* (August 12-18, 1990), Kyoto. Vol. II, pp. 232-237.

Patrick, W.H. Jr. 1981. The role of inorganic redox systems in controlling reduction in paddy soils. *In: Proceedings of the Symposium on Paddy Soils. Institute of Soil Science, Academia Sinica, Science Press, Beijing. pp. 107-117.*

Ponnamperuma, F.N. 1972. The chemistry of submerged soils. *Advances in Agronomy 24, 29-96.*

Ponnamperuma, F.N. 1981. Some aspects of the physical chemistry of paddy soils. *In: Proceedings of the Symposium on Paddy Soils. Institute of Soil Science, Academia Sinica, Science Press, Beijing. pp. 59-94.*

Ponnamperuma, F.N. 1984. Effects of flooding on soils. In: *Flooding and plant growth* (ed. T.T. Kozlowski). Academic Press Inc. pp. 9-43.

Raskin, I. & H. Kende 1985. Mechanic aeration in rice. *Science 228, 327-329.*

Rasmussen, R.A. & M.A.K. Khalil 1981. Atmospheric methane (CH_4): Trends and seasonal cycles. *Journal of Geophysical Research 86, 9826-9832.*

Rasmussen, R.A. & M.A.K. Khalil 1986. Atmospheric trace gases: Trends and distributions over the last decade. *Science 232, 1623-1624.*

Rosswall, T., F. Bak, D. Baldocchi, R.J. Cicerone, R. Conrad, D.H. Ehhalt, M.K. Firestone, I.E. Galchenko, P.M. Groffman, H. Papen, W.S. Reeburgh & E. Sanhueza 1989. What regulates production and consumption of trace gases in ecosystems: Biology or physicochemistry? In: *Exchange of trace gases between terrestrial ecosystems and the atmosphere* (eds. M.O. Andreae & D.S. Schimel). John Wiley and Sons, Chichester. pp. 73-95.

Saenjan, P. & H. Wada 1990. Effects of salts on methane formation and sulphate reduction in submerged soil. In: *Transactions 14th International Congress of Soil Science* (August 12-18, 1990), Kyoto. Vol. II, pp. 244-247.

Sass, R.L., F.M. Fisher, P.A. Harcombe & F.T. Turner 1990. Methane production and emission in agricultural wetlands. *Global Biogeochemical Cycles 4, 47-68.*

Schönheit, P., J.K. Kristjansson & R.K. Thauer 1982. Kinetic mechanism for the ability of sulphate reducers to out-compete methanogens for acetate. *Arch. Microbiol. 132, 285-288.*

Schütz, H., P. Schröder & H. Renneberg 1991. Role of plants in regulating the methane flux to the atmosphere. In: *Trace gas emission from plants* (eds. T.D. Sharkey, E.A. Holland & H.A. Mooney). Academic Press, New York.

Schütz, H., A. Holzapfel-Pschorn, R. Conrad, H. Rennenberg & W. Seiler 1989a. A three year continuous record on the influence of day time, season and fertilizer treatment on methane emission rates from an Italian rice paddy field. *Journal of Geophysical Research 4, 16405-16416.*

Schütz, H., W. Seiler & R. Conrad 1989b. Processes involved in formation and emission of methane in rice paddies. *Biogeochemistry 7,33-53.*

Schütz, H., W. Seiler & H. Rennenberg 1990. Soil and land use related sources and sinks of methane (CH_4) in the context of the global methane budget. In: *Soils and the greenhouse effect* (ed. A.F. Bouwman). John Wiley & Sons, Chichester. pp. 269-285.

Schütz, H., W. Seiler & R. Conrad 1990b. Influence of soil temperature on methane emission from rice paddy fields. *Biogeochemistry 11, 77-95.*

Sebacher, D.I., R.C. Harriss & K.B. Bartlett 1983. Methane flux across the air-water interface: Air velocity effects. *Tellus 35B, 103-109.*

Sebacher, D.I., R.C. Harriss & K.B. Bartlett 1985. Methane emissions to the atmosphere through aquatic plants. *Journal of Environmental Quality 14, 40-46.*

Sebacher, D.I., R.C. Harris, K.B. Bartlett, S.M. Sebacher and S.S. Grice 1986. Atmospheric methane sources: Alaskan tundra bogs, an alpine fen, and a subarctic boreal marsh. *Tellus 38b, 1-10.*

Seiler, W. 1984. Contribution of biological processes to the global budget of CH_4 in the atmosphere. In: *Current perspectives in microbial ecology* (eds M.J. Klug and C.A. Reddy), American Society for Microbiology, Washington D.C. pp. 468-477.

Seiler, W. 1989. Role of rice cultivation in global emissions of trace gases. *Proceedings of the Workshop on Greenhouse Gas Emissions from Agricultural Systems* of the IPCC Response Strategies Working Group (December 12-14, 1989).

Seiler, W. & R. Conrad 1987. Contribution of tropical ecosystems to the global budgets of trace gases, especially CH_4, H_2, CO and N2O. In: *The Geophysiology of Amazonia: Vegetation and climate interactions* (ed. R.E. Dickinson), John Wiley and Sons Inc., New York. pp. 133-160.

Seiler, W., A. Holzapfel-Pschorn, R. Conrad & D. Scharffe 1984. Methane emissions from rice paddies. *Journal of Atmospheric Chemistry 1, 241-268.*

Siegel, D.I. 1983. Ground water and the evolution of patterned mires, Glacial Lake Agassiz peatlands, northern Minnesota. *J. Ecol. 71, 913-921.*

Siegel, D.I. & P.H. Glaser 1991. Mechanisms controlling the production and transport of methane, carbon dioxide, and dissolved solutes within a large boreal peat basin. *DOE Research Summary No. 11*, Carbon Dioxide Information Analysis Centre, Oak Ridge National Laboratory, Oak Ridge, Tennessee.

Sombroek, W.G. 1990. Geographic quantification of soils and changes in their properties. In: *Soils and the greenhouse effect* (ed. A.F. Bouwman). John Wiley & Sons, Chichester. p. 225-244.

Stainer, R.Y., E.A. Adelberg & J.I. Ingraham 1976. *General microbiology (4th edition)*. The MacMillan Press Ltd., London.

Stauffer, B., E. Lochbronner, H. Oeschger & J. Schwander 1988. Methane concentration in the glacial atmosphere was only half that of the preindustrial Holocene. *Nature 332, 812-814.*

Steele, L.P., P.J. Fraser, R.A. Rasmussen, M.A.K. Khalil, T.J. Conway, A.J. Crawford, R.U. Gamuron, K.A. Masaric & K.W. Thoning 1987. The global distribution of methane in the troposphere. *Journal of Atmospheric Research 5, 127-171.*

Steudler, P.A., R.D. Bowden, J.M. Mellilo & J.D. Aber 1989. Influence of nitrogen fertilization on methane uptake in temperate forest soils. *Nature 341, 314-316.*

Svensson, B.H. 1984. Different temperature optima in methane formation when enrichments from acid peat are supplemented with acetate or hydrogen. *Applied Environmental Microbiology 48, 389-394.*

Svensson, B.H. 1986. Methane as a part of the carbon mineralization in an acid tundra mire. In: *Perspectives in Microbial Ecology, Proceedings of the IVth International Symposium on Microbial Ecology* (eds F. Megusar & M. Ganter). Sloven Society for Microbiology, Ljubljana. pp.611-616.

Svensson, B.H. & R. Rosswall 1984. In situ methane production from acid peat in plant communities with different moisture regimes in a subarctic mire. *Oikos 43, 341-350.*

Swarup, A. 1989. Influence of organic matter and flooding on the chemical and electrochemical properties of sodic soil and rice growth. *Plant and Soil 106, 135-141.*

Takai, Y. 1961. Reduction of microbial metabolism in paddy soils (in Japanese). *Nogyo Gijitsu (Agricultural Technology) 19, 122-126.*

Takai, Y. 1970. The mechanism of methane fermentation in flooded paddy soil. *Soil Sci. Plant Nutr. 16, 238-244.*

Takai, Y. & T. Kamura 1966. The mechanism of reduction in waterlogged paddy soil. *Folia Microbiol. 11, 304-313.*

Takai, Y. & E. Wada 1990. Methane formation in waterlogged paddy soils and its controlling factors. In: *Soils on a warmer Earth* (eds H.W. Scharpenseel, H.W., M. Schomaker & A. Ayoub). Developments in Soil Science 20, Elsevier, Amsterdam. pp. 101-107.

Tavernier, R. (ed.) 1985. *Soil map of the European Communities 1:1 M.* Directorate General for Agriculture, Coordination of Agricultural Research. Office for Official Publications of the EC, Luxembourg.

Thauer, R.K., K. Jungermann & K. Decker 1977. Energy conservation in chemotrophic anaerobic bacteria. *Bacteriol. Rev. 41, 100-180.*

Ueckert, J., T. Hureck, I. Fendrik & E.G. Nieman 1990. Radial diffusion from roots of rice (*Oryza sativa* L.) and Kallandra grass (*Leptochloa fusca* L. Kunth), and effects of inoculation with Azospirillum brasilense Cd. *Plant and Soil 122, 59-65.*

Unesco 1973. International classification and mapping of vegetation. Unesco, Paris.

USDA 1987. *Keys to Soil Taxonomy.* SMSS Technical Monograph 6, Ithaca, New York.

Vaghjiani, G.L. & A.R. Ravishankara 1991. New measurements of the rate coefficient for the reaction of OH with methane. *Nature 350, 406-408.*

Van Breemen, N. & T.C.J. Feijtel 1990. Soil processes and properties involved in the production of greenhouse gases, with special relevance to soil taxonomic systems. In: *Soils and the greenhouse effect* (ed. A.F. Bouwman). John Wiley & Sons, Chichester. pp. 195-223.

Van Engelen, V.W.P. & J.H.M. Pulles 1991. *The SOTER manual: Procedures for small scale digital map and database compilation of soil and terrain conditions.* Working Paper and Preprint 91/3, ISRIC, Wageningen.

Van Diepen, C.A. 1985. Wetland soils of the world, their characterization and distribution in the FAO/Unesco approach. In: *Wetlands soils: Characterization, classification and utilization.* Proceedings of an IRRI Workshop. IRRI, Los Banos. pp. 361-374.

Vogel, G.D., J.K. Keltjens & C. Van de Drift 1988. Biochemistry of methane formation. In: *Biology of anaerobic microorganisms* (ed. A.J.B. Zehnder). John Wiley & Sons, Chichester. p. 707-700.

Wang, T.S.C., P.M. Huang, C-H. Chou & J-H. Chen 1986. The role of soil minerals in the abiotic polymerization of phenolic compounds and formation of humic substances. In: *Interactions of soil minerals with natural organics and microbes* (eds. P.M. Huang & M. Schnitzer). SSSA Special Publication 17, Soil Sci. Soc. Amer., Madison, Wisconsin.

Ward, D.M. & R.M. Winfrey 1985. Interactions between methanogenic and sulphate-reducing bacteria in sediments. *Advances in Aquatic Microbiology 3, 141-179.*

Watanabe, I. & P.A. Roger 1985. Ecology of flooded rice fields. In: Wetland soils: Characterization, classification and utilization. IRRI, Los Banos.

Whalen, S.C. & W.S. Reeburgh 1990. Consumption of atmospheric methane by tundra soils. *Nature 346, 160-162.*

Whiting, G.J., J.P. Chanton, D.S. Batlett & J.D. Happel 1991. Relationships between methane emissions, biomass, and CO2 exchange in a subtropical grassland. *J. Geophys. Res. 96, 13067-13071.*

Williams, R.J. & R.L. Crawford 1984. Methane production in Minnesota peatlands. *Applied and Environmental Microbiology 47, 1266-1271.*

Wilson, J.O., P.M. Crill, K.B. Bartlett, D.I. Sebacher, P.C. Harris & R.L. Sass 1989. Seasonal variation of methane emission from a temperate swamp. *Biogeochemistry 8, 55-71.*

Winfrey, M.R., D.G. Marty, A.J.M. Bianchi & D.M. Ward, 1981. Vertical distribution of sulphate reduction, methane production and bacteria in marine sediments. Geomicrobiol. J. 2, 341-362.

Yagi, K. & K. Minami 1990. Effects of organic matter application on CH_4 emissions from Japanese paddy fields. In: *Soils and the greenhouse effect* (ed. A.F. Bouwman). John Wiley & Sons, New York. pp. 467-473.

Yagi, K., K. Minami, G.A. Breitenbeck & H. Takayama 1990. Emission and production of methane from paddy fields. In: *Transactions 14th International Congress of Soil Science* (August 12-18, 1990), Kyoto. Vol. II, pp. 238-243.

Yamane, I. & K. Sato 1967. Effect of temperature on the decomposition of organic substances in flooded soil. *Soil Science and Plant Nutrition 13, 94-100.*

Yavitt, J.B., G.E. Lang & R.K. Wieder 1987. Control of carbon mineralization to CH_4 and CO_2 in anaerobic *Sphagnum*-derived peat from Big Run Bog, West Virginia. *Biogeochemistry 4, 141-157.*

Yavitt, J.B., G.E. Lang & M. Downey 1988. Potential methane production and methane oxidation rates in peatland ecosystems of the Appalachian mountains, United States. *Global Biogeochemical Cycles 2, 253-268.*

Zaiss, U. 1981. Seasonal studies of methanogenesis and desulfurication in sediments of the river Saar. *Zentralblatt fur Bakteriologie, Mikrobiologie und Hygiene, Abt. I. Originale C-2, 76-89.*

Zeikus, J.G. & M.R. Winfrey 1976. Temperature limitations of methanogenesis in aquatic sediments. *Applied and Environmental Microbioly 31, 99-107.*

Zobler, L. 1986. *A world soil file for global climate*. NASA Technical Memorandum 87-802.

Zoltai, S.C. & F.C. Pollet 1983. Wetlands in Canada: Their classification, distribution and use. In: *Ecosystems of the World (4B). Mires: Swamps, Bog, Fen and Moor* (ed. A.J.P. Gore), Elsevier, Amsterdam. pp. 245-268.

2.10 Appendix : Estimated sources and sinks of methane

(in Tg CH_4 per year; Source: IPCC 1992).

Sources	
Natural	
- Wetlands	115 (100-200)
- Termites	20 (10-50)
- Oceans	10 (5-20)
- Freshwater	5 (1-25)
- CH_4 hydrate	0 (0-5)
Anthropogenic	
- Coal mining, nat. gas + petr. industry	100 (70-120)
- Rice paddies	60 (20-100)
- Enteric fermentation	80 (65-100)
- Animal wastes	25 (20-30)
- Domestic sewage treatment	25 (?-?)
- Landfills	30 (20-70)
- Biomass burning	40 (20-80)
Sinks	
Reaction with OH	420 (340-500)
Removal by soils	30 (15-45)
Removal in stratosphere	10 (?-?)
Atmospheric increase	37 (34-40)

Chapter 3 Nitrous oxide

N.H. Batjes

3.1 Introduction

3.1.1 Background

The transfer of nitrogen between the surface of the earth and the atmosphere is dominated by ammonia (NH_3), nitrous oxide (N_2O), nitric oxide (NO), nitrogen dioxide (NO_2), and dinitrogen (N_2). Different societal values have been attributed to the various categories of N-losses. These values strongly determine the type of abatement that will be prioritised. Initially, the interest for the biological, environmental and management practices that influence gaseous N-losses was mainly from the perspective of increasing the efficiency of N-fertilizers. In the last decades, however, it has been recognised that the use of N-fertilizers to sustain the production of food, fibre and timbre may also affect the global environment. For instance, through leaching of nitrates to the ground water (e.g., RIVM 1991), thereby affecting its quality for consumption, or through gaseous N-emissions which may contribute to acid deposition (e.g., Chadwick & Kuylenstierna 1990; Klemedtsson & Svensson 1988; Van Breemen 1990) and increased atmospheric concentrations of N_2O (e.g., Bouwman 1990a).

Nitrous oxide contributes to the "greenhouse effect" in that it absorbs radiation in the infrared band. On a molecule per molecule basis, the relative potential for thermal adsorption of N_2O is 150 as compared to CO_2 (see Bouwman 1990a p. 2). N_2O has an atmospheric life time of ≈ 100-200 years, which is much greater than that of either NH_3 or NO_x. It has been estimated that N_2O may account for 5-10% of the "greenhouse" effect (Bolin *et al.* 1986). Although N_2O is chemically inert in the troposphere it plays an important role in the depletion of stratospheric ozone. In the stratosphere, N_2O is destroyed almost exclusively by photolysis and reaction with $O(^1D)$, forming NO which plays a major role in regulating the concentration and distribution of ozone (O_3) (e.g., Crutzen 1987). Besides being involved in photochemical reactions, the atmospheric NO_x concentration also influences the oxidation of methane and CO. NO, however, does not absorb infrared radiation. The chemistry of the relevant atmospheric processes has recently been reviewed by Bouwman (1990, Chapter 2.2).

Ice core data for N_2O indicate preindustrial concentrations of around 285 ppbv (part per billion volume), while present levels are around 310 ppbv (Khalil & Rasmussen 1988). This is equivalent to about 1500 Tg N (*cf* Bolle *et al.* 1986). More recently, Prinn *et al.* (1990) deduced a 10-year average global nitrous oxide emission rate of 20.5 ± 2.4 Tg yr^{-1}, with significant year-to-year variations in emissions possibly associated with year-to-year variations in tropical land emissions. The current average annual increase in atmospheric concentration of N_2O is about 0.2-0.3% (Weiss 1981; Bolin *et al.* 1986; Prinn *et al.* 1990) corresponding with about 0.7 ± 0.1 ppbv N_2O (Lashof & Tirpak 1990). Prinn *et al.* (1990), using the ALE-GAGE data for nitrous oxide, found the average N_2O concentration in the northern hemisphere is persistently 0.75 ±0.16 ppbv higher than in the southern hemisphere.

Although over 20% of the total global N_2O emissions and 50% of the total (N_2O + N_2) emissions may be due to natural terrestrial emissions (Bowden 1986), the observed increase is essentially due to the increased use of N-fertilizers and combustion processes (Bolin *et al.* 1986). According to Bouwman (1990 p. 2), however, about 90% of the increase in atmospheric concentrations of N_2O is of biotic origin. At present rates, atmospheric concentrations of 350 to 400 ppbv of N_2O are predicted towards the year 2050 (Bolin *et al.* 1986).

Table 3.1 Estimated sources and sinks of nitrous oxide (Source: IPCC 1992).

Natural sources	Tg N_2O-N yr^{-1}
Oceans	1.4-2.6
Tropical soils	
- Wet forests	2.2-3.7
- Dry savannas	0.5-2.0
Temperate soils	
- Forest	0.05-2.0
- Grasslands	?
Anthropogenic sources	
Cultivated soils	0.03-3.0
Biomass burning	0.2-1.0
Stationary combustion	0.1-0.3
Mobile sources	0.2-0.6
Adipic acid production	0.4-0.6
Nitric acid production	0.1-0.3
Sinks	
Removal by soils	?
Photolysis in atmosphere	7-13
Atmospheric increase	3-4.5

A number of budgets for atmospheric N_2O have been prepared each of these presenting somewhat different values for the various sources and sinks (e.g., Seiler & Conrad 1987; Prinn *et al.* 1990). The budget of Seiler & Conrad (1987) shows the relative importance of N_2O emissions from "natural" soils (6 ± 3 Tg yr^{-1}) and fertilized soils (2 ± 1 Tg yr^{-1}), as compared to oceans (1.5 ± 1 Tg yr^{-1}). More recently, global estimates of 7 Tg N_2O-N yr^{-1} have been presented for undisturbed terrestrial ecosystems (Bouwman *et al.* 1992), and of 2.3 to 3.7 Tg N_2O-N yr^{-1} for cultivated lands (Bouwman 1990a). Contaminated aquifers may release from 0.8 to 1.7 Tg N_2O-N per year (Lashof & Tirpak 1990 p. 85). N_2O production from all potential sources is likely in the order of 13 ± 1.5 Tg N_2O-N yr^{-1} (Prinn *et al.* 1991). Recently, Thiemens & Trogler (1991) indicated N_2O associated with global production of adipic acid in the preparation of nylon may account for nearly 10% of the increase observed for atmospheric N_2O. Efforts should continue to identify sources, and possibly sinks, as yet not identified. Other possible sources of nitrous oxide may include treatment of sewage water, land "disturbance", as well as inland and coastal waters (Bouwman *pers. comm.*) and riparian zones (Davidson & Swank 1990). Degassing of nitrous oxide dissolved in soil solution is considered to be insignificant for global atmospheric budgets (Davidson & Swank 1990). The most recent overview of estimated sources and sinks of nitrous oxide, as prepared for discussion by IPCC (1992), is presented in Table 3.1.

While the estimated source strengths remain uncertain, emissions from soils appear dominate the N_2O budget (IPCC 1992). The main biogenic sources of N_2O and NO_x from soils are the microbial processes of denitrification and nitrification. Fossil fuel combustion and biomass burning have been considered to be significant global sources of N_2O and NO_x, but the recent discovery of an artefact producing increased levels of N_2O in combustion gas samples collected in grab-bottles before sampling (Muzio & Kramlich 1988, cited by Cofer *et al.* 1991) has resulted in downgrading the importance of these two sources in the global N_2O budget. According to Cofer *et al.* (1991) biomass burning contributes to no more than ≈ 7% of the global source of N_2O. The most important nitrogen gas emitted from biomass burning now appears to be molecular nitrogen, with the largest contribution coming from flaming combustion (Kuhlbusch *et al.* 1991). Pyro-denitrification associated with burning of biomass equals to about 12-28 Tg of biomass N, which corresponds with about 9-20% of the estimated global rate of terrestrial nitrogen fixation. This illustrates that biomass burning is not only of relevance for the atmospheric chemistry and greenhouse effect, but also for the biogeochemistry of savannah and agricultural ecosystems (Lobert *et al.* 1990). Global patterns of nitrogen have been reviewed by Post *et al.* (1985).

3.1.2 Structure of chapter

In Section 3.2 we discuss the main microbial processes of N_2O formation in soils, which mainly are nitrification and denitrification. In Section 3.3 we present examples of the spatial and temporal variability that is inherent to N_2O emissions from soils. Subsequently, we discuss the effects of mainly environmental and management factors in controlling the production and consumption of N_2O in terrestrial ecosystems, as well as the rate determining factors. Examples of N_2O emissions from agricultural lands and undisturbed lands are given in Section 3.5. Possible methods for modelling N_2O emissions are discussed in Section 3.6. General conclusions as to the possibilities modelling of global N_2O emissions from soils, partly using a global soil database as will be developed within the framework of the WISE programme on "World Inventory on Soil Emissions", are made in Section 3.7.

3.2 Processes of N_2O formation in soils

3.2.1 Introduction

Soils are important sources of atmospheric N_2O. A wide range of processes may produce this N_2O, as well as minor amounts of NO_x, but not all of these seem to be fully understood. The main biological processes of N_2O formation in soils are shown in Figure 3.1, and include nitrification, denitrification, the dissimilatory reduction of nitrate to ammonium, and the assimilatory reduction of nitrate wherein N is incorporated in the cell biomass. Additionally, some NO_x and N_2O may be released due to chemo-denitrification (see Section 3.2.6) or "pyro-denitrification" (Lobert *et al.* 1990). Of these processes nitrification and denitrification are the most important with respect to N_2O production. In order to predict N_2O emissions from soils it is necessary to differentiate between these two processes, as discussed by Klemedtsson *et al.* (1988b) and Klemedtsson & Hannson (1990).

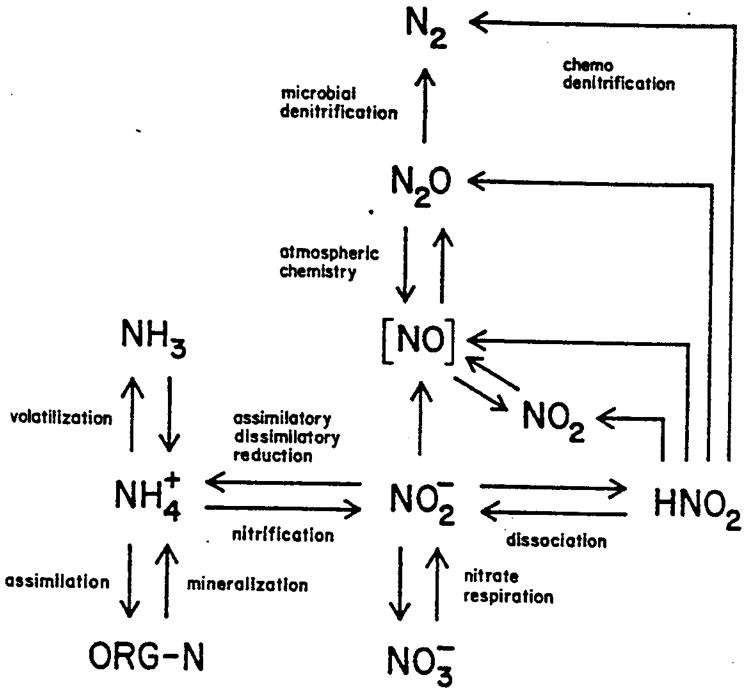


Figure 3.1 Schematic representation of the components of the nitrogen cycle (Compounds in the upper section of the flow diagram are the main nitrogenous gases emitted by ecosystems. Brackets around NO indicate that the occurrence of this intermediate product in biological denitrification remains uncertain) (Source: Bowden 1986).

In this Section we shall review the main biological and abiological processes mediating N_2O production and consumption in soils. For more information on the subject reference is made to the extensive reviews of Bowden (1986), Sahrawat & Keeney (1986), Tiedje (1988), Stouthamer (1988) and Beauchamp *et al.* (1989) amongst others.

3.2.2 Denitrification

In both nitrification and denitrification, reactions are used to drive various growth processes rather than to incorporate nitrogen into the cells themselves. Production of N_2O and molecular N_2 by microbial denitrification occurs when bacteria capable of denitrification colonize a location where oxygen is absent and water, nitrate, and decomposable organic compounds are present. Microbial denitrification is the process in which nitrate (NO_3^-), nitrite (NO_2^-), and nitrous oxide (N_2O) serve as "alternative" electron acceptors to O_2 for essentially aerobic bacteria at low O_2 concentrations, with the result that molecular N_2 can be produced ultimately (Delwiche 1981; Knowles 1982). The reaction sequence for denitrification may be exemplified as follows:

$$NO_3^- \text{--->} NO_2^- \text{--->} [NO] \text{--->} N_2O \text{--->} N_2$$

In this reductive pathway, nitric oxide [NO] may occur as an intermediate between NO_2^- and N_2O but it's existence has not been assessed unambiguously (e.g., Firestone 1982; Poth & Focht 1985; Bowden 1986). Munch (1989), however, found that NO was a natural product of denitrification for *B. polymyxa*. Later, Munch (1991) showed that the formation of NO_x in soil is related directly to the composition of the denitrifier population, and only indirectly to physicochemical soil properties. In the study of Munch (1989) the nitrate concentration influenced only the rate of denitrification, but not the N_2O/N_2 ratio of each organism. Secondly, the amounts of nitrite formed transitorily were found to be specific for the organisms involved. These amounts of nitrite influenced neither the emission of N_2O, nor the ratio of N_2O/N_2 or of N_2O/consumption of nitrate. Thirdly, the N_2O formation depended primarily on the microbial soil population, and thereafter on the nitrate concentration in correlation with the type of denitrifiers. Munch & Ottow (1986) also observed that the intensity and composition of denitrification gases (NO, N_2O and N_2) differed considerably from organism to organism and from soil to soil. This is also apparent form the study of Abou-Seada & Ottow (1988) which included the denitrifiers *Aeromonas "denitrificans"*, *Azospirillum lipoferum* DSM 1843, and *Bacillus licheniformis* ATCC 14580, and soil material from the Ah-horizon of a gleyo-eutric Fluvisol, orthic Luvisol, calcaric Fluvisol and eutric Cambisol. Gas production in this study was measured by gas chromatography in regular intervals. With *A. "denitrificans"* NO was released from the calcaric Fluvisol and orthic Luvisol, whereas *B. licheniformis* did not produce NO in any of the soil materials tested. N_2O was liberated by *A "denitrificans"* in all soils tested, but *A. lipoferum* produced it only in the Fluvisol and *B. licheniformis* exclusively in the eutric Cambisol. Alternatively, Germon & Jacques (1990) hypothesise that in a homogeneous pedologic area the denitrifying microflora could behave similarly, and that the natural N_2O production could be a constant proportion of denitrified N in spite of different pH values. This study was for naturally acid loamy soils for which the pH was increased by management. The need to confirm this kind of results for other experimental conditions and soils was indicated by Germon & Jacques (1990). Soil and management conditions that seem to influence the relative amount of N_2O/N_2 are reviewed in Section 3.4. Hauck (1986) and Mosier *et al.* (1990) have reviewed techniques for measuring denitrification in the field.

Most denitrifying bacteria are aerobic heterotrophs, belonging to taxonomically diverse genera such as *Pseudomonas, Alcaligenes* and *Azospirillum*. However, some autotrophic organisms such as *Paracoccus denitrificans, Rhodopseudomonas sphaeroides* and *Thiobacillus denitrificans* are also capable of denitrification. A review of known denitrifying bacteria strains is given by Beauchamp *et al.* (1989 p. 115). Not all the denitrifying bacteria can carry out the complete pathway of denitrification (Knowles 1982), because they lack the relevant reductase(s), however they partially contribute to the process of microbial denitrification. Possible explanations for a partial denitrification have been proposed by Ingraham (1981):

a) Although intermediary products such as NO_2^-, NO and N_2O may be present, the initial nitrate may be lacking.
b) The environmental conditions may not be conducive to one or more of the reaction steps.
c) The different reductases, responsible for the denitrification process may differ in induction rates.

d) Genetically deficient strains may not be capable of synthesising the complete set of required reductions. Alternatively, the enzyme N_2O reductase can reduce an extraneous source of N_2O as it is a free obligatory intermediate in denitrification (Smith *et al.* 1983).

Methods for measuring denitrification in the field, and their limitations have recently been discussed by Mosier (1990). A commonly used method for measuring denitrification in the field is the "cover box" method in which a soil is perfused with acetylene (C_2H_2), to prevent any reduction of N_2O to N_2, and the N_2O released from soils is trapped under an inverted box cover and measured by gas chromatography. Keeney (1988) found that acetylene does not inhibit N_2O production from the heterotrophic nitrifiers of the species *Arthrobacter* (and nitrapyrin does not inhibit heterotrophic nitrification). Consequently, the N_2O produced by heterotrophic nitrifiers will probably be included in the estimation of N_2O production from denitrification (Klemedtsson & Hansson 1990).

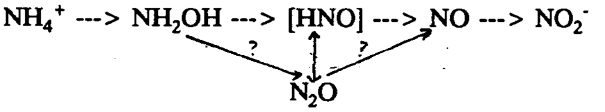
3.2.3 Autotrophic nitrification

Both autotrophic nitrification and heterotrophic nitrification occur (*cf* Tiedje 1988). Autotrophic nitrification is an aerobic biological process whereby NH_4^+ is converted to NO_3^-. This oxidation process is essentially carried out in two stages:

a) $NH_4^+ + 3/2\ O_2 \dashrightarrow NO_2^- + 2H^+ + H_2O + E$

b) $NO_2^- + 1/2\ O_2 \dashrightarrow NO_3^- + E$

In soils, the oxidation of ammonium to nitrite (stage a) is mainly performed by *Nitrosomonas*, while the oxidation of nitrite to nitrate (stage b) is dominantly performed by *Nitrobacter*. The process of N_2O production via nitrification of ammonium to nitrite is not clearly understood (see Sahrawat & Keeney 1986). According to Papen & Rennenberg (1990) N_2O could be formed during stage a) of the chemoautotrophic nitrification process as follows:



$$\begin{tikzcd}
NH_4^+ \arrow[r, dashed] & NH_2OH \arrow[r, dashed] \arrow[dr, "?"] & {[HNO]} \arrow[r, dashed] \arrow[d, leftrightarrow] & NO \arrow[r, dashed] & NO_2^- \\
 & & N_2O \arrow[ur, "?"'] & &
\end{tikzcd}$$

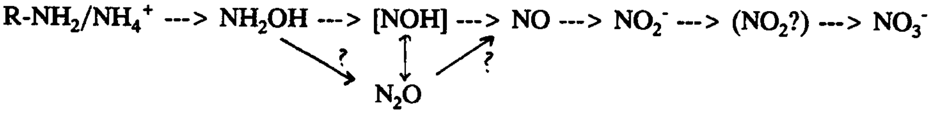
The presence of the nitroxyl radical (HNO) would explain the possibility for N_2O production during nitrification since, especially under anaerobic conditions, there would be a spontaneous (chemical) decomposition of [HNO] to N_2O (*cf* Anderson 1976 as quoted by Rosswall 1981). Yoshida & Alexander (1970), however, showed that *Nitrosomonas europea* produces N_2O during the oxidation of NH_4^+ or NH_2OH to nitrite. Bremner & Blackmer (1978) also found that N_2O is formed during nitrification. According to researchers cited by Bouwman (1990 p. 121) the NO/N_2O production ratio for nitrifying bacteria is in the order of 1-5, and about 0.01 for denitrifying bacteria. Little seems to be known however about the absolute production levels. In the experiment of Klemedtsson *et al.* (1988a), however, nitrifiers produced up to 16.5 times more N_2O than denitrifiers during a 6-day laboratory experiment after addition of 40 μg NH_4^+-N and 40 μg NO_3^--N g^{-1} dry soil at 60% of the soils water holding capacity.

In the field N_2O production via nitrification mainly is controlled by the oxygen status of the soil, a readily available supply of nitrifiable nitrogen, by the moisture content and by temperature (*cf* Bowden 1986). Since the nitrification pathway requires aerobic conditions it is likely that a low partial oxygen pressure during the nitrification process may enhance the formation of N_2O (Johansson & Galbally 1984), as later explained by Poth & Focht (1985). Anderson & Levine (1986) showed that at low O_2 levels, the nitrite formed during stage a) may be reduced to N_2O before it is reduced to nitrate through step b). Bacteria that oxidize NO_2^- to NO_3^-, corresponding with stage b) of the autotrophic nitrification process, are not able to form N_2O (*cf* Umarov 1990). Application of nitrifiable forms of N-fertilizer (urea, ammonia or $(NH_4)_2SO_4$) often greatly increase the N_2O emission (Bremner & Blackmer 1978). Similarly, Bremner & Blackmer (1981) concluded that N_2O emission associated with nitrification was related to the nitrifiable-N content, and not influenced by the addition of NO_3^--N. Application of the nitrification inhibitor nitrapyrin to soil supplied with urea or NH_4^+-N fertilizers greatly retarded emission of N_2O from well aerated soils.

The chemoautotrophic *Nitrosomonas* and *Nitrobacter* metabolize about 35 and 100 times as much nitrogen, respectively, as the carbon dioxide they fix, which means that a few microorganisms can process a large amount of nitrogen (Sprent 1990). This type of nitrification is therefore quite rapid, especially in well aerated soils. Autotrophic nitrifiers probably are the major producers of N_2O in freely aerated soils, both under natural conditions (e.g., Parton *et al.* 1998) as well as under agriculture (e.g., Klemedttson *et al.* 1988). Umarov (1990), however, thinks the role of autotrophic nitrifiers in producing N_2O is insignificant in the biosphere (see Section 3.2.4).

3.2.4 Heterotrophic nitrification

Heterotrophic nitrification is the oxidation of NH_3/NH_4^+ or the oxidation of organic-N containing compounds to NO_2^- and/or NO_3^- under aerobic conditions in the presence of carbon substrates (*cf* Papen & Rennenberg 1990). The role of the carbon substrates is to serve both as carbon and energy sources. For heterotrophic nitrification to occur, the content of nitrogen (C/N) must exceed the amount of nitrogen necessary for normal growth (*cf* Umarov 1990). Papen & Rennenberg (1990) tentatively proposed the following reaction sequence:



$$\begin{tikzcd}
R\text{-}NH_2/NH_4^+ \arrow[r] & NH_2OH \arrow[r] \arrow[dr, "?"] & {[NOH]} \arrow[r] \arrow[d, leftrightarrow] & NO \arrow[r] & NO_2^- \arrow[r] & (NO_2?) \arrow[r] & NO_3^- \\
 & & N_2O \arrow[ur, "?"'] & & & &
\end{tikzcd}$$

The importance of biological NO_x production during field nitrification is unknown (*cf* Bowden 1986). Papen *et al.* (1989) showed that in cultures of *Alcaligenes faecalis*, a heterotrophic nitrifying bacteria, N_2O, NO and traces of NO_2 were formed besides NO_2^- and NO_3^-. Since a broad spectrum of different bacteria and fungi are able to catalyze heterotrophic nitrification, this process could possibly account for important nitrogenous trace gas emissions from soils according to Papen & Rennenberg (1990). Focht & Verstraete (1977), however, believed that the importance of heterotrophic nitrification in agricultural soils is low. Similarly, Bowden (1986) observed that although the potential for N_2O production during heterotrophic denitrification exists, there is little evidence yet that the relevant microorganisms do so in the field. Alternatively, Umarov (1990) postulated the role of autotrophic nitrifiers in forming N_2O in the biosphere is insignificant. He observed that although the activity of heterotrophic nitrifiers is generally about 10^3 to 10^4 times slower than that of autotrophic nitrifiers, the former are very important in view of the large ecological versatility of the microorganisms involved and the great number of nitrogen compounds they can oxidize. Additionally, Umarov (1990) observed that heterotrophic nitrification is not markedly inhibited by acidification of soils contrary to autotrophic nitrifiers. This could mean that the role of heterotrophic nitrifiers is likely to increase with increasing "environmental pollution", associated with acid deposition, while the role of autotrophic nitrifiers will decrease.

3.2.5 Other biological processes

Small amounts of N_2O may be formed in soils by nitrate respiration by non-denitrifying bacteria (Smith & Zimmerman 1981) which are able to reduce nitrate to ammonia (see Stouthamer 1988, p. 258). Burth & Ottow (1982) also observed N_2O release by non-denitrifying nitrate reducers. Tiedje *et al.* (1982) found that nitrate respiring, non-denitrifying bacteria may produce significant amounts of N_2O under anaerobic conditions in ecosystems high in organic matter content. All the nitrate respiring (i.e. NO_3^- reduction to NO_2^- or NH_4^+) bacteria tested by Bleaky & Tiedje (1982) produced N_2O, but could not reduce it further. In addition, they isolated one assimilatory nitrate reducing bacterium (*Azotobacter vinelandii*) and numerous yeasts and fungi (e.g., *Aspergillus* and *Fusarium*) that produced N_2O. In acid forest ecosystems yeasts and fungi may prove important producers of N_2O (Robertson & Tiedje 1988). Bollag & Tung (1972) reported that fungi can form N_2O during the reduction of NO_2^-. Malinowsky & Ottow (1991) found that *Fusarium* strain 50 released N_2O from nitrite (but not from nitrate) both under aerobic as well as completely anaerobic conditions; this process was inducible by nitrite. N_2 could not be detected in the above experiment.

The non-respiratory N_2O production, typically produces N_2O and not N_2 as the product of N-oxide reduction. The mechanism for this type of N_2O production is not yet known. Neither has it been shown whether the non-denitrifying sources of nitrous oxide are of environmental significance, the difficulty being that experimental methods do not permit to separate these sources of N_2O unequivocally from the respiratory denitrifier sources (see review of Tiedje 1988).

Unlike the assimilatory pathway, dissimilatory nitrate reduction is an anaerobic process not inhibited by ammonium accumulation. Although it occurs in the same environment as denitrification, dissimilatory nitrate reduction to ammonium differs in 3 main features: a) the microflora is fermentative (strictly or facultative anaerobic); b) the mechanism requires more reducing power, and c) it is a poor producer of energy (*cf* Tiedje 1988). The dissimilative nitrate reduction to ammonium in soils is further discussed by Correa & Germon (1991).

Some free living Rhizobia may play an important role as denitrifiers in fertile environments (see review by O'Hara & Daniel 1985). Smith & Smith (1986) studied the denitrification by two strains of *Bradyrhizobium japonicum*. The rhizobia grew in anaerobic batch cultures, depleting NO_3^- and producing N_2O in the presence of C_2H_2. Denitrification rates of whole detached nodules were unaffected by the presence of O_2, though the rates were limited by the external NO_3^--concentration. Denitrification by intact, nodulated soybean plants under aerobic conditions was also observed by Smith & Smith (1986). The estimated range of N-denitrified to N-fixed ranged from 0 to 0.3, depending on essay conditions.

Gaseous losses of nitrogen from plants are discussed by Farquhar & McKenny (1979). N_2O evolved at the soil surface can be taken up by plants through foliar uptake in maize (Lensi & Chalamet 1981) as well as rice (Minzoni *et al.* 1988). Klepper (1979) observed that herbicide treated plants can emit NO and NO_2 into the atmosphere. Cervelli & Rolston (1983) reported that the herbicide atrazine caused a decrease in the N_2/N_2O ratio of gases evolved from denitrification.

3.2.6 Chemodenitrification

Chemodenitrification refers to nitrogen gas producing reactions that are catalyzed by abiologic agents. Chalk & Smith (1983) prepared a review of chemo-denitrification. Based on the subsequent review of Tiedje (1988) the predominant product of chemodenitrification is usually NO, but N_2 and N_2O may be produced as well.

Chemodenitrification is not believed to be an important process at the global level, but it may occur locally in nitrite containing acid ($pH<5$) or frozen soils. The required high contents of nitrite and low pH values may coexist in cropped soils after the application of an alkaline hydrolysing fertilizer or prills. The NO_2^- which accumulates within the "fertilized" band will diffuse from the band in response to a concentration gradient, so that compounds such as CH_3ONO can be formed by chemical reaction (Magalhaes & Chalk 1983). Alternatively, chemodenitrification of nitrite in presence of organic matter or Fe^{2+} may lead to N_2O production measured as biological denitrification in enclosures (Chalamet & Bardin 1977; Morgaghan & Buresh 1977). Similarly, Christianson & Cho (1983) observed that chemical denitrification occurs in frozen soils by soluble organic matter-NO_2^- reactions. Cofer *et al.* (1991) postulate that heating of soils during large fires may cause significant releases of biogenically produced N_2O.

3.3 Temporal and spatial variability in N_2O emissions

3.3.1 General

Numerous environmental and agricultural factors influence the biological processes of soil microorganisms responsible for N_2O-emissions from soils (Table 3.2), in addition to the type and composition of the microbial population (e.g., Munch & Ottow 1986; Munch 1991). The environmental factors include soil temperature, soil moisture content and soil aeration status, as influenced by the structure, texture, porosity and precipitation/irrigation, as well as the pH, the organic matter content, and "overall" soil type. Agricultural or management practices that may affect N_2O emissions from soils include the fertilizer regime (e.g., type, rate, application technique, timing), cultivation practices (e.g., tillage, irrigation and drainage) as well as the crop assortment, all of which can vary widely at the local, regional and global level, as climate and soil conditions are highly variable in space and time (e.g., Nielsen & Bouma 1985; Bouma and Bregt 1988, Mausbach & Wilding 1991), and the wide range in biological processes involved in the production of N_2O this explains why field measured N_2O fluxes often vary markedly both in space and time. The latter is particularly the case when the N_2O is essentially evolved from denitrification, since nitrification generally is a fairly constant process across ecosystems (Firestone & Davidson 1989). Nitrifier denitrification (Poth & Focht 1985) and respiratory denitrification, however, probably are not "constant" in time.

Table 3.2 Key factors affecting N_2O emissions from soils (Adapted after Eichner 1990).

Management practices	Environmental factors
Fertilizer type	Temperature
Application rate	Precipitation
Application technique	Soil moisture content
Timing of application	Organic C content
Tillage practices	Oxygen availability
Use of other chemicals	Porosity
Crop rotation	pH
Irrigation	Freeze and thaw cycle
Residual N and C from crops and fertilizer	Microorganisms

The interpretation of the effects of the various biological and abiological controlling factors on these fluxes is further complicated by the limitations that are inherent to the respective gas measurement techniques used (see discussion by Mosier 1990). Based on their field experiments, Matthias *et al.* (1980) concluded that the accuracy of the mean N_2O flux for a given area is much more dependent on the number of flux measurements than on the accuracy of any particular flux measurement. Earlier, Rolston *et al.* (1979) concluded that the accuracy of field measurements of N_2O emissions is more limited by sampling problems resulting from spatial and diurnal variability in these emissions than by analytical problems associated with assessments of N_2O fluxes. Additionally, the spatial and temporal variability in measured fluxes in a given area can vary from one year to the other over comparable measurement periods (e.g., Goodroad & Keeney 1984b). Therefore it is often difficult to properly quantify the gaseous N-losses, and their relative composition, from soils.

The interpretation of field emission data would be facilitated if experiments specify the underlying biological processes and nature of the biological population. Knowledge of the fact whether N_2O emissions are produced through nitrification or denitrification would further contribute to the understanding of the abiotic and management factors affecting N_2O emissions from soil systems at the site level. Mosier *et al.* (1982), for instance, found that N_2O emission from plots treated with 16.7 tons ha^{-1} dry anaerobically digested sewage sludge totalled 10.6 kg N ha^{-1} and exhibited temporal variability similar to that of plots treated with ammonium nitrate (range 56-224 kg N ha^{-1}). Determination of the reaction source, however, is not always possible in regional and global assessments of N_2O emissions as this aspect is difficult to consider at the macro-scale (e.g., Eichner 1990). Recently, however, Bouwman *et al.* (1992) included the aspect of "reaction source" in their global modelling study. Scaling-up of site measurements to the ecosystem or global level, however, remains a serious topic of discussion (IGBP 1990, Roswall *et al.* 1988).

3.3.2 Temporal variability

When assessing the soil derived N_2O (and NO_x) emissions in a particular region it is necessary to have adequate information concerning the spatial and temporal variability in these emissions. Consequently, many researchers have studied the spatial and temporal variability of N_2O emissions from soils. In Sections 3.2 and 3.3 we shall use selected examples to illustrate the dimensions of this variability.

Diurnal variability

The recommended or adopted period of measurement during the day varies markedly from one experiment to the other, often because of logistic reasons. Ryden *et al.* (1978), for instance, suggested that N_2O measurements should be performed during the mid morning hours or mid- to late afternoon to "avoid" <sic> the N_2O flux they observed in the early afternoon during their experiment. Mosier *et al.* (1991) measured N_2O fluxes in closed chambers in a Colorado grassland at mid-morning, and generally weekly at each of the considered sites. The experiment of Blackmer *et al.* (1982), however, showed that reasonably accurate estimates of N_2O fluxes cannot be obtained by measuring the rate of N_2O emission during a relatively short period of the day. Peaks in N_2O emissions which are known to be associated with marked rainfall events or changes in soil temperature over the day may be missed all together in such experiments.

Blackmer *et al.* (1982) studied the diurnal variability of emissions of nitrous oxide from Iowa soils using a chamber technique (Matthias *et al.* 1980) to measure the N_2O emission rates on fertilized and unfertilized sites at intervals of 1 or 2 hours for periods ranging from 1 to 5 days. These experiments revealed large coefficients of variation in N_2O emission within 24 hour periods, ranging from 12 to 66% with an average of 38%. As much as 90% of the diurnal variability in N_2O emission could be attributed to diurnal N_2O emission patterns related to changes in soil temperature in this study. Alternatively, the wind speed was found to clearly influence the diurnal patterns in N_2O emissions from soils in some studies (e.g., Ryden *et al.* 1978) but not in others (e.g., Blackmer *et al.* 1982). Possible causes for the diurnal variability in N_2O emissions in the experiment of Ryden *et al.* (1978) were given as the effect of an increase in temperature on the activity of denitrifying bacteria, as well as on the rate of N_2O diffusion in soil. Alternatively, changes in the soil aeration status following rainfall on the nitrifier and denitrifier activity may also influence the N_2O emissions.

Denmead *et al.* (1979), when studying N_2O emissions from a grass sward in Australia, observed a clearly defined diurnal pattern with maximum rates occurring in the afternoon and minimum rates near sunrise when the temperature of the topsoil was lowest. During the measurement period Denmead *et al.* (1979) found little phase difference between the diurnal variability in topsoil temperature and N_2O emissions in this sward. Alternatively, Blackmer *et al.* (1982) found that the diurnal variability in N_2O emission is often markedly out of phase with the diurnal variability in the temperature of the topsoil.

Seasonal variability

The N_2O emissions in any given location vary with the measurement period as well as the time of measurement. In the study of Thompson *et al.* (1983) the average coefficient of variation for denitrification was 98% for the winter and 180% for the spring experiments. These values became respectively 43% and 75% when these researchers only considered mean fluxes exceeding 0.10 kg N $ha^{-1}d^{-1}$.

Crop type and crop development may also influence N_2O emissions. Mosier *et al.* (1986), for instance, measured N_2O and N_2 emissions from irrigated fields to assess the magnitude of N loss by denitrification. The relevant soils were supplied with 200 kg N ha^{-1} as 99 atom % ^{15}N ammonium-sulphate. The vertical N_2O and N_2 fluxes were measured periodically by sampling, using a cover method, and analyzing N_2O by gas chromatography and N_2 by mass spectrometry. During the cropping seasons under consideration (1982 and 1983) the maximum N_2O emissions occurred in May for Barley and in July for corn. Both the emissions for barley and corn increased with increasing soil-water content. During 1982, total volatile-N loss of (N_2O + N_2) from the moderately well drained clay loam soil was about 2.5% of the applied fertilizer N, and about 70% of the total consisted of N_2O. In case of the barley field, about 1% of the applied fertilizer-N was emitted with about equal amounts of each gas.

In the study of Bremner *et al.* (1980) 67% of the N_2O produced was evolved in summer with little production occurring in winter. Christensen & Tiedje (1990), however, observed a marked N_2O-flux at thaw in an "acid sandy loam soil" between January (1 °C) and March (4 °C) which could be due to an increased microbial activity under warmer conditions. The temperature effect observed in the field could be duplicated in laboratory experiments, during which thawing soil cores at controlled temperature, nitrate and moisture contents yielded a large flush of N_2O compared to unfrozen soils. Similarly, Cate & Keeney (1987) observed a large increase in N_2O in soil air when the temperature increased to 0-1 °C after a frozen period. According to Christensen & Tiedje (1990) the spring peak in N_2O maybe due to respiratory denitrification. The carbon source mediating the process could be the microorganisms killed by the freezing or detritus that became available by the freezing-thawing process. Alternatively, emissions in autumn may be associated with falling of leaves and partial dying-back of roots.

3.3.3 Spatial variability

Numerous researchers have studied the spatial variability of N_2O emissions from soils. Often these studies were implemented to assess the effect of different water and fertilizer practices on N_2O emissions. The latter mainly to improve the efficiency of N-fertilizer use by reducing emissions of gaseous N-products as well as to decipher the global behaviour of N_2O emission from soils.

Rolston *et al.* (1979) studied the spatial and diurnal variability of N_2O emission within small, apparently uniform, soil plots (generally 20 by 20 m), finding coefficients of variation (CV) of 31 to 168%. Similarly, Parsons *et al.* (1991) found that nitrogen gas evolution was highly variable on a spatial scale, with replicate measurements showing CVs between 74 and 268%. They found that the denitrifying enzyme activity in the 2 soils studied, ranged from 0.1 to 119 ng N_2O-N g^{-1} soil min^{-1} and varied spatially and temporally, but did not exhibit the same seasonal pattern as N-gas loss. Alternatively, the coefficients of variation ranged from 161 to 508% for the (N_2O + N_2) fluxes, and 282 to 379% for the N_2O fluxes, in a study of the structure and magnitude of the spatial variability of N-fluxes along 12 transects of a well drained alluvial Yolo loam (Typic Xerorthent) (Folorunso & Rolston 1984). In this study the measured N_2O and (N_2O + N_2 fluxes) - acetylene inhibition technique, closed chambers - were ln-normally distributed. Subsequent statistical analyses based on autocorrelograms and partial autocorrelograms showed that in only one out of the 12 transects studied the (N_2O + N_2) and N_2O

fluxes revealed any spatial dependence indicative of an autoregressive process. Consequently, the denitrification flux values for this field site can be considered to be spatially independent. Folorunso & Rolston (1984) calculated that from 156 to 4177 (N_2O + N_2) flux measurements and 350 N_2O flux measurements are needed to estimate the "true" mean flux within 10% of the estimated mean on a 3 by 36 m experimental plot. The possible implications for obtaining representative flux measurements for large fields as well as for scaling-up these results in global studies are evident.

In a subsequent study with Yolo loam soils Folorunso & Rolston (1985) found that the cyclic nature of the soil-water content in the surface soil appeared to be the primary cause of cycling of the denitrification gas flux at a period of 4 to 5 m. Cycling of water-soluble organic C at periods different from that of water content also caused some periodic behaviour in denitrification gas fluxes. The study of Folorunso & Rolston (1985) shows that spectral[1] and coherency techniques, contrary to standard correlation or regression methods, provided evidence of significant causal effects on denitrification.

The spectral and coherence analysis of Grundmann *et al.* (1988) indicated that denitrification flux in an irrigated Typic Xerorthent, amended with chopped alfalfa and nitrate, did not cycle at the frequency of imposed soil-water content due to several interacting factors. In this study variations in soil-water content were responsible for much of the variability of other parameters (especially nitrate) which subsequently affected denitrification flux through the development of anoxic sites, reduction in the gas transfer to the soil surface by diffusion, and nitrate leaching.

The high spatial variability of field-measured denitrification gas fluxes is connected to the problem of definition of denitrification sites in relation to substrate sources and O_2-concentration. In aggregated, unsaturated soils anaerobiosis, and hence denitrification, is mainly confined to micro-aggregates corresponding with the so-called hot-spots of Parkin (1987) or associated with earthworm casts (Svensson *et al.* 1986; Knight *et al.* 1989). Leffelaar (1986) showed that denitrification from a single aggregate can be predicted with success only when the spatial and temporal distribution of denitrifiers, water, oxygen, decomposable organic compounds and nitrate can be measured or calculated. Smith (1980) observed that in principle denitrification losses from aggregated field soils can be predicted when denitrification losses from individual aggregates and their size distribution are known. Sextone *et al.* (1985), however, noted that not-all aggregates with anaerobic sites necessarily display denitrification. Possible reasons for this have been listed as the absence of denitrifiers and/or substrates, NO_3^- and/or carbon inside the aggregates. Additionally, soil gas diffusion, as related to both the development of anoxic sites and diffusive transport of produced gases to the soil surface, is an important process which should be considered if further predictive capability and understanding of the mechanisms causing the large spatial variability of denitrification gas fluxes are to be elucidated (Grundmann *et al.* 1988). Benckiser *et al.* (1987) observed that in order to increase our understanding of the microbiology and biochemistry of the denitrification process under natural conditions, more emphasis should be given to field studies of physical processes like N_2O-diffusion and N_2O-retention in the soil. Similarly, Chalamet (1990) observed that the high spatial variability in N_2O fluxes could well be related to the oxygen diffusion coefficients (D) which vary markedly with the environmental conditions, decreasing in the general sequence: air ($D \approx 1.8\ 10^{-1}\ m^2s^{-1}$) >> gas phase of soil ($D \approx 10^{-3}$

---

[1] Spectral or harmonic analysis is a statistical tool for transforming data from the time or spatial domain to the frequency domain; it is essentially a partitioning of the total variance of a set of samples from a stochastic process to assess which of the frequencies have the greatest significant variances associated with them (Folorunso & Rolston 1985).

m^2s^{-1}) > free water and mud (D≈ 10^{-5} m^2s^{-1}) >> inter aggregates (D≈ 8.5 10^{-6} m^2s^{-1}) > sediments (D≈ 10^{-7} m^{-2} s^{-1}).

As was observed earlier, the spatial variability of N_2O emissions associated with nitrification is generally less than that reported for denitrification (Firestone & Davidson 1989). This is essentially due to the fact that contrary to denitrification, nitrification is not related to the presence of "anaerobic microsites".

3.4 Environmental and agricultural controls of N_2O production

3.4.1 Introduction

All microbial processes in nature, including nitrification and denitrification, are sensitive to changes in the environmental and agricultural regulating factors. Inherently, these factors are highly variable in space and time (see Section 3.3). Additionally, important regulating factors of water, temperature, plants and organic matter can have both synergistic as well as antagonistic effects on the status of other regulating factors. In this context reference can already be made to several examples. Koskinen & Keeney (1982), for instance, observed that it is difficult to evaluate whether the effect of pH on denitrification, and thereby the N_2O fraction, is due to the pH *perse* or to an interaction of other factors such as the availability of nitrite. Higher rates of denitrification and denitrifying enzyme activity in a Kentucky toposequence, were related to topography and physical characteristics of the soil through the indirect effect of topography on soil moisture conditions (Parsons *et al.* 1991). Weier & Doran (1987) found that fertile Brigalow soils of eastern Australia had the potential to denitrify but that this was limited by soil water content and available carbon. Alternatively, the existence of a biological regulation of nitrification by *protozoa* has recently been reported (Griffiths 1989).

The above discussion already shows that in N_2O production and emissions studies it is important that the N_2O measurements are accompanied by data on the main regulating factors of available carbon, nitrate concentration, O_2-concentration or water content, as well as agricultural practices. This would help to explain the denitrification and/or nitrification measured in the field. In the following Sections we review some of the possible effects of soil and management factors on emissions of N_2O from soils, using general headings for convenience's sake.

3.4.2 Effects associated with the soil moisture/aeration status

The moisture and aeration status of a soil is closely related to its physical properties, as determined mainly by soil texture, mineralogy, stoniness, organic matter content and structure, as well as the rainfall/irrigation regime and the crop cover or vegetation present. Plants consume oxygen by root respiration and use water thereby decreasing the water filled pore space. Fluctuations in water filled pore space in turn influence: a) the rate of N_2O diffusion in the soil, b) the amount of N_2O dissolved in the soil water, c) the rate of N_2O production by soil microorganisms, d) the rate of reduction of N_2O to N_2 by soil microorganisms, and e) the amplitude in the diurnal change in temperature that occurs at any given depth in the soil (Blackmer *et al.* 1982). Alternatively, plants take up nitrate which may reduce the availability of nitrate for denitrification.

Generally, the release of N_2O to the atmosphere is enhanced by alternating dry-wet cycles (Letey *et al.* 1981). The wetting enhances mineralisation of organic matter with resultant pulses in nitrification, and creates anaerobic conditions that favour denitrification. Under these conditions, the production of N_2O may exceed the reduction of N_2O to N_2; generally the peaks in N_2O decrease with subsequent rainfall events. Cady & Bartholomew (1960) found that the higher the water content in Norfolk soils, the more rapid was the conversion of N_2O to N_2. According to Letey *et al.* (1980a) the enzyme dissimilatory nitrate reductase develops rapidly and the enzyme dissimilatory N_2O-reductase develops only after a period of time following the creation of anoxic conditions. The net effect, however, would be a somewhat lower total N_2O production (e.g., Colbourn & Harper 1987). As the soil dries up the fraction of N_2O may increase as a result of a higher O_2 status, in that it inhibits the reduction of N_2O to N_2 (Letey *et al.* 1981; Focht 1974). Groffman & Tiedje (1988) reported an hysteresis effect as a result of which respiration and denitrification gradually decrease, without peaking, when soils dry up. Several explanations have been given for the fact that oxygen represses microbial denitrification. Oxygen may repress nitrate reductase (Knowles 1982) or interfere with the thermodynamics (Thauer *et al.* 1977) or inhibit nitrate uptake in cells (Hernandez & Rowe 1987). It is likely that plants that have well organized aerenchyma, which allows transport of oxygen to the root surface, will support denitrification less than non-vascular plants (*cf* Prade & Trolldenier 1990a). Upon depletion of O_2 in soil, facultative anaerobic denitrifiers must adapt their enzymatic system to the shift from aerobic to anaerobic conditions (*cf* Tiedje 1988).

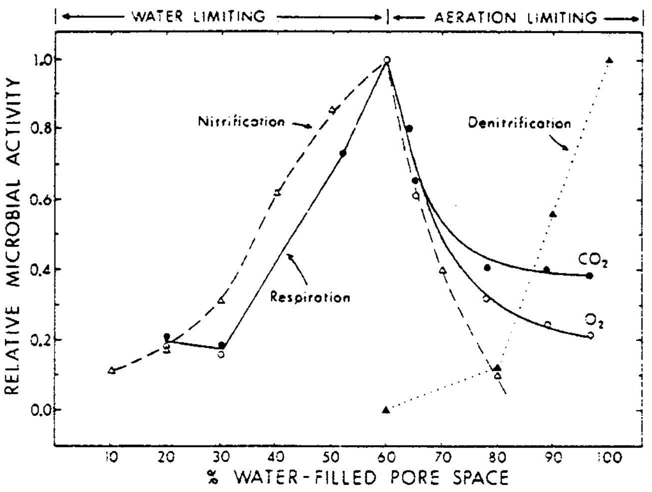


Figure 3.2 Relationship between water-filled pore space and relative amount of microbial nitrification, denitrification, and respiration (O_2-uptake) and CO_2-production (Source: Linn & Doran 1984 p. 1271).

Denitrification increases drastically when the oxygen concentration drops below 2% (Tiedje *et al.* 1984). In many soil types, a water filled pore space (WFPS) of over 60% seems to facilitate the development of anaerobic conditions favourable for denitrification (e.g., Knowles 1982; Linn & Doran 1984; Prade & Trolldenier 1990b; Parsons *et al.* 1991; see also Figure 3.2). Similarly, Eaton & Patriquin (1989) observed only small amounts of N_2O at 60% of field capacity, but as the moisture content was raised the production of N_2O increased. This general relationship, however, is affected by other factors as well such as temperature (see Table 3.3). Additionally, water may stimulate denitrification by temporarily reducing the oxygen diffusion into the soil as well as by increasing the solubility of organic C and nitrate (see Bowden 1986). Continuous waterlogging, however, can limit denitrification if it also restricts nitrification which produces the nitrate for denitrification; these conditions prevail for instance in well managed, permanently flooded paddy soils. The foregoing illustrates we can not expect a simple relationship between soil water content and the amplitude of the daily pattern in the rate of N_2O emission, associated with denitrification, from soils.

The maximum activity of nitrification is generally around 60-80% of field capacity. Nitrifiers will start to denitrify NO_2^- when oxygen becomes limiting, producing N_2O (*cf* Tiedje 1988). It is possible that denitrifiers may use N_2O as an alternative electron acceptor under conditions where nitrate production through nitrification is blocked. The N_2O produced during nitrification is more likely to evolve to the atmosphere that N_2O produced by denitrification. Since soil pores are generally "open" during nitrification, gaseous diffusion to the soil surface should be possible. Alternatively, there will be less soil water in which the N_2O may dissolve. As such nitrification generally is a fairly constant process, contrary to denitrification (e.g., Byrnes *et al.* 1990; Davidson & Firestone 1989). As has been indicated earlier, this does not hold for denitrification where N_2O emissions often occur as short-termed, episodic events associated with the initial stages of development of anaerobiosis in soils.

In permeable soils oxygen concentrations are related to the proximity of drains and the height of the water table, so that a spatial relationship between denitrification and drainage may be expected. Colbourn & Harper (1987) found that drainage limited denitrification to about 65% of the losses from undrained soils, with denitrification occurring between a depth of 10 and 50 cm. The emissions from the undrained soil were in the range 1-12 g N $ha^{-1}h^{-1}$, while those from drained soil amounted to 0.6-6.0 g N $ha^{-1}h^{-1}$, giving estimated total losses of (N_2O + N) of 14 ± 2 and 9 ± 1 kg N ha^{-1}, respectively. These researchers also reported that drainage changed the fraction of N_2O in the total denitrification product. During December, emissions from the drained soil (1.8 ± 0.6 g N $ha^{-1}h^{-1}$) were composed entirely of N_2O, whereas in undrained soil (2.7 ± 1.1 g N $ha^{-1}h^{-1}$) losses were almost entirely in the form of nitrogen gas; the fraction of N_2O in the total loss was 0.02. In February, denitrification declined due to colder conditions and the emission of N_2O from drained soils declined relative to nitrogen gas so that the fraction of N_2O was 0.03 for both drainage treatments. The delayed onset of N_2O reduction in the drained soil was related to the concentration of O_2 and NO_3^-. Fertilizer application in the spring gave rise to maximum rates of emission of 5-12 g N $ha^{-1}h^{-1}$ with the balance shifting towards N_2O production; the fraction of N_2O became 0.2-0.8 in April and May (Colbourn & Harper 1987).

Emissions of nitrous oxide often show a marked response to rainfall events or small additions of water (e.g., Mosier *et al.* 1981, 1986, 1991; Denmead *et al.*, 1979; Rolston *et al.* 1982; Sextone *et al.* 1985), especially after N-fertilizer application (Brams *et al.* 1990). Mulvaney & Kurtz (1984), for instance, simulated the effect of wetting-drying cycles on gaseous N-losses using soil cores enriched with ^{15}N-labelled fertilizers, and found that the N-evolution peaked 2 to 9 days after precipitation. Christensen (1990) reported that the mean denitrification in a "sandy loam soil" (pH 3.8) increased markedly during a week that followed 1-2 days of heavy thunderstorms. In this study only 4 out of 30 permanent points in a 5 x 6 grid, with 1 m spacing, were responsible for much of the increase in mean N_2O rates. Following the heavy rainfall, plants started to decompose in 3 spots in the field. The relevant spots were part of the 4 locations where denitrification "hot spots" occurred. In the study of Mosier *et al.* (1986) the ratios of N_2/N_2O varied from 0 to 60 with an average of 10.3 upon water applications causing the topsoils to be close to or wetter than field capacity; the proportion of N_2 was highest during intense emission periods and fell to zero, or below the N_2 detection limit, as the soil dried.

Differences between the N_2O concentrations in "soil air" and measured fluxes from the soil surface are commonly observed. According to Stegeman & Cammenga (1990) this can be due to:

- Reduction of N_2O to N_2 by microbes;
- The very low diffusion coefficients of N_2O in soils;
- Physical adsorption of N_2O at the soil matrix;

Denitrification rates vary with the size and composition of soil aggregates. With reference to wet-sieved aggregates, Elliot (1986) suggested that C-substrate availability increased with increasing aggregate size. The sample pretreatment - i.e. wet-sieving or dry sieving, temperature and time of drying - also affects the N_2O evolution from aggregates. Seech & Beauchamp (1988) found that N_2O production generally increased with increasing aggregate size in water-sieved aggregates, in marked contrast to dry-sieved aggregates.

Physical adsorption of N_2O in soils might be responsible for the commonly observed spontaneous release of N_2O when dry surface soils, as often found on a warm and dry summer, are wetted (Stegeman & Cammenga 1990). Emissions of N_2O are also stimulated by alternating drying and wetting cycles (Letey *et al.* 1981). Letey *et al.* (1980c) found that the fraction of nitrogenous gases diffusing from a soil core increased as the soil air-filled porosity increased, and the adsorption coefficient between the soil and gas decreases. Benckiser *et al.* (1987) suggest that N_2O may be adsorbed at the soil matrix, especially under relatively dry conditions in soils with high organic matter content. Similarly, Chalamet & Chauchard (1976) observed N_2O was only absorbed in large amounts on clay if the water content was below that of air-dry soil. Stegeman & Cammenga (1990) found that oven-dried soil samples form a strong sorbing medium for N_2O, with the sorbed gas mass being related to the clay content over the 8-30% range. Drying of soils may "activate" clay minerals when water is removed by heating; this assumption is supported by the non-sorbing behaviour of quartz sand under the same conditions (Stegeman & Cammenga 1990). In air-dried samples (1-3% moisture content), however, the relationships could no longer be observed (Stegeman & Cammenga 1990). Adsorption of N_2 and N_2O occurs on surface soils during dry afternoons as the water molecules evaporate (Kemper *et al.* 1985).

3.4.3 Effects associated with changes in temperature

Interpretation of the relationship between temperature and the nitrifier-denitrifier rate is complicated by interactions between microbial activity, water filled pore space, solubility of oxygen and availability of organic substrates. Blackmer *et al.* (1982), for instance, showed that when the concentration of N_2O in a surface soil is similar to the concentration of N_2O in the atmosphere, temperature induced changes in the solubility of N_2O in soil water should not produce significant diurnal patterns in the rate of N_2O emission from soil. Alternatively, Thompson *et al.* (1983) found that variations in the rate of denitrification observed in each of 3 slurry treatments reflected the variation in soil temperature. In the study of Parsons *et al.* (1991), however, denitrification, measured as N_2O production under C_2H_2, was not positively correlated with soil temperature over the 2 to 26 °C temperature range at either site of a toposequence. In this study, an inverse relationship between temperature and water filled pore space was observed. Alternatively, Powlson *et al.* (1988) showed that denitrifying organisms can adapt to the local climate. Brams *et al.* (1990) observed that a warmer soil temperature was not a sufficient condition to enhance the emission of N_2O, but it was necessary to allow the soil microbial population to respond to other "perturbations" such as fertilization or rainfall, and particularly a combination of the two.

Blackmer *et al.* (1982) observed that a 17 °C decrease in the 0-2 cm depth layer at a shaded site corresponded with a 17-fold decrease in N_2O emission from the shaded site as compared to the unshaded site. In a subsequent laboratory study of the same soil, however, Blackmer *et al.* (1982) found that a 20 °C change in temperature corresponded only with a 4.5-fold change in the rate of N_2O production.

The optimum temperature for nitrification lies in the range 30 to 35 °C, while temperatures below 5 °C and above 40 °C are generally considered limiting (Alexander 1977). Appreciable nitrification of slurry-NH_4^+ has been reported at temperatures below 6 °C (Thompson & Pain 1989). The lower limit for denitrification to occur is commonly given as 2.7 to 10 °C (see Firestone 1984). Eaton & Patriquin (1989) observed no N_2O production below 15 °C in infertile soils of lowbush blueberry (*Vaccinium Angustifolium*). Parson *et al.* (1991) observed that in 11 of the 12 cores of a soil under uncultivated mixed bluegrass N_2O evolved at a rate $\geq$ 0.95 10-6 g N $m^{-2}h^{-1}$ when temperature was 2 °C. A Q_{10} for microbial denitrification of 1.4 to 1.6 has been reported by Focht & Verstraete (1977). The lower limit for N_2O production to occur varies with the soil-environmental as well as biological characteristics of the microbial population. Bailey (1976), for instance, reported that denitrification can occur at low temperatures in the absence of O_2 and in the presence of a readily available source of C. Generally, a decreasing temperature will reduce the denitrification activity, and increase the N_2O/N_2 ratio in the denitrification products (Keeney *et al.* 1979). Bailey & Beauchamp (1973) found that the rate of NO_3^- reductase in the denitrification process was more affected by low temperature than the NO_2^- reductase step. The percentage of N_2/N_2O was not greatly affected by temperature changes in the study of Focht (1974); soil aeration and pH were shown to be the two factors causing the greatest variability in N_2O production through denitrification.

Similarly, Christensen (1990) found that at low moisture contents, corresponding with <100% of field capacity, the N_2/N_2O ratio was not affected significantly by changes in temperature over the range 2 to 25 °C. The averaged N_2/N_2O ratio was 1.5 to 2.5 for the temperature range 20-25 °C and 2-10 °C, respectively. At soil moisture contents of 100-175% of field capacity, however, the N_2/N_2O ratio increased with temperature over the range 2-25 °C. In this case, the increase amounted to 2.5 to 5.5 for the temperature range of 20-25 °C as compared to the 2-10 °C interval (Christensen 1990). Below 2-10 °C, however, the N_2/N_2O ratio apparently was not affected by the soil moisture content, whereas above 20-25 °C the N_2/N_2O ratio increased with increasing soil moisture contents. Similarly, the study of Benckiser *et al.* (1986) indicates that mostly N_2 is formed during denitrification as the temperature increases (Table 3.3).

Table 3.3 Daily denitrification losses from previously air-dried soil (upper 30 cm) incubated with and without acetylene at different temperatures and water contents[1,2] (Source: Benckiser *et al.* 1986).

Soil temperature (°C)	N_2O-evolution[4] at water contents (% v/v) of:			
	22	26	32	35
5	-	-	-	12. 9 ± 3.1 (0.4)[3]
8	-	-	3.1 ± 0.4	60 ± 20.4 (1.9)
13	-	-	60.4 ± 17.8	281.3 ± 27.6 (4.5)
20	-	8.0 ± 7.1	232.4 ± 92.0	861.3 ± 121.8 (10.3)

Note: 1) means of 4 replicates; 2) All replicates were adjusted to 33 μg NO_3^--N g^{-1} soil; 3) Numbers in parentheses are the N_2/N_2O-ratios at water contents of 35% v/v (about 90% WHC); 4) in ng N_2O-N $g^{-1}d^{-1}$.

Goodroad & Keeney (1984b) observed that although soil temperature was near freezing N_2O emissions were as high during the spring thaw as they were during the rest of the year. Similarly, Thompson *et al.* (1983) observed that denitrification continued in slurry application experiment, particularly in the injected treatment, despite frozen conditions at the soil surface. The results of Thompson *et al.* (1983) support the view that large amounts of readily decomposable carbon may enhance denitrification at temperatures near to freezing. Similarly, Benckiser *et al.* (1986) observed a mean rate of N_2O-evolution of 0.04 kg N ha^{-1} during 48 h measurement directly after thawing (5-8 oC). Eggington & Smith (1986a), in an experiment with grassland observed that most of the N_2O loss occurred immediately after thaw. It is likely that the spring flush in microbial growth responsible for the decay of organic detritus accumulated during the winter may have increased the competition for oxygen sufficiently to enhance the potential for denitrification (Brams *et al.* 1990).

3.4.4 Effects associated with soil pH

The pH clearly influences the rate of denitrification as well as the distribution of gaseous end products. Knowles (1981) found that the optimal pH range for denitrification is 7.0 to 8.0. Below a pH of 6.0 the rate of denitrification is often times found to decrease with a further drop in pH (e.g., Wijler & Delwiche 1954; Van Cleemput *et al.* 1976; Eaton & Patriquin 1989). Van Cleemput *et al.* (1976), however, also observed significant denitrification in strongly acid soils. N_2O may be the dominant gas evolved in acid infertile forest soils (Melillo *et al.* 1983; Eaton & Patriquin 1989). In the study of Eaton & Patriquin (1989) raising the pH resulted in increased rates of denitrification as well as more conversion of N_2O to N_2. This could be due to the greater sensitivity of the nitrous oxide reductase enzyme to low pH or proton activity (Alexander 1977; Knowles 1981). N_2 became the dominant N-gas evolved from denitrification at a pH of 6.9 in the incubation study of Koskinen & Keeney (1982) and above a pH of about 6.0 in the experiment of Eaton & Patriquin (1989). The highest amounts of NO was recorded at a pH of 4.6 to 5.4 in the later study. Similarly, Bollag *et al.* (1973) also reported that more NO and N_2O are produced under acid conditions. Chemodenitrification of nitrite may also play a role in the gaseous N-product evolution, particularly under acid conditions (see Section 3.2.6).

The mineralisation rate of organic-C rather than the pH *perse* may control the rate of denitrification in C-limited systems (Koskinen & Keeney 1982). At 100 10^{-6} g NO_3^--N added per gram of soil, the overall rate of denitrification correlated with the rates of C mineralisation (CO_2 evolution) but were not consistently related to pH or to total organic C. Based on these findings, Koskinen & Keeney (1982) wondered whether pH should be used as a variable in predictive models of denitrification as proposed by Focht (1974).

Goodroad & Keeney (1984a) reported that nitrification of NH_4^+-fertilizer increased with increase in soil pH over the range 4.7 to 6.7, when temperature ranged from 10 to 30 °C and the water content from 10 to 30 % v/v.

3.4.5 Effects associated with chemical status

In well aerated soils nitrification should not be a limiting factor unless the inorganic-N levels are low. In the latter case the denitrification rate will depend strongly upon the mineralization-nitrification kinetics (e.g., Chalamet 1990). According to Ryden (1981) a lower limit of 1μg NO_3^--N g^{-1} soil is needed for denitrification to occur. Eaton & Patriquin (1989), however, found that the N_2O production from waterlogged soils without added nitrate was positively correlated with the percentage of organic matter and the nitrate concentration of the soils at the time of sampling (initial pH of 4.0-5.5). No N_2O production was detected from samples containing less than 5 μg N g^{-1} soil. Of the cores with NO_3^--concentrations below the detection limit of 0.25 μg NO_3^--N g^{-1} dry soil, 65% of the Maury and 88% of the Lanton soil evolved measurable amounts of N_2O in an uncultivated mixed bluegrass (Parsons *et al.* 1991). This is in line with Murray *et al.*'s (1989) observation that denitrifying bacteria possess high affinity kinetic systems for NO_3^--utilization (Michaelis-Menten constant or $K_M < 10\ \mu M$), which would allow denitrifiers to use NO_3^- at concentrations lower than the above detection limit. Such very low concentrations are not likely to occur rapidly in agricultural soils. Abbeel *et al.* (1989), for instance, noted that even after 7 months after application of manure the NO_3^--concentration was still higher than 7.5 μg NO_3^--N g^{-1} soil. Possible sinks for nitrate in soils include run off, plant uptake, dissimilatory reduction to NH_4^+, binding to AEC in strongly weathered soils, percolation losses, immobilization by microbes and denitrification.

The rates of N_2O production in Pigeon Hill soils increased linearly up to the maximum of NO_3^- added (300 μg N g^{-1} soil), while no N_2O was detected in soil samples containing less than 5.0 μg NO_3^--N g^{-1} soil in the study of Eaton & Patriquin (1989). These findings support the earlier findings of Knowles (1982) that denitrification follows 1st-order kinetics up to 40-60 μg NO_3^--N g^{-1} soil, and zero order kinetics at higher NO_3^--levels. This means that high amounts of nitrate do not automatically lead to a relative increase (per unit of respired nitrate) in N_2O (and NO). High nitrate concentrations may be toxic for the enzyme N_2O reductase (Tiedje *et al.* 1984; Knowles 1982).

Delaune *et al.* (1990) studied the effects of N-application on N_2O evolution from flooded swamp forests. Two sources of nitrogen were used, ammonium sulphate and KNO_3. Nitrous oxide emissions was recorded on the second day following application of 10 g m^{-2} NO_3^--N, and lasted for about 2 weeks. According to Delaune *et al.* (1990) this corresponded with the period needed for all the NO_3^--N to be denitrified. In case of the application of 10 g N m^{-2} as NH_4^+, however, it took about 15 days before N_2O was evolved from an adjacent plot. This time lag can be explained by the time that is needed for the ammonium source to be nitrified (Table 3.4).

Table 3.4 Emission of nitrous oxide from flooded swamp forests amended with 10 g N m^{-2} of ammonium sulphate and KNO_3, respectively (Delaune *et al.* 1990).

Sampling date (days)	N_2O evolved (mg $m^{-2}min^{-1}$)	
	NO_3^--N source	NH_4^+-N source
0	ND	ND
2	49	ND
5	61	ND
8	14	ND
15	ND	12
21	ND	26
27	ND	26

Note: ND stands for not-detectable.

Prade & Trolldenier (1990 a & b) observed that denitrification was increased either by low K-nutrition or by infection with the common root fungus *Gaerimannomyces graminis var tritici* (Ggt). The highest denitrification rate in the rhizosphere of wheat plants was found for a combination of both K-deficiency and Ggt attack. Compared with healthy plants with high K-supply, the effect of either K-deficiency or Ggt attack approximately doubled denitrification. Based on these observations, Prade & Trolldenier (1990), conclude that laboratory experiments with young healthy plants may underestimate the rhizosphere effect on denitrification. In the field, however, roots are generally attacked to a varying degree by pathogens, causing "leakage" of readily accessible organic substrates, thereby increasing indirectly the number of organisms in the rhizosphere. This may have a considerable influence on microbial processes in the root zone, and the fraction of N_2O evolved.

Munch (1989) showed that the composition of denitrification gases (N_2O, NO and N_2) was exclusively caused by the species of the active organisms involved in the study; the nitrate concentration only influenced the denitrification rate, but not the N_2O/N_2 ratio of each organism. Similarly, Abou-Seada & Ottow (1988) concluded that, apparently, the production of NO and N_2O as products of incomplete denitrification at relatively high nitrate concentration is determined primarily by the organism in question and only in the second place by the chemical properties of the soil.

3.4.6 Effects associated with available carbon

The main roles of carbon in soils is to function as energetic source, electron donor, and provide bacterial growth structure (e.g., Chalamet 1990). According to the review article of Haider *et al.* (1990) suitable carbon sources for denitrifiers consist of aliphatic or sugar components. (Note: Aliphatics are organic compounds containing open chains of carbon compounds, contrary to the closed rings of carbon atoms of the aromatic compounds). Additional easily available C-compounds are excreted by plant roots and consist of aliphatic acids, sugars, low molecular weight polysaccharides and amino compounds. Recently, Beauchamp *et al.* (1989) have extensively discussed the role of carbon sources for denitrification.

Increasing the amounts of organic matter in soil through slurry application or manuring will greatly enhance microbial O_2 consumption, so that oxygen deficiency may occur within this localized zone even at low soil moisture contents. Additionally, it will also greatly influence the nitrate contents through mineralization or immobilization (e.g., straw with high C/N ratio). Redox and soil pH may be decreased due to high C turnover in the localized region, whereas temperature, except for some extreme cases, seems to be little affected by organic matter addition (*cf* Von Rheinbaben 1990).

Parkin (1987) found that so-called "hot spots" of high denitrification activity in soils were associated with particulate organic C material. In the 4 cores that displayed stable "hot spots", from 25 to 85% of the total denitrification activities of the intact soil cores were associated with the particulate organic matter, which represented from 0.4 to 0.08% of the total soil mass of the cores. The specific denitrification rates of the isolated hot spots were several orders of magnitude higher than the denitrification rate of inorganic soil material (Table 3.5). Similarly, Knight *et al.* (1989) showed that earthworm casts are an enhanced pedological site for denitrification under field conditions. They also noted that inorganic fertilizers enhanced this denitrification. In lysimeters studies, however, the activity of earthworms reduced the denitrifying rates of soil applied with dung (Knight *et al.* 1989). This again illustrates the care that must be used when interpreting any results in isolation. This aspect is also illustrated by the studies of Guenzi *et al.* (1978) and Mosier *et al.* (1986) who found decreased denitrification losses in planted soils due to plant competition for available nitrate and to possibly drier conditions in rooted soil. It is possible that the presence of crops affects the N_2/N_2O ratio differently than in unplanted similar soils (Haider *et al.* 1990).

Future research should be directed at improving the characterization of the C and nitrate pool available for denitrification in a dynamic field environment. The use of average values of C and N in bulk soil is an oversimplification of actual substrate levels at sites of denitrification. Any improvement in predicting denitrification will (also) depend upon increased understanding and characterization of the locations of denitrification activity with soil depth, time and spatial allocation (Grundmann *et al.* 1988). Corré *et al.* (1990) measured denitrification rates in soil layers between 15 and 90 cm depth, and found that more than 50% of the denitrification in the upper 90 cm of the soil appeared to be concentrated in the top 15 cm. Although the "deeper" soil layers may contribute to denitrification, it is likely that part of the nitrous oxide formed may not evolve to the surface.

Table 3.5 Specific rates of denitrification and CO_2 production for soil particulate organic material and inorganic soil material (Source: Parkin 1987)

Material	Weight (g)	Denitrification (10^{-6} g N_2O-N $g^{-1}d^{-1}$)	CO_2 production (10^{-6} g CO_2-C $g^{-1}d^{-1}$)
Beetle carapace	0.008	2520	45,000
Plant root	0.068	510	1,950
Plant root	0.137	21,400	3,640
Pigweed leaf	0.080	55,400	3,640
Plant root	0.398	8,100	6,780
Soil	5.6	12.7	198
Soil	3.6	n.d	98
Soil	7.6	0.5	36
Soil	5.1	18.4	n.d
Soil	7.1	6.3	n.d
Soil	7.7	14.3	n.d
Soil	9.3	4.8	n.d

Note: All incubations were conducted under aerobic conditions (about 18-kPa O_2); Particulate organic fractions were picked clean of all visible soil material and the particulate organic matter was removed from the soil fraction; n.d. stands for undetectable rates.

3.4.7 Other effects

Germon & Jacques (1990) studied the natural N_2O production and denitrification rates from 16 different parcels from the same pedological unit, showing great variation in fluxes. In this experiment, the physical soil properties were more relevant to determine the denitrification rate than chemical parameters such as carbon availability. The denitrification rate appeared to be correlated with bulk density (Germon & Jacques 1990), which can be seen as a measure for soil porosity. According to Von Rheinbaben (1990) the only means of reducing N-loss through denitrification by agricultural methods is to provide a favourable soil structure, i.e. to avoid soil compaction and plough pans in particular. Under very wet and anaerobic conditions N_2O diffusion may be reduced, forming a possible restriction to gaseous emission (Sahrawat & Keeney 1986). Alternatively, various researchers have indicated that N_2O may be consumed in wet soils (e.g., Letey *et al.* 1981; Ryden 1981; Smith *et al.* 1983; Terry *et al.* 1981).

The effects of salinity on ammonia and nitrification vary depending on the N-source, the amounts and types of salts added (Na_2SO_4, NaCl and $CaCl_2$), and the soil types used. The percentage of inhibition of nitrification ranged from 8 to 83% varying among the soils studied as well as the type of salts added; in most cases, Na_2SO_4 was less inhibitory to nitrification than the chloride salt (McClung & Frankenberger 1985). Inhibition of nitrification at ECe values of 20 dS m-1 (NaCl) were as high as 75 and 83% when $(NH_4)_2SO_4$ and urea were applied to the soils, respectively (McClung & Frankenberger

1985). N_2O evolution from a salt, brackish and fresh water swamp amounted to 31, 48, 55 mg N_2O-N $m^{-2}g^{-1}$, respectively in the study by DeLaune *et al.* (1990).

Mosier *et al.* (1991) found that N fertilization and cultivation can both decrease methane uptake and increase N_2O production in wheat growing prairie soils, thereby contributing to the increasing atmospheric concentrations of these greenhouse gases. The inverse relationship between N_2O flux and CH_4 uptake was apparent without nitrogen fertilization. The influence of N- fertilization, however, was most evident in moist soils, whereas its influence on CH_4 uptake was most evident as soils began to dry after rain (Mosier *et al.* 1991).

3.5 N_2O evolution from various terrestrial ecosystems

3.5.1 Agricultural systems

Upland crops

Reviews of N_2O evolution from agricultural soils have been prepared by Sahrawat & Keeney (1986), Freney & Simpson (1983) and Bouwman (1990) amongst others. Recently, Eichner (1990) prepared a review of direct measurements of fertilizer derived N_2O emissions from 104 fields in temperate regions (excluding rice), receiving less than 250 kg N ha^{-1}, as reported in the agricultural and scientific literature for the period 1979-1987. This review was used to estimate worldwide emissions of fertilizer derived N_2O emissions from soils. The review of Eichner (1990) did not reveal any trend between emissions and a particular soil type or agricultural system (keeping in mind that the latter are often poorly described in the N_2O emissions literature). Using the fraction of fertilizer evolved as N_2O for five main N-fertilizers (Table 3.6) and fertilizer use statistics, Eichner (1990) estimated that from 0.1 to 1.0 Tg N_2O-N was released during the respective "sampling periods", with a median of 0.2 Tg N_2O-N. If emissions after the "sampling period", the amounts of fertilizers lost in drainage water and groundwater are taken into account the estimated range becomes 0.2 to 2.1 Tg N_2O-N yr^{-1} *anno* 1984. Assuming a global use of 100 Tg N-fertilizer by the year 2000, global fertilizer-N derived N_2O emissions to the atmosphere should not exceed 3 Tg N_2O-N in the year 2000 (Eichner *op cit.*). Different values have been proposed by other researchers, partly as a result of different assumptions pertaining to the N-fertilizer consumption rates and the fraction of N-fertilizer released as N_2O (Table 3.7). Bolle *et al.* (1986), for instance, assumed the average N_2O emission from nitrate-fertilizers, ammonia and urea, and anhydrous ammonia to be 0.04%, 0.15-0.19% and 5%, respectively. It should be noted that few studies have attempted to differentiate fertilizer induced emissions of N_2O resulting from nitrification from those resulting from denitrification. The N_2O efflux during nitrification of N-fertilizers, although variable, is generally less than 1 % (*cf* Byrnes *et al.* 1990). During the seminar on "Nitrogen in organic wastes applied to soils" participants wondered about the magnitude of N_2O production during nitrification of slurry and the loss of ammonia from plants. It appeared that more research is required before the magnitude of these two gaseous loss mechanisms can be elucidated (*cf* Hansen & Henriksen 1989). Aulakh *et al.* (1984) caution against the use of any single ratio of N_2O to N_2 in the estimation of N_2O liberated from agricultural soils, since these can vary widely with time.

Table 3.6 Percentage of fertilizer evolved N_2O (After Eichner 1990).

Fertilizer type	No. of experiments	Range (%)	Median (%)	Average (%)
Anhydrous ammonia	9	0.86 - 6.84	1.63	2.70
Green manure	17	0.02 - 0.90	0.12	0.25
Ammonium nitrate	8	0.04 - 1.71	.12/.40	0.44
K-, Ca- and Na- nitrate	13	0.001- 0.50	0.03	0.07
Urea	6	0.07 - 0.18	0.11	0.11

Note: Irrespective of length of sampling period, soil system, location and other variables; paddies not included.

The solubility of N_2O is higher in acidic than in alkaline solutions. Minami & Ohsawa (1990) reported losses of N_2O from drainage water from agricultural land. This N_2O may originate from: a) nitrification in the drainage water, b) denitrification in the sediments, and c) N_2O dissolved in the drainage water. Bowden & Borman (1986) reported a N_2O efflux from drainage water originating from a clear-cut hardwood forest watershed. It is possible that the cutting of trees reduces the demand for nitrogen and water, while at the same time exposing the soil to more insolation. The higher moisture, nitrogen and temperature would favour microbial mineralisation so that more NH_4^+ may be produced and be subjected to nitrifier-denitrifiers.

Table 3.7 Estimates of annual emissions from fertilizer derived N_2O or agricultural lands.

Author	Emission range ($Tg\ N_2O\text{-}N\ yr^{-1}$)
Crutzen (1983, cited by Bolle *et al.* 1986)	< 3
Seiler (1986; cited by Bolle *et al.* 1986)	0.6 - 2.3
McElroy & Woofsy (1985)	0.2 - 0.6
Bouwman (1990)	2.3 - 3.7
Eichner (1990)	0.1 - 1.0*

Note: The data of Eichner (1990) refer to "fertilizer induced" emissions only.

Wetland rice

The root rhizosphere and oxidized surface layer of flooded rice soils are zones of active nitrification-denitrification, and hence a possible source of N_2O production. However, ammonium volatilization appears to be a much greater source of N-loss from paddy fields than nitrification-denitrification (Buresh *et al.* 1991). Ammoniacal-N can be converted to nitrate by nitrification in floodwater and oxidized soil zones. This NO_3^- can then move into the reduced soil zones where it is readily denitrified to N_2O and N_2 (e.g., Reddy & Patrick 1986). Alternatively, translocation of oxygen through the aerenchyma of vascular plants into flooded soil would tend to increase the area prone to nitrate formation. This nitrate in turn could move into the reduced zone where it can be denitrified (DeLaune *et al.* 1990).

Buresh *et al.* (1991) observed greater flux of (N_2 + N_2O)-^{15}N with chambers placed over rather than between rice plants, which indicated that quantification of ^{15}N gases evolved must take into account the transport of gases through rice plants. Similarly, Reddy *et al.* (1987) and Mosier *et al.* (1990b) demonstrated that N gases formed in flooded soil by denitrification can be transported to the atmosphere through rice plants. Freney *et al.* (1990) studied the distribution of gaseous N_2, between the atmosphere, floodwater and pore water of the soil in a flooded rice field after addition of ^{15}N-labelled urea into the floodwater. Of the urea added, 0.02% was lost as N_2O to the atmosphere, 0.9% as NH_3, and 3.6% as N_2 during the 7 days of the measurement period.

Alternating aerobic-anaerobic cycles in paddy soils are likely to promote N_2O emissions to the atmosphere, whereas under continuously flooded conditions most of the N_2O formed will be reduced to N_2. This may be exemplified by the study of Delaune *et al.* (1990) in which the evolution of N_2O from Louisiana Gulf wetlands increased as the length of the anaerobic-aerobic cycle was increased from 7-7 to 14-14 days. Although it is generally accepted that some oxygen intensifies the emission of nitrous oxide in the course of denitrification (Firestone *et al.* 1979), it should be noted that different types of denitrifying microorganisms have their maximum N_2O production at an organism-specific O_2 concentration (Abou-Seada & Ottow 1985). Alternatively, changing rice management practices to reduce methane emissions from paddies might lead to increased emissions of trace gases such as N_2O (*cf* IGBP 1990).

Leguminous crops

Bouwman (1990) observed that nitrogen-fixing leguminous plants merit attention, particularly in savannas and tropical forests. N_2O emissions from leguminous crops range from 0.34 to 4.6 kg N_2O-N ha^{-1} yr^{-1}. These figures are based on a review by Eichner (1990) and include natural emissions, emissions associated with cultivation and emissions from N-fixed by the legume crop. Estimated N_2O emissions from fields of cultivated leguminous crops are in the range of 23 to 315 Gg N_2O-N per year according to Eichner (1990).

3.5.2 Natural ecosystems

N_2O emissions from fertilized crop systems are not necessarily greater than for a fertilized non-cropped system (Eichner 1990). Bouwman *et al.* (1990) estimate global N_2O emission from natural terrestrial ecosystems to be 7 ± 3 Tg N_2O-N yr^{-1}. Bowden (1986) reviewed the N losses resulting from denitrification and N_2O emission from terrestrial, non-agricultural ecosystems. The measured N_2O emissions ranged from 0-20 kg N ha^{-1} yr^{-1} with most measurement being lower than 1 to 2 kg N ha^{-1} yr^{-1}. With respect to NO_x, the review of Bowden (1986) arrived at annual emissions of 1 to 2 kg N ha^{-1} yr^{-1}, with NO apparently being the more important than NO_2 as a component of NO_x. Table 3.8 presents ranges for global emissions of volatile N-compounds from undisturbed terrestrial ecosystems of the world as prepared by Bowden (1986).

Due to the anaerobic nature of wetlands and paddies the formation of NO and N_2O is quite small (Seiler & Conrad 1987). Similarly, Delaune *et al.* (1990) reported low N_2O emissions from Louisiana Gulf Coast marshes. The latter was mainly attributed to the low natural nitrate content. Run-off, containing nitrate from agricultural areas, thus could greatly enhance the emissions from these areas.

Table 3.8 Ranges for global emissions of volatile N-compounds from selected undisturbed terrestrial ecosystems of the world (After Bowden 1986 p. 268).

Ecosystem	Area (10^9 ha)	Global emission rate (Tg N yr^{-1})				
		NH_3	$(N_2O + N_2)$	N_2O	NO_x	Total
Temp. hardwood	1.55	tr	tr-15.5	tr-1.5	1.5	1.5-15.5
Temperate conifer	0.50	tr	tr	tr-1.0	1.0	1.0-2.0
Tropical forests	2.45	nd	7.1	7.1	nd	7.4-9.8
Prairie/grassland	2.40	0-24	tr	tr-4.8	3-24	4.8-48.0
Arid lands/desert	4.20	4.2	0-80	nd	nd	4.2-84.0
Tundra/Boreal	2.00	0	tr	tr	nd	tr
Wetlands/Marsh	0.20	nd	6-130	tr-20	nd	6.0-130
Total	13.30^x	4-28	13-323	7-16	5-26	20-280

Note: "tr" indicates global emission rates < 10 12 Tg N yr^{-1}; "nd" indicates no data were available; "x" does not include cultivated land (1.4 10^9 ha) or lakes (0.12 10^9 ha).

3.6 Modelling of gaseous N-losses

3.6.1 General

The foregoing Sections have shown that many factors influence the emission of gaseous-N from soils in various ways. The understanding of these relationships can be increased by building models. Modelling is an iterative process, which involves numerous repetitions of the following steps (Hutson & Wagenet 1991):

a) Site evaluation
b) Identification of important processes
c) Model configuration to include these main processes
d) Preparation of input data files, using available information or initial estimates
e) Measurement of missing values
f) Tests model runs
g) Evaluation of model output
h) Adjustment of input parameters and repetition of simulation procedure.

Models can be used to test hypotheses concerning the various chemical, physical and biological processes that underlie intricate processes such as crop growth and production (e.g., Van Keulen & Wolf 1986), the evolution of methane from paddy fields (e.g., Braatz & Hogan 1991), the turnover of organic matter in soil (e.g., Jenkinson 1990), and losses of soil-N from terrestrial ecosystems. If there is a good fit between model results and *independently* obtained measurement results, models may be used to test hypotheses with confidence (e.g., Hutson & Wagenet 1991; Jenkinson 1990).

Volume 7 of the Journal Soil Use and Management (1991) was devoted to the differing current approaches to modelling nitrate leaching. Rolston *et al.* (1984) simulated denitrification losses from soils supplied with nitrogen fertilizer. A theoretical model of the fate of nitrogen applied to paddy fields, using a NH_4-^{15}N tracer technique and an estimation of the rate of N uptake by rice plants, has recently been elaborated by Yamamuro (1991). Jayaweera & Mikkelsen (1990) discuss a computer model of ammonia volatilization in flooded soil systems. Groot *et al.* (1991) present the results of a workshop held to compare various N-simulation models, with special reference to the turnover of nitrogen in soil-crop systems. It would seem few attempts of modelling global emissions of N_2O from soils seem to have been undertaken so far (see Section 6.2).

Basically, models can be grouped into empirical, mechanistic/ deterministic, and stochastic models, as well as combination of several components of these into one single model. In the following sections selected examples of these different approaches in modelling N-losses are given.

3.6.2 Empirical models

Site level

Empirical models are generally based on statistical analyses so that there is no understanding of the processes (black box) underlying the relationship. With respect to denitrification regression models often have poor overall predictive ability; this may be seen as an indication of their limited suitability to adequately represent the high degree of spatial variability of denitrification rate *in situ* (e.g., Parkin & Robinson 1989). The study of Parsons *et al.* (1991) shows that regression equations derived from the mean value data are better predictors of the observed mean denitrification rate (r^2 of 74 to 91%) than the regression equations which were obtained using the entire set of measurements (r^2 of 11 to 27%). According to Parsons *et al.* (1991) this suggests that the measured characteristics of the bulk soils (CO_2, moisture content, NO_3^-, temperature, most probable number counts of bacteria (MPN), denitrifying enzyme activity (DEA)) are better indicators of long term spatial variability than of small-scale spatial variability. The inclusion of MPN and DEA in the model did not substantially improve the predictive power of the regression equations, and explained little of the total variation in denitrification rate.

Global level

Much attention is being paid to localized environmental effects, such as the occurrence of so-called hot spots, on N_2O emissions from soil. Bouwman *et al.* (1992) argue that the importance of these high-frequency, "small scale" events has not yet been established in the framework of global assessments of N_2O emissions, and stressed the need for integrating their effects. According to Eichner (1990), determination of the reaction source is not considered important for regional and global assessments of N_2O emissions. Bouwman *et al.* (1992), however, considered whether N_2O essentially evolves from respiratory denitirification or nitrification in their global modelling study.

Bouwman (1990b) made an analysis of the conditions controlling the N_2O emissions using global databases of vegetation/land use, soil type, soil moisture regime and temperature. They observed that the scalars on the basis of which the analysis was made are tentative, and the flux classes highly uncertain. The study reveals that extrapolation of single flux estimates to global areas can not give reliable results on a regional or global scale. Stratification of ecosystems, on the basis of soil, vegetation and climatic conditions, should provide more insight in the variation within source regions of N_2O (Bouwman 1990b).

In a follow up study Bouwman *et al.* (1992), used global data bases on climate, soils and vegetation in combination with current N_2O emission data from selected natural ecosystems. The main regulating factors of nitrous oxide emission considered in this empirical model are the effect of temperature on the decomposition of organic matter, and the effect of soil water availability and oxygen availability. The latter are considered using monthly time steps. Soil fertility and C plus N availability, the other regulating factors in the model, are assessed as being constant over the year. Using an expert-judgement derived scheme of scalars, Bouwman *et al.* (1992) estimated the global pre-agricultural N_2O emission at 7 Tg N_2O-N yr^{-1}, with a confidence interval (range of ± standard deviation) of 3.1 to 13.4 Tg yr^{-1}. According to this study, the tropical region between 30°N and 30°S contributes to 5.6 Tg yr^{-1} (range: 2.8 - 9.4 Tg yr^{-1}), while emission for the zone >30°N and >30°S is 1.4 Tg N_2O-N yr^{-1} (range: 0.3 - 4.1 Tg yr^{-1}). The prominence of tropical and subtropical forests for global nitrous oxide emissions is also apparent from the data presented by Lashof & Tirpak (1990; 6 ± 3 Tg N_2O-N yr^{-1}). According to Bouwman *et al.* (1992) the role of wetlands in the global N_2O budget remains uncertain. Burning of wetlands, for instance, may cause large emissions of N_2O at the local level (Levine *et al.* 1990). Alternatively, in some wetland soils nitrification may temporarily be inhibited due to high groundwater tables which may retard or preclude denitrification (see Bouwman *et al.* 1992 and Section 3.4.5).

3.6.3 Deterministic simulation

Betlach & Tiedje (1981) and Cho and Mills (1979) proposed denitrification models for homogeneous soil systems without transport processes. In both, the N-reduction is modelled with Michaelis-Menten kinetics. These models have neglected processes that influence denitrification at the aggregate level, such as the formation of anaerobic microsites, sequential reduction of nitrate to N_2, "immobile" zones of water, transient solute diffusion between aerobic and anaerobic regions, and changes in C-availability and enzyme activity with time; McConnaughey & Bouldin (1985a) proposed a model that includes these processes. The qualitative behaviour of gaseous N evolution as a function of nitrate levels, gaseous oxygen concentration, and depth of saturation predicted by the model agreed with data presented in the literature (McConnaughey & Bouldin 1985b).

Arah & Smith (1989) presented a model which calculates steady-state denitrification as a function of so-called "more readily" measured soil parameters. These were soil moisture characteristics, the probability distribution of aggregate size and oxygen reduction potential, the nitrate concentration and the moisture tension. A possible use of the model would be to predict the fraction of N_2O formed/emitted during the denitrification process.

Few models consider microbial growth. Leffelaar & Wessel (1988), for instance, proposed a denitrification model in which this aspect is included. Yet this model apparently does not consider transport processes. Leffelaar & Wessel (1990) simulate microbial growth in a soil layer, considered spatially uniform in all phases in which no transport processes occurred. Aspects of microbial growth modelled included the reductive pathway NO_3^- --> NO_2^- --> N_2O --> N_2 with reference growth and maintenance of biomass at the expense of glucose carbon, and the concomitant reduction of nitrate to molecular nitrogen, via nitrite and nitrate. The state variables included in the model are bacteria, glucose carbon, CO_2, O_2, NO_3^--N, NO_2^--N, N_2O-N, N_2-N, assimilated N, mineralised carbon and nitrogen from dead biomass, and immobilized carbon and nitrogen in resistant organic matter. The simulation model proved to give a reasonable description of the denitrification process in laboratory incubation vessels. A major difficulty, however, was that no coherent data sets exist to parametrize the model (Leffelaar & Wessel 1988). This "hunger for data" versus actual availability of data may be seen as a common problem encountered in deterministic modelling (e.g., Hutson & Wagenet 1991). Consequently, more attention should be paid to the gathering/compiling of coherent and readily available data sets for simulation purposes. The foregoing also suggests there is only limited scope, at present, to elaborate deterministic models of N_2O production for applications at regional or global level (e.g., Van Breemen & Feijtel 1990).

3.6.4 Stochastic models

Parkin & Robinson (1989; *cf* Rolston 1990) proposed a stochastic model of denitrification dependent only upon two driving variables, potential denitrification enzyme activity and carbon dioxide evolution. The stochastic nature of the denitrification enzyme activity and carbon dioxide evolution were described by measured probability density functions for a field site, which formed the basis for a Monte Carlo simulation model to calculate a probability density function for denitrification rate.

Alternatively, White & Mageson (1991) showed that a stochastic transfer function model (TFM) based on the probability function nitrate travel times worked satisfactorily when the nitrate originates from a pulse input of soluble fertilizer to the soil surface. However, a TFM based on the probability density function of a surface applied tracer proved less satisfactory for simulating losses of indigenous soil nitrate. Among the problems encountered by White & Magneson (1991) were the difficulty of estimating mean nitrate content in field soils because of its high spatial variability, accounting for denitrification during leaching, and the uncertain reproducibility of the soils transport characteristics.

3.7 Conclusions

This review shows that many biological, environmental as well as management factors determine the production, transfer and subsequent emission of N_2O and NO_x from soils. Although much research has been carried out on the possible interrelationships between the respective controlling factors and processes, models of N_2O evolution for particular ecosystems still remain in the early stages of development. Elaborate empirical models of N_2O emissions from natural terrestrial ecosystems at the global level have just recently been initiated. Although the soil characteristics of the type recorded on low resolution soil maps such as produced by FAO/Unesco (1971-1981) do not appear to be the main determinants of gaseous N_2O emissions from terrestrial ecosystems at the global level, a refined 1/2 x 1/2 degree grid global soil database would be very useful to have available in the context of these modelling exercises (see Bouwman *et al.* 1992). Ancillary databases on climate, land use/vegetation cover, and fertilizer use (type, application), however, will probably have the "most" weight in determining the ultimate emissions. Proposals as to the preliminary structure and soil attributes to be included in the WISE data base are made in Chapter 6.

Although extrapolation of field measured N_2O fluxes from the local to the global scale using book-keeping methods appear straight forward, the results will be fraught with uncertainty (e.g., Bouwman 1990a). An important task seems to be the elaboration of procedures that account for "site" temporal and spatial variability so that local flux measurements can be scaled up to the global level. Stratification of ecosystems would provide a better insight into the variation in source regions of N_2O (Bouwman 1990b), thereby providing a more solid basis for applying book-keeping methods.

There is a clear need to establish a network of measurement stations across the various continents, each site covering the representative range of crops, soil types and management practices typical of the region (*cf* IGBP 1990). At each of these site, time series of N_2O and NO_x, as well as other "greenhouse" gases, should be supplemented with accurate descriptions of the prevailing agro-environmental conditions. This increased dataset may provide the knowledge required to develop process based models that describe the production, transfer and evolution of N_2O from well defined ecosystems.

3.8 References

Abbeel, R. van den, A. Claes & K. Vlassak 1989. Gaseous nitrogen losses from slurry manured land. In: *Nitrogen in organic wastes applied to soils* (eds A. Hansen & K. Henriksen). Academic Press, London. p. 213-244.

Abou-Seada, M.N.I. & J.C.G. Ottow 1985. Effect of increasing oxygen concentration on total denitrification and nitrous oxide release from soil by different bacteria. *Biol. Fertil. Soils 1, 31-38.*

Abou-Seada, M.N.I. & J.C.G. Ottow 1988. Effect of soil properties on the quantity and quality of denitrification with different bacteria (In German with English summary). *Z. Pflanzenernähr. Bodenk. 151, 109-115.*

Alexander, M. 1977. *Introduction to soil microbiology* (2nd Edition). John Wiley and Sons,New York.

Anderson, I.C. & J.S. Levine 1986. Relative rates of nitric oxide and nitrous oxide production by nitrifiers, denitrifiers and nitrate respires. *Appl. Environ. Microbiology 51, 938-945.*

Arah, J.R.M. & K.A. Smith 1989. Steady-state denitrification in aggregated soils: a mathematical model. *Journal of Soil Science 40, 139-149.*

Aulakh, M.S., D.A. Rennie & E.A.Paul 1984. Gaseous nitrogen losses from soils under zero-till as compared with conventional-till management systems. *J. Env. Q. 13, 130-136.*

Bailey, L.D. 1976. Effect of temperature and roots on denitrification in a soil. *Can. J. Soil Sci. 56, 79-87*

Bailey, L.D. & E.G. Beauchamp 1973. Effects of temperature on NO_3^- and NO_2^- reduction, nitrogenous gas production, and redox potential in a saturated soil. *Can. J. Soil Sci. 53, 213-218.*

Beauchamp, E.A. & A.G. Seech 1990. Denitrification with dry- and wet-sieved soil aggregates. *Mitt. DBG 60, 83-88.*

Beauchamp, E., J.T. Trevors & J.W. Paul 1989. Carbon sources for denitrification. In: *Advances in Soil Science*, Volume 10 (ed. B.A. Stewart). Springer Verlag, New York. pp. 113-142.

Benckiser, G., K. Haider & D. Sauerbeck 1986. Field measurements of gaseous nitrogen losses from an Alfisol planted with sugar beets (in English). *Zeitschrift für Pflanzenernährung und Bodenkunde 149, 250-261.*

Benckiser, G., G. Gaus, K.M. Syring, K. Haider & D. Sauerbeck 1987. Denitrification losses for an Inceptisol treated with mineral fertilizer or sewage sludge. *Z. Pflanzenernähr. Bodenk. 150, 241-248.*

Betlach, R.M. & J.M. Tiedje 1981. Kinetic explanation for accumulation of nitrite, nitric oxide, and nitrous oxide during bacterial denitrification. *Appl. Environ. Microbiol 42, 1074-1084.*

Blackmer, A.M., J.M. Bremner & E.L. Schmidt 1980. Production of nitrous oxide by ammonia-oxidizing chemoautotrophic microorganisms in soil. *Appl. Environ. Microbiol. 40, 1060-1066.*

Blackmer, A.M., S.G. Robbins & J.M. Bremner 1982. Diurnal variability in rate of emission of nitrous oxide from soils. *Soil Sci. Soc. Am. J. 46, 937-942.*

Bleakey , B.H. & J.M. Tiedje 1982. Nitrous oxide production by organisms other than nitrifiers or denitrifiers. *Applied and Environmental Microbiology 44(6), 1342-1348.*

Bollag, J.M. & G. Tung 1972. Nitrous oxide release by soil fungi. *Soil Biol. Biochem. 4, 271-276.*

Bollag, J.M., S. Drzymal & L.T. Kardos 1973. Biological versus chemical nitrite decomposition in soil. *Soil Sci. 116, 44-50.*

Bolin, B., J. Jäger & B.R. Döös 1986. The Greenhouse effect, climatic change, and ecosystems. A synthesis of present knowledge. In: *The greenhouse effect, climatic change and ecosystems* (eds. B. Bolin, B.R. Döös & J. Jäger). SCOPE 29, John Wiley & Sons. pp. 1-32.

Bolle, H.J., W. Seiler & B. Bolin 1986. Other greenhouse gases and aerosols: assessing their role for atmospheric radiative transfer. In: *The greenhouse effect climatic change and ecosystems* (eds B. Bolin, B.R. Döös, B.A. Warrick and D. Jager). SCOPE 29, John Wiley & Sons, New York. pp. 157-203.

Bouma, J. & A.K. Bregt (eds) 1989. *Land qualities in space and time*. Pudoc, Wageningen.

Bouwman, A.F. 1990a. *Soils and the greenhouse effect*. John Wiley & Sons, Chichester.

Bouwman, A.F. 1990b. Analysis of global nitorus oxide emissions from terrestrial, natural and agro-ecosystems. *Transactions 14th International Congress of Soil Science, Kyoto, II, 261-266.*

Bouwman, A.F., I. Fung, E. Matthews & J. John 1992. Global analysis of the potential for N_2O production in natural soils. (Submitted to *Global Geochemical Cycles*)

Bowden, W.A. 1986. Gaseous nitrogen emissions from undisturbed terrestrial ecosystems: An assessment of their impacts on local and global nitrogen budgets. *Biogeochemistry 2, 249-279.*

Bowden, W.B. & F.H. Boorman 1986. Transport of nitrous oxide in soil water after forest clear cutting. *Science 233, 867-869.*

Braatz, B.V. & K.B. Hogan 1991. *Sustainable rice productivity and methane reduction research plan*. US. Environ. Prot. Agency. Office of Air Pollution and Radiation. Washington DC.

Brams, E.A., G.L. Hutchinson, W.P. Anthony & G.P. Livingston 1990. Seasonal nitrous oxide emissions from an intensively managed, humid, subtropical grass pasture. In: *Soils and the greenhouse effect* (ed. A.F. Bouwman). John Wiley & Sons, Chichester. p. 481-487.

Bremner, J.M. & A.M. Blackmer 1978. Nitrous oxide: emission from soils during nitrification of fertilizer nitrogen. *Science 199, 295-296.*

Bremner, J.M., S.C. Robbins and A.M. Blackmer 1980. Seasonal variability in emissions of nitrous oxide from soil. *Geophys. Res. Lett. 7, 641-644.*

Bremner, J.M. & A.M. Blackmer 1981. Terrestrial nitrification as a source of atmospheric nitrous oxide. In: *Denitrification, nitrification and atmospheric nitrous oxide* (eds C.C. Delwiche). Wiley & Sons, New York. p. 151-170.

Buresh, R.J., S.K. de Datta, M.I. Samson, S. Phongpan, P. Snitwongse, A.M. Fagi & R. Tejasarwana 1991. Dinitrogen and nitrous oxide flux from urea basally applied to puddled rice soils. *Soil. Sci. Soc. Am. J. 55, 268-273.*

Byrnes, B.H., C.B. Christianson, L.S. Holt & E.R. Austin 1990. Nitrous oxide emissions from the nitrification of nitrogen fertilization. In: *Soils and the greenhouse effect* (ed. A.F. Bouwman). John Wiley & Sons, Chichester. p. 489-495.

Cady, F.B. & W.V. Bartholomew 1960. Sequential products of anaerobic denitrification in Norfolk soils. *Soil Sci. Soc. Am. Proc. 24, 477-482.*

Cate Jr., R.. & D.R. Keeney 1987. Nitrous oxide production throughout the year from fertilized and manured maize. *J. Environmental Quality 16, 443-447.*

Cervelli, S. & D.E. Rolston 1983. Influence of atrazine on denitrification in soil columns. *J. Env. Qual. 12, 482-486.*

Chadwick, M.J. & J.C.I. Kuylenstierna 1990. *The relative sensitivity of ecosystems in Europe to acidic depositions*. A preliminary assessment of the sensitivity of aquatic and terrestrial ecosystems. Stockholm Environmental Institute, Stockholm, Sweden.

Chalamet, A. 1990. Source and sink mechanisms related to denitrification measurement. *Mitt. DGB 60, 65-72*

Chalamet, A. & J. Chauchard 1976. Sorption des oxides d'azote sur les sols. Etude par sorption concurentielle de l'influence de l' humidité sur la retention de N_2O. *Ann. Chem. 6, 303-308.*

Chalamet, A. & R. Bardin 1977. Action des ions ferreux sur la réduction de l'acide nitreux dans les soils hydromorphes. *Soil Biol. Biochem. 9, 281-285.*

Chalk, P.M. & C.J. Smith 1983. Chemodenitrification. In: *Gaseous loss of nitrogen from plant-soil systems*. Developments in plant and soil science. Vol. 9. Martinus Nijhoff, The Hague. p. 65-89.

Cho, C.M. & J.G. Mills 1979. Kinetics formulation of the denitrification process in soil. *Can. J. Soil Sci. 52, 249-257.*

Christensen, S. 1990. Effects of plants on denitrification. *Mitteilungen der Deutschen Bodenkundlichen Gesellschaft 60, 95-100.*

Christensen, S. & J.M. Tiedje 1990. Brief and vigorous N_2O production by soil at spring thaw. *Journal of Soil Science 41, 1-4.*

Christianson, C.B. & C.M. Cho 1983. Chemical denitrification in frozen soils. *Soil Sci. Soc. Am. J. 47, 38-42.*

Cofer III, W.R., J.S. Levine, E.L. Winstead & B.J. Stock 1991. New estimates of nitrous oxide emissions from biomass burning. *Nature 349, 689-691.*

Colbourn, P. & I.W. Harper 1987. Denitrification in drained and undrained arable clay soils. *Journal of Soil Science 38, 531-539.*

Correa, E.F. and J.C. Germon 1991. Dissimilative nitrate reduction to ammonium in different soils in waterlogged conditions. In: *Diversity of environmental biogeochemistry* (ed. J. Berthelin), Elsevier, Amsterdam. pp. 295-308.

Corré, W.J., W. Dijkman & W.M. Kieskamp 1990. Denitrification in the top soil of production grassland. *Mitt. DBG 60, 183-188.*

Crutzen, P.J. 1987. The role of the tropics in atmospheric chemistry. In: *The geophysiology of Amazonia: Vegetation and climate interactions* (ed. R.E. Dickinson), John Wiley & Sons, New York.

Davidson, E.A. & M.K. Firestone 1988. Measurement of nitrous oxide dissolved in soil solution. *Soil Sci. Soc. Am. J. 52, 1201-1203.*

Davidson, E.A. & W.T. Swank 1990. Nitrous oxide dissolved in soil solution - An insignificant pathway of nitrogen loss from a southern hardwood forest. *Water Resources Research 26, 1687-1690.*

DeLaune, R.D., W.H. Patrick Jr., C.W. Lindau & C.J.Smith 1990. Nitrous oxide and methane emission from Gulf Coast wetlands. In: *Soils and the greenhouse effect* (ed. A.F.Bouwman). John Wiley & Sons, Chichester. p. 497-502.

Delwiche, C.C. (ed.) 1981. *Denitrification, nitrification, and atmospheric nitrous oxide*. John Wiley & Sons, New York.

Denmead, O.T., J.R. Freeney & J.R. Simpson 1979. Nitrous oxide emissions during denitrification in a flooded field. *Soil Sci. Soc. Amer. J. 43, 726-728.*

Eaton, L.J. & D.G. Patriquin 1989. Denitrification in lowland blueberry soils. *Can. J. Soil Sci. 69, 302-312.*

Eggington, G.M. & K.A. Smith 1986a. Nitrous oxide emission from a grassland soil fertilized with slurry and calcium nitrate. *Journal of Soil Science 37, 59-67.*

Eggington, G.M. & K.A. Smith 1986b. Losses of nitrogen by denitrification from a grassland soil fertilized with cattle slurry and calcium nitrate. *Journal of Soil Science 37, 69-80.*

Eichner, M.J. 1990. Nitrous oxide emissions from fertilised soils: Summary of available data. *J. Environ. Qual. 19, 272-280.*

Elliot, E.T. 1986. Aggregate structure and carbon, nitrogen and phosphorus in native and cultivated soils. *Soil Sci. Soc. Am. J. 50, 627-683.*

FAO/Unesco 1971-1981. Soil Map of the World (1:5 M scale). Volumes I to 10. Unesco, Paris.

Farquhar, G.D., R. Wetselaar & B. Weir 1983. Gaseous nitrogen losses from plants. In: *Gaseous loss of nitrogen from plant-soil systems* (eds J.R. Freney & J.R. Simpson). Martinus Nijhoff, The Hague. pp. 159-194.

Firestone, M.K. 1982. Biological denitrification. In: Nitrogen in agricultural soils (ed. F.J. Stevensson). Agronomy Special Publication 22, American Society of Agronomy, Madison, WI. pp. 289-326.

Firestone, M.K. 1984. Biological denitrification. In: *Nitrogen in agricultural soils* (ed. F.J. Stevensson). Agron. Monograph 22, ASA/CSSA/SSSA, Madison, WI.

Firestone, M.K. & E.A. Davidson 1989. Microbiological basis of NO and NO_2 production and consumption in soil. In: *Exchange of trace gases between terrestrial ecosystems and the atmosphere* (eds. M.O. Andreae & D.S. Schimel). Dahlem Workshop Report, John Wiley and Sons, Chichester. pp. 7-21.

Firestone, M.K., M.S. Smith, R.B. Firestone & J.M. Tiedje 1979. The influence of nitrate, nitrite and oxygen on the composition of the gaseous products of denitrification. *Soil Sci. Soc. Am. J. 43, 1140-1144.*

Focht, D.D. 1974. The effect of temperature, pH and aeration on the production of nitrous oxide and gaseous nitrogen - a zero order kinetic model. *Soil Science 118, 173-179.*

Focht, D.D. & W. Verstraete 1977. Biochemical ecology of nitrification and denitrification. In: *Advances in microbial ecology*, Vol. 1 (ed M. Alexander). Plenum Press, New York. pp. 135-214.

Folorunso, O.A. & D.E. Rolston 1984. Spatial variability of field-measured denitrification of gas fluxes. *Soil Sci. Soc. Am. J. 48, 1214-1219.*

Folorunso, O.A. & D.E. Rolston 1985. Spatial and spectral relationships between field-measured denitrification gas fluxes and soil properties. *Soil Sci. Soc. Am. J. 49, 1087-1093.*

Freney, J.R. & J.R.Simpson (eds) 1983. Gaseous loss of nitrogen from plant-soil systems. Martinus Nijhoff, The Hague.

Freney, J.R., A.R. Mosier & S.L. Chapman 1990. Labelled dinitrogen emission from flooded rice fertilized with ^{15}N-urea. *Mitt. DBG 60, 109-114.*

Germon, J.C. & D. Jacques 1990.Denitrifying activity measurement by soil core method. Effect of depth and characterization of NO_2/N_2 ratio in different soils. *Mitt. DBG 60, 51-58.*

Goodroad, L.L. & D.R. Keeney 1984a. Nitrous oxide production in aerobic soils under varying pH, temperature and water content. *Soil Biol. Biochem. 16, 39-44.*

Goodroad, L.L. & D.R.Keeney 1984b. Nitrous oxide emission from forest, marsh and prairie ecosystems. *J. Environ. Qual. 13, 448-452.*

Griffiths, B.S. 1989. The effect of protozoan grazing on nitrification - implication for the application of organic wastes to soils. In: *Nitrogen in inorganic wastes applied to soils* (eds. J.A.A. Hansen & K. Henriksen). Academic Press, London.

Grofmann, P.M. & J.M. Tiedje 1989. Denitrification in northern temperate forest soils: Relationships between denitrification and environmental factors at the landscape scale. *Soil Biology and Biochemistry 21, 621-626.*

Groot, J.J.R., P. de Willigen & E.J. Verberne (eds) 1991. *Nitrogen turnover in the soil-crop system*. Developments in Plant & Soil Sciences No. 44, Kluwer Academic Publ., Dordrecht.

Grundmann, G.L., D.E. Rolston & R.G. Kachanoski 1988. Field soil properties influencing the variability of denitrification gas fluxes. *Soil Sci. Soc. Am. J. 52, 1351-1355.*

Guenzi *et al*. 1978. J. Env. Qual. 7, 196-202.

Haider, K., O. Heinemeyer & A.R. Mosier 1990. Direct and indirect effects of plants on denitrification. *Mitt. DBG 60, 101-108.*

Hansen, J.A.A. & K. Henriksen (eds) 1989. *Nitrogen in inorganic wastes applied to soils*. Academic Press, London.

Hauck, R.D. 1986. Field measurements of denitrification - an overview. In: *Field measurement of dinitrogen fixation and denitrification* (eds R.D. Hauck & R.W. Weaver). Special Publication SSSA, Madison W.I.. pp. 59-72.

Hernandez, D. & J.J. Rowe 1987. Oxygen regulation of nitrate uptake in denitrifying *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*. *Appl. Environ. Microbiol. 53, 745-750.*

Hutson, J.L. & R.J. Wagenet 1991. Simulating nitrogen dynamics in soils using a deterministic model. *Soil Use and Management 7, 74-78.*

IGBP 1990. *Global Change: The initial core projects*. Report No. 12, International Geosphere and Biosphere Programme.

Ingraham, J.L. 1981. Microbiology and genetics of denitrifiers. In: *Denitrification, nitrification, and atmospheric nitrous oxide* (ed. C.C. Delwiche). John Wiley & Sons, New York. p. 45-65.

IPCC 1992. *IPCC Supplement: Full scientific report. Working group 1: Scientific assessment of climate change.* Intergovernmental panel on climate change. WMO/UNEP.

Jayaweera, G.R. & D.S. Mikkelsen 1990. Ammonia volatilization from flooded soil systems: A computer model. I. Theoretical aspects. *Soil. Sci. Soc. Am. J. 54, 1447-1455.*

Jenkinson, D.S. 1990. The turnover of organic carbon and nitrogen in soil. *Phil. Trans. R. Soc. London B. 329, 361-368.*

Johansson, C. & I.E. Galbally 1984. Production of nitric oxide in loam under aerobic and anaerobic conditions. *Appl. Environ. Microbiol. 47, 1284-1289.*

Keeney, D.R. 1986. Critique of the acetylene blockage technique for field measurement of denitrification. In: *Field measurement of dinitrogen fixation and denitrification* (eds R.D. Hauck & R.W. Weaver). Special Publication No. 18, Soil Sci. Soc. Am., Madison, WI. pp. 103-115.

Keeney, D.R., I.R. Fillery, & G.P. Marx 1979. Effect of temperature on gaseous N-products of denitrification. *Soil Sci. Soc. Am. J. 43,1124-1128.*

Kemper, W.D., Roseneau, R. & S. Nelson 1985. Gas displacement and aggregate stability in soils. *Soil Sci. Soc. Am. J. 49, 25-28.*

Khalil, M.A.K. & R.A. Rasmussen 1988. Nitrous oxide: Trends and global mass balance over the last 3000 years. *Annals of Glaciology 10, 73-79*

Klemedtsson, L. & G.I. Hansson 1990. Methods to separate N_2O produced from denitrification and denitrification. *Mitt. DBG 60, 19-24.*

Klemedtsson, L. & B.H. Svensson 1988. Effect of acid deposition, denitrification and N_2O-emission from forest soils. In: *Critical loads for sulphur and nitrogen* (Eds I. Nilsson and P. Grennfelt). Report of a workshop held at Skokloster, Sweden, 19-24 March 1988. Organized by UN-ECE and the Nordic Council of Ministers, Nord 1988, 15.

Klemedtsson, L. B.H. Svensson & T. Roswall 1988a. Relationships between soil moisture content and nitrous oxide production during nitrification and denitrification. *Biol. Fertil. Soils 6, 106-111.*

Klemedtsson, L. B.H. Svensson & T. Roswall 1988b. A method of selective inhibition to distinguish between nitrification and denitrification as sources of nitrous oxide in soil. *Biol. Fertil. Soils 6, 112-119.*

Knight, D., P.W. Elliot & J.M. Andersen 1989. Effects of earthworms upon transformations and movement of nitrogen from organic matter applied to agricultural soils. In: J.A.A. Hansen & K. Henriksen (eds). Academic Press, London. p. 59-80.

Knowles, R. 1981. Denitrification. In: *Terrestrial nitrogen cycles* (eds F.E. Clark & T. Roswall). Ecol. Bulletin (Stockholm) No.33, pp. 315-329

Knowles, R. 1982. Denitrification. *Microbiol. Rev. 46, 43-70.*

Koskinen, W.C. & D.R. Keeney 1982. Effect of pH on the rate of gaseous products of denitrification in a silt loam soil. *Soil. Sci. Soc. Am. J. 46, 1165-1167.*

Kuhlbusch, T.A., J.M. Lobert, P.J. Crutzen & P. Warneck 1991. Molecular nitrogen emissions from denitrification during biomass burning. *Nature 351, 135-137.*

Lashof, D.A. & D.A. Tirpak 1990. *Policy options for stabilizing global climate*. Hemisphere Publ. Co., New York.

Leffelaar, P.A. 1986. Dynamics of partial anaerobiosis, denitrification, and water in a soil aggregate: Experimental. *Soil Science 142, 352-366.*

Leffelaar, P.A. & W.W. Wessel 1990. Denitrification in a homogeneous, closed system: Experiment and simulation. *Soil Science 146, 335-349.*

Lensi, R. & A. Chalamet 1981. Absorption de l'oxyde nitreux par les parties aériennes de mais. *Plant and Soil 59, 91-98.*

Levine, J.S., W.R. Cofer III, D.I. Sebacher, R.P. Rhinehart, E.L. Winstead, S. Sebacher, C.R. Hinkle, P.A. Schmalzer & A.K.M. Koller Jr. 1990. The effects of fire on biogenic emissions of methane and nitric oxide from wetlands. *J. Geophys. Res. 95, 1853-1864.*

Letey, J., N. Valoras, D.D. Focht & J.C. Ryden 1981. Nitrous oxide production and reduction during denitrification as affected by redox potential. *Soil Sci. Soc. Am. J. 45, 727-730.*

Letey, J., A. Hadas, N. Valoras & D.D. Focht 1980b. Effect of precipitation treatments on the ratio of N_2O/N_2 evolution. *J. Env.Qual. 9, 232-235.*

Letey, J., N. Valoras & D.D. Vocht 1980a. Effect of air-filled porosity,nitrate concentration, and time on the ratio of N_2O/N_2 evolution during denitrification. *J. Env. Qual. 9, 227-231.*

Letey, J., W.A. Jury, A. Hadas & N. Valoras 1980c. Gas diffusion as a factor in laboratory incubation studies on denitrification. *J. Env. Qual. 9, 223-227.*

Levine, J.S., W.R. Cofer II, D.I. Sebacher, R.P. Rhinehart, E.L. Winstead, S. Sebacher, C.R. Hinkle, P.A. Schmalzer & A.M. Koller Jr. 1990. The effects of fire on biogenic emissions of methane and nitric oxide from wetlands. *J. Geophys. Res. 95, 1853-1864.*

Linn, D.M. & J.W. Doran 1984. Effect of water-filled pore space on carbon dioxide and nitrous oxide production in tilled and non-tilled soils. *Soil Sci. Soc. Am J. 48, 1267-1272.*

Lobert, J.M., D.M. Scharffe, W.H. Hao & P.J. Crutzen 1990. Importance of biomass burning in the atmospheric budgets of nitrogen-containing gasses. *Nature 346, 552-554.*

Magalhaes, A.T.M. & P.M. Chalk 1987. Factors affecting the formation of methyl nitrite in soils. *Journal of Soil Science 38, 701-709.*

Malinowsky, P. & J.C.G. Ottow 1991. Ecological conditions and physiological mechanism of N_2O-formation from nitrite by *Fusarium solani*. In: *Diversity of environmental biogeochemistry* (ed. J. Berthelin). Elsevier, Amsterdam. pp. 287-294.

Matthias, A.D., A.M. Blackmer & J.M. Bremner 1980. A simple chamber technique for field measurement of emissions of nitrous oxide from soils. *J. Environ. Qual. 9, 251-256.*

Mausbach, M.J. & L.P. Wilding (eds 1991. *Spatial variabilities of soils and landforms*. SSSA Special Publication No. 28, Soil Science Society of America, Inc., Madison, Wisconsin.

McClung, G. & W.T. Frankenberger Jr. 1985. Soil nitrogen transformations as affected by salinity. *Soil Science 139, 405-411.*

McConnaughey, P.K. & D.R. Bouldin 1985a. Transient microsite models of denitrification: I. Model development. *Soil Sci. Soc. Am. J. 49, 886-891.*

McConnaughey, P.K. & D.R. Bouldin 1985b. Transient microsite model of denitrification: II. Model results. *Soil Sci. Soc. Am. J. 49, 891-895.*

McKenney, D.J. & D.L. Wade 1978. Rates of N_2O evolution from N-fertilized soil. *Geophys Res. Lett. 5, 777-780.*

McKenney, D.J., K.F. Schuttleworth, J.R. Vriesacker & W.I. Findlay 1982. Production and loss of nitric oxide from denitrification in anaerobic Brookston clay. *Appl. Environ. Microbiol. 43, 534-541.*

Melillo, J.M., J.D. Aber, P.A. Steulder & J.P. Schimel 1983. Denitrification potentials in a successional sequence of northern hardwood forest stands. In: *Environmental biogeochemistry* (ed. R. Halberg). Ecological Bulletin 35, Stocholm. pp. 217-228.

Minami, K. & A. Ohsawa 1990. Emission of nitrous oxide dissolved in drainage waters from agricultural land. In: *Soils and the greenhouse effect* (ed. A.F. Bouwman). John Wiley & Sons, Chichester. p. 503-509.

Minzoni, F., C. Bonetto & H.L. Golterman 1988. The nitrogen cycle in shallow-water systems of rice fields. Part I: The denitrification process. *Hydrobiologia 159, 189-202.*

Morgaghan, J.T. & R.J. Buresh 1977. Chemical reduction of nitrite and nitrous oxide by ferrous iron. *Soil Sci. Soc. Am. J. 41, 47-50.*

Mosier, A.R. 1990. Gas flux measurement techniques with special reference to techniques suitable for measurements over large ecologically uniform areas. In: *Soils and the Greenhouse Effect* (ed. A.F. Bouwman). John Wiley & Sons, London. pp. 289-301.

Mosier, A.R. & G.L. Hutchinson 1981. Nitrous oxide emissions from cropped fields. *Journal of Environmental Quality 10, 169-173.*

Mosier, A.R., G.L. Hutchinson, B.R. Sabey & J. Baxter 1982. Nitrous oxide emission from barley plots treated with NH_4NO_3 or sewage sludge. *J. Environ. Qual. 11, 78-81.*

Mosier, A.R., W.D. Guenzi & E.E. Schweizer 1986. Soil losses of dinitrogen and nitrous oxide from irrigated crops in Northeastern Colorado. *Soil Sci. Soc. Am. J. 50, 344-348.*

Mosier, A., O. Heinemeyer & K. Haider 1990. Field measurement of denitrification. *Mitteilungen der Deutschen Bodenkundlichen Gesellschaft 60, 13-18.*

Mosier A.R., M. Stillwell, N.J. Parton & R.G. Woodmansee 1981. Nitrous oxide emissions from a native shortgrass prairie. *Soil Sci. Soc. Am. J. 45, 617-619.*

Mosier, A.R., S.K. Mohanty, A. Bhadrachalam & S. Chakravorti 1990a. Influence of rice plants on the evolution of N_2 and N_2O from the soil to the atmosphere. *Mitt. der Deutschen Bodenkundlichen Gesellschaft 60, 115-120.*

Mosier, A.R., S.K. Mohanty, A. Bhadrachalam & S. Chakravorti 1990b. Evolution of N_2 and N_2O from the soil to the atmosphere through rice plants. *Biol. Fert. Soils 9, 61-67.*

Mosier, A.R., D.S. Schimel, D. Valentine, K. Bronson and W. Parton 1991. Methane and nitrous oxide fluxes in native, fertilized and native grasslands. *Nature 350, 330-332.*

Mulvaney, R.L. & L.T. Kurtz 1984. Evolution of dinitrogen and nitrous oxide from nitrogen-15 fertilized soil cores subjected to wetting and drying cycles. *Soil Sci. Soc. Am. J. 48, 596-602.*

Munch, J.C. 1989. Organism specific denitrification in samples of an Udifluvent with different nitrate concentrations. *Z. Pflanzenernährung Bodenk 152, 395-400.*

Munch, J.C. 1991. Nitrous oxide emissions from soil as determined by the composition of denitrifying microbial population. In: *Diversity of environmental biogeochemistry* (ed. J. Berthelin), Elsevier, Amsterdam. pp. 308-315.

Munch, J.C. & J.C.G. Ottow 1986. Nature des produits gazeux formés dans les sols à partir de differentes microflores dénitrifiantes. *Science du Sol 24, 337-350.*

Murray, R.E., L.L. Parsons & M.S. Smith 1989. Kinetics of nitrate utilization by mixed populations of denitrifying bacteria. Appl. Envir. Microbiol. 55, 717-721.

Muzio & Kramlich 1988. Artefacts in the measurement of N2O combustion sources. *Geophysical Res. Letters 15, 1369-1372.*

Nielsen, D.R. & J. Bouma (eds) 1985. Soil spatial variability. Proc. Workshop ISSS and SSSA, Las Vegas. Pudoc, Wageningen.

O'Hara, G.W. & R.M. Daniel 1985. Rhizobial denitrification: A review. *Soil Biology and Biochemistry 17, 1-9.*

Papen, H. & H. Rennenberg 1990. Microbial processes involved in emissions of radiatively important trace gases. In: *Transactions 14th International Congress of Soil Science* (August 12-18, 1990), Kyoto. Vol. II, pp. 232-237.

Papen, H., R. Von Berg, I. Hinkel, B. Thoene & H. Rennenberg 1989. Heterotrophic nitrification by Alcaligenes faecalis: NO_2^-, NO_3^-, N_2) and NO production in exponentially growing culture. *Appl. Environ. Microbiol. 55, 2068-2072.*

Parkin, T.B. 1987. Soil microsites as a source of denitrification variability. *Soil Sci. Soc. Am. J. 51, 1194-1199.*

Parkin, T.B. & J.A. Robinson 1989. Stochastic models of soil denitrification. *Appl. Environ. Microbiol. 55, 72-77.*

Parsons, L.L., R.E. Murray & M.S. Smith 1991. Soil denitrification dynamics: Spatial and temporal variations of enzyme activity, populations and nitrogen gas loss. *Soil. Sci. Soc. Am. J. 55, 90-95.*

Parton, W.J., A.R. Mosier & D.S. Schimel 1988. Rates and pathways of nitrous oxide production in a short grass steppe. *Biogeochemistry 6, 45-58.*

Poth, M. & D.D. Focht 1985. ^{15}N kinetic analysis of N_2O production by Nitrosomonas europea: An examination of nitrifier denitrification. *Appl. Env. Microbiol. 49, 1134-11141.*

Post, W.M., J. Pastor, P.J. Zinke & A.G. Stangenberger 1985. Global patterns of soil nitrogen. *Nature 317, 613-616.*

Powlson, D.S., P.G. Saffinga & M. Kragt-Cottaar 1988. Denitrification at suboptimal temperature in soils from different climate zones. *Soil Biology and Biochemistry 20, 719-723.*

Prade, K. & G. Trolldenier 1990a. Incidence of Geamannomyces graminis var. tritici and K deficiency increase rhizospheric denitrification. *Plant and Soil 124, 141-142.*

Prade, K. & G. Trolldenier 1990b. Denitrification in the rhizosphere of rice and wheat seedlings as influenced by the K-status of plants. *Mitt. DBG 60, 121-126.*

Prinn, R., D. Cunold, R. Rasmussen, P. Simmonds, F. Aleya, A. Crawford, P. Fraser & R. Rosen 1990. Atmospheric emissions and trends of nitrous oxide deduced from 10 years of ALE-GAGE data. *J. Geophys. Res. 95, 18369-18385.*

Reddy, K.R. & W.H. Patrick Jr. 1986. Denitrification losses in flooded rice fields. In: *Nitrogen economy of flooded rice soils* (eds S.K. De Datta & W.H. Patrick Jr.). Martinus Nijhoff, Dordrecht. pp. 99-116.

Reddy, K.R., W.H. Patrick Jr. & C.W. Lindau 1987. Fertilizer nitrogen losses in the root zone of rice. In: *Agronomy abstracts*. ASA, Madison, WI. p. 191.

RIVM 1991. Sustainable use of groundwater: Problems and threats in the European Communities. National Institute of Public Health and Environmental Protection/Institute for Inland Water Management and Waste Water Treatment. RIVM/RIZA project 600025. RIVM, Bilthoven.

Robertson,G.P. and J.M. Tiedje 1987. Nitrous oxide sources in aerobic soils: nitrification, denitrification and other biological processes. *Soil Biology and Biochemistry 19, 187-193.*

Rolston, D.E. 1990. Modelling of denitrification: Approaches, successes and problems. *Mitt. der Deutschen Bodenk. Ges. 60, 397-402.*

Rolston, D.E. & F.E. Broadbent 1977. Field measurement of denitrification. *U.S. Environmental Protection Agency Report EPA A-600/2-77-233*, Washington D.C.

Rolston, D.E., M. Fried & D.A. Goldhammer 1976. Denitrification measured directly from nitrogen and nitrous oxide fluxes. *Soil Science Society of America Journal 40, 259-266.*

Rolston, D.E., D.L. Hoffman & D.W. Toy 1978. Field measurement of denitrification: 1. Flux of nitrogen and nitrous oxide. *Soil Sci. Soc. Am. J. 42, 863-869.*

Rolston, D.E., P.S.C. Rao, J.M. Davidson & R.E. Jessup 1984. Simulation of denitrification losses of nitrate fertilizer applied to uncropped, cropped and manure-amended field plots. *Soil Sci. 137, 270-279.*

Rolston, D.E., A.N. Sharpley, D.W. Toy & T.E. Broadbent 1982. Field measurement of denitrification III: Rates during irrigation cycles. *Soil Sci. Soc. Am. J. 46, 289-296.*

Rolston, D.E., A.N. Sharpley, D.W. Toy, D.L. Hofmann & F.E. Broadbent 1980. *Denitrification as affected by irrigation frequency of a field soil.* US Environmental Protection Agency Report EPA-600/2-80-066, Washington D.C.

Rosswall, T. 1981. The biogeochemical nitrogen cycle. In: *Some perspectives of the major biogeochemical cycles* (ed. G.E. Likens). SCOPE 17, John Wiley & Sons, Chichester etc. pp. 25-49.

Roswall, T., R.G. Woodmansee & P.G. Risser 1988. *Scales and global change: Spatial and temporal variability in biospheric and geospheric processes.* SCOPE 35, John Wiley & Sons, Chichester.

Ryden, J.C. 1981. N_2O exchange between a grassland soil and the atmosphere. *Nature 292, 235-237.*

Ryden, J.C. & L.J. Lund 1980a. Nature and extent of directly measured denitrification losses from some irrigated vegetable crop production units. *Soil Sci. Soc. Am. J. 44, 505-511.*

Ryden, J.C. & L.J. Lund 1980b. Nitrous oxide evolution from irrigated land. *J. Env. Qual. 9, 387-393.*

Ryden, J.C., L.J. Lund & D.D. Focht 1978. Direct in field measurement of nitrous oxide flux from soils. *Soil Sci. Soc. Am. J. 42, 731-737.*

Sahrawat. K.L. & D.R. Keeney 1986. Nitrous oxide emission from soils. In: *Advances in Soil Science, Volume 4* (ed. B.A. Stewart). Springer Verlag, New York. pp. 103-148.

Scharpenseel, H.W., M. Schomaker & A. Ayoub (eds) 1990. *Soils on a warmer Earth (effects of expected climate change on soil processes, with emphasis on the tropics and sub-tropics).* Developments in Soil Science 20, Elsevier, Amsterdam.

Seech, A.G. & E.A. Beauchamp 1990. Denitrification in soil aggregates of different sizes. *Soil Sci. Soc. Am. J. 52, 1616-1621.*

Seiler, W. & R. Conrad 1987. Contribution of tropical ecosystems to the global budgets of trace gases, especially CH_4, H_2, CO and N_2O. In: *Geophysiology of Amazonia. Vegetation and climate interactions* (eds. R.E. Dickinson). John Wiley & Sons, New York. p. 133-160.

Sextone, A.J., T.B. Parkin & J.M. Tiedje 1985. Temporal response of soil denitrification rates to rainfall and irrigation. *Soil Sci. Soc. Am. J. 49, 99-103.*

Smith, C.J., F.M. Wright & W.H. Patrick Jr. 1983. The effect of soil redox potential and pH on the reduction and production of nitrous oxide. *J. Env. Qual. 12, 186-188.*

Smith, G.B. & M.S. Smith 1986. Symbiotic and free-living denitrification by *Bradyrhizobium japonicum*. *Soil Sci. Soc. Am. J. 50, 349-354.*

Smith, K.A. 1980. A model of the extent of anaerobic zones in aggregated soils and its potential to estimate of denitrification. *J. Soil Sci. 31, 263-277.*

Smith, M.S. & K. Zimmerman 1981. Nitrous oxide production by non-denitrifying soil nitrate reducers. *Soil. Sci. Soc. Amer. J. 45, 865-871.*

Sprent, J.I. 1990. The biology of nitrogen transformations. *Soil Use and Management 6, 74-77.*

Stegeman, D. & H.K. Cammenga 1990. Investigation on adsorption and diffusion of nitrous oxide in soil matrices. *Mitt. DBG 60, 73-82.*

Stouthamer, A.H. 1988. Dissimilatory reduction of oxidised nitrogen compounds. In: *Biology of anaerobic microorganisms* (ed. A.J.B. Zehnder). John Wiley & Sons, New York. p.245-303.

Svensson, B.H., U. Boström & L. Klemedttson 1986. Potential for higher rates of denitrification in earthworm casts than in the surrounding soil. *Biol. and fertil. of Soils 2, 147-149.*

Terry, R.E., R.L. Tate III & J.M. Duxburg 1981. The effect of flooding on nitrous oxide emissions from an organic soil. *Soil Sci. 132, 228-232.*

Thauer, R.K., K. Jungermann & K. Decker 1977. Energy conservation in chemotrophic anaerobic bacteria. *Bacteriol. Rev. 41, 100-180.*

Thiemens, M.H. & W.C. Trogler 1991. Nylon production: An unknown source of atmospheric N_2O. *Science 251, 932-934.*

Thompson, R.B. & B.F. Pain 1989. Denitrification from cattle slurry applied to grassland. In: *Nitrogen in organic wastes applied to soils* (eds J.A. Hansen & K. Henriksen). Academic Press, London. p. 247-260.

Tiedje, J.M. 1988. Ecology of denitrification and dissimilatory nitrate reduction to ammonium. In: *Biology of anaerobic soils* (ed. Zehnder). John Wiley and Sons, New York. pp. 179-244.

Tiedje, J.M., A.J. Sexstone, T.B. Parkin, N.P. Revsbeck & D.R. Shelton 1984. Anaerobic process in soil. *Plant and Soil 76, 197-212.*

Umarov, M.M. 1990. Biotic sources of nitrous oxide in the context of the global budget of nitrous oxide. In: *Soils and the greenhouse effect* (ed. A.F. Bouwman). John Wiley & Sons, Chichester. pp. 263-268.

Van Breemen, N. 1990. Impact of anthropogenic atmospheric pollution on soils, with special relevance to tropical and subtropical soils, and possible consequences of the greenhouse effect. In: *Soils on a warmer earth* (eds. H.W. Scharpenseel, M. Schomaker & A. Ayoub). Developments in Soil Science 20, Elsevier, Amsterdam. p. 137-144.

Van Breemen, N. & T.C.J. Feijtel 1990. Soil processes and properties involved in the production of greenhouse gases, with special relevance to soil taxonomic systems. In: *Soils and the greenhouse effect* (ed. A.F. Bouwman). John Wiley & Sons, Chichester. pp. 195-223.

Van Cleemput, O., W.J. Patrick Jr. & R. McIlhenny 1976. Nitrate decomposition in flooded soil under different pH and redox conditions. *Soil Sci. Soc. Am. J. 40, 55-60.*

Van Keulen, H. & J. Wolf (eds) 1986. *Modelling of agricultural production: Weather, soils and crops.* Simulation Monographs. Pudoc, Wageningen.

Von Rheinbaben, W. 1990. Nitrogen losses from agricultural soils through denitrification - a critical evaluation. *Z. Pflanzenem. Bodenk. 153, 157-166.*

Weier, K.L.& J.W. Doran 1987. The potential for biological denitrification in a Brigalow clay soil under different management systems. In: *Nitrogen cycling in agricultural systems of temperate Australia* (eds. P.E. Bacon, J. Evans, P.R. Storrier & A.C. Taylor), Wagga Wagga. pp. 327-339.

Weiss, R.F. 1981. The temporal and spatial distribution of nitrous oxide. *J. Geophys. Res. 86, 7185-7195.*

White, R.E. & G.N. Mageson 1991. A stochastic empirical approach to modelling nitrate leaching. *Soil Use and Management 7, 85-93.*

Wijler, J. & C.C. Delwiche 1954. Investigations on the denitrification process in soils. *Plant and Soil 5, 155-169.*

Yamamuro, S. 1991. A theoretical approach to the fate of nitrogen in paddy field by using a NH_4-^{15}N tracer technique and an estimate of the rate of N uptake by rice plant (In Japanese with extended English summary). *Bulletin of the Kyushu National Agric. Exp. Station, Chikugo, Fukuoka. p 1-64.*

Yoshida, T.M. & M. Alexander 1970. Nitrous oxide formation by Nitrosomonas europea and heterotrophic microorganisms. *Soil Sci. Soc. Am. J. 34, 880-882.*

Chapter 4 Organic matter and carbon dioxide

N.H. Batjes

4.1 Introduction

4.1.1 Background

Increasing concentrations of radiatively active trace gases - particularly carbon dioxide, methane, nitrous oxide and chlorofluorocarbons (CFCs) - in the atmosphere are likely to severely affect the global climate in the near future (see Bolle *et al.* 1986; Bouwman 1990a; Lashof & Tirpak 1990). A historical review of the associated, so-called "greenhouse effect" has recently been prepared by Scharpenseel & Becker-Heidman (1990). In the present Chapter, the role of carbon dioxide (CO_2) in the global carbon budget will be reviewed with special reference to the role of terrestrial biota and soils. Carbon dioxide is chemically inert in the atmosphere, but being a radiatively active gas it influences the Earth's radiation budget and so it affects the climate and chemistry of the atmosphere (see Levine 1989; Bouwman 1990a).

Atmospheric levels of carbon dioxide (CO_2), as derived from ice core measurements, have increased from around 280 ppmv in the middle of the 18th century to around 300 ppmv in 1920 and 320 ppmv in the 1960s (ORNL 1990). CO_2 records from direct chemical measurements in the 19th century have been reviewed by Fraser *et al.* (1986). Recent, direct measurements of atmospheric CO_2 at the Mauna Loa Observatory, Hawaii, indicate present levels of 348 (Lashof & Tirpak 1990) to 352 ppmv (Keeling *et al.* 1989); the current increase is in the order of 0.5 % yr^{-1}. By mass of carbon this would correspond to an atmospheric burden in the order of 720-740 Pg C (Lashof & Tirpak 1990; Moore III *et al.* 1989). At any given latitude, atmospheric carbon dioxide levels exhibit a seasonal variation of several ppmv which has been attributed to climatically mediated changes in CO_2 uptake by photosynthesis (e.g., Woodwell 1984b; Levine 1989). CO_2 currently contributes to about 50 % of the total "greenhouse" forcing (Scharpenseel & Becker-Heidman 1990; Lashof & Tirpak 1990). The average atmospheric lifetime of CO_2 is about 50-200 yr (IPCC 1990).

Analysis of past CO_2 observations using the Maximum Entropy Method suggest that the atmospheric CO_2 content will increase to 405 ppmv by the year 2024 (Mannerma & Karras 1989), while Mitchell (1989) quotes an estimated CO_2 concentration of 475 ppmv for the year 2035. According to model calculations of Walker & Kasting (1992) atmospheric carbon dioxide levels could be sustained indefinitely below 500 ppmv if fossil fuel combustion rates were immediately reduced from their current value by a factor of 25, and further forest clearance were halted. If this "scenario" is not met and the consumption of fossil fuel continues unabated, peak CO_2 concentrations of 1000-2000 ppmv are probable in the next few centuries according to the model of Walker & Kasting (1992).

According to conservative scenarios the world *anno* 2030, on average, could be 1-2 °C warmer and sea levels 14-24 cm higher than today so that important agricultural regions in coastal lowlands and deltas could be threatened by flooding, erosion and salt intrusion (Warrick & Barrow 1990). In other studies, mean increases in temperature of 2-4 °C have been coined as being most likely to occur (Lashof & Tirpak 1990), with possibly even more severe environmental and socio-economic repercussions.

Most advanced Global Circulation Models (GCMs) predict greater temperature increases at high latitudes, especially during the winter, because of more stable temperature stratification and ice-snow feedbacks. Such changes in climate, and possible related effects on duration of the growing period in any given location, may ultimately affect the latitudinal and altitudinal distribution of ecosystems, as well as ecosystem diversity, and thereby the carbon dynamics in these systems. Possible changes in soils and land use as a result of the anticipated climate change have been discussed by Arnold *et al.* (1991), Brouwer *et al.* (1991) and Scharpenseel *et al.* (1991), while Grotch (1988) and Essex (1991) recently reviewed what kind of information can be derived from GCMs. An authorative review of the accuracy of GCM- based climate models is presented in IPCC (1990, Chapter 4).

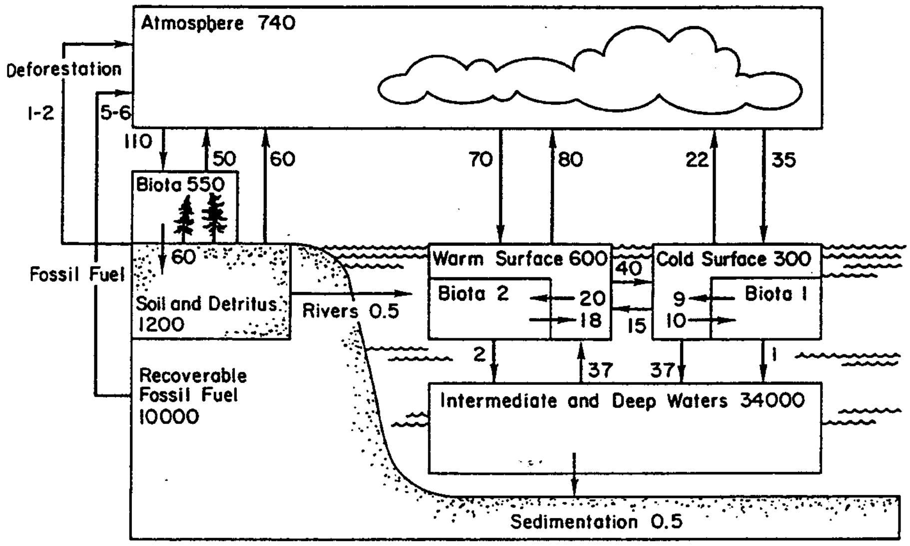


Figure 4.1 Estimates of main sources and sinks of the global carbon cycle (in Pg CO_2-C yr^{-1}; source: Moore III *et al.* 1989).

The major carbon pools and sinks as well as the magnitude of the main global fluxes are schematically depicted in Figure 4.1. Other research groups have presented somewhat different values in view of the prevailing uncertainties in estimating the contributions of the different sources and sinks of CO_2 at the global level, and differences in adopted methodological approaches (e.g., Bolin 1981 & 1986; Trabalka & Reichle 1986; Bouwman 1990a; Esser 1990 a & b; IPCC 1990; Sarmiento & Sundquist 1992). Table 4.1 lists the estimated annual sources and sinks of CO_2 as presented by Houghton & Woodwell (1989). It indicates a current net gain of atmospheric CO_2 of about 3 Pg C per year, corresponding with about 50% of current total emissions. Sarmiento & Sundquist (1992) estimated the inferred terrestrial uptake of CO_2 to be 1.8 ± 0.4 and 2.0-4.7 Pg C yr^{-1} using data of IPCC (1990) and Tans *et al.* (1990), respectively (Table 4.2).

Table 4.1 Indicative annual carbon fluxes (Source: Houghton & Woodwell 1989).

Processes	Removal of CO_2-C from the atmosphere (Pg C yr^{-1})	Emissions of C into atmosphere as CO_2 (Pg C yr^{-1})
Photosynthesis	100	-
Respiration by plants	-	50
Soil respiration	-	50
Fossil fuel burning	-	5
Deforestation	-	2
Physicochemical processes at the sea surface	104	100
	----	----
Total	204	207

Table 4.2 Budgets for anthropogenic perturbation of carbon dioxide (Source: Sarmiento & Sundquist 1992 p. 590).

	Average perturbation (Pg C yr^{-1})	
	IPCC (1990)	Tans *et al.* (1990)
Sources:		
Fossil fuels	5.4 ± 0.5	5.3
Deforestation	1.6 ± 1.0	0.0 - 3.2
Total	7.0 ± 1.2	5.3 - 8.5
Sinks:		
Atmosphere	3.2 ± 0.1	3.0
Oceans (steady state models)	1.6 ± 0.8	0.3 - 0.8
Total	5.2 ± 0.8	3.3 - 3.8
Imbalance (inferred terrestrial uptake)	1.8 ± 0.4	2.0 - 4.7

Processes that are fundamental to the long term geochemical carbon cycle include (see Berner 1991):

a) The uptake of CO_2 from the atmosphere and its transformation into dissolved HCO_3^- during the weathering of silicate rocks, with part of this HCO_3^- subsequently precipitating in the oceans as carbonate minerals;

b) The thermal breakdown of carbonate minerals via metamorphism and magmatism, upon burial to great depths, with the resulting CO_2 being transported back to the atmosphere-ocean system (e.g., Barnes *et al.* 1984);

c) The burial of organic matter in sediments, its decomposition on the continents, and its thermal breakdown via diagenesis, metamorphism, and magmatism followed by oxidation of reduced gases to CO_2.

It is mainly through the process of photosynthesis that CO_2, the oxidized form of carbon, is converted to the reduced state in which it occurs in organic compounds and that the reduced form of oxygen (H_2O) is oxidized to molecular oxygen (O_2). Although some autotrophs can reduce CO_2 to organic material while oxidizing compounds other than H_2O (e.g., NO_3^-, NO_2^-, H_2, Fe^{3+} and reduced forms of sulphur), the contribution of these processes to the total fixation of CO_2 is of minor importance (see Stainer *et al.* 1976). The CO_2 emissions related to burning of fossil fuels, cement manufacturing and changes in land use have increased markedly during the last century due to the demands of the rapidly growing world population for food, timber and fuel, as well as unnecessary wastage. Basically, there would be three main approaches to slowing down the current release of carbon dioxide (Mintzer 1985):

a) Improving the efficiency of energy supply and use;
b) Shifting the current fuel use away from coal towards less CO_2 intensive fuels; and
c) Reducing the rate of carbon dioxide emissions from biotic sources.

The balance of all the processes which determine modifications in atmospheric CO_2 concentration with time (dCO_2/dt) can be expressed as follows (Goreau 1990):

$$d(CO_2)/dt = C + D + R + S + O - P - I - B$$

with:

Main sources:
C, the contribution of fossil fuel combustion to atmospheric CO_2 levels;
D, the CO_2 emissions associated with deforestation;
R, the autotrophic respiration of terrestrial plants;
S, the heterotrophic respiration from decomposers such as bacteria, fungi and animals;
O, the CO_2 flux from oceans to the atmosphere;

Main sinks:
P, the CO_2 fixed by terrestrial photosynthesis;
I, the CO_2 flux from the atmosphere to oceans;
B, the incorporation of carbon in organic and inorganic forms in sediments and soils.

The terrestrial biosphere absorbs about 100-120 Pg C yr^{-1} of CO_2 from the atmosphere via gross primary production. About the same amount is released to the atmosphere via autotrophic respiration and heterotrophic decomposition processes (Table 4.1). Average terrestrial net primary productivity (NPP) is in the order of 55 Pg C yr^{-1} and the annual global CO_2 flux from soils is estimated to average 68 ± 4 Pg C yr^{-1} (Raich & Schlesinger 1992). The net release of carbon associated with deforestation and biomass burning is estimated to account for about 10-40 % of the annual anthropogenic CO_2 emissions to the atmosphere (Burke & Lashof 1990; Hileman 1990). Uncertainties in these estimates result from limited data on the types, amounts and acreages of biomass burned and highly variable emissions per unit of biomass burned. Estimates of biomass in trees and total carbon in live plants per unit area at an equatorial scale of 1:30 M on a 1/2 by 1/2 degree grid have been presented by Olson *et al.* (1983). Global biomass burning not only contributes to CO_2 emissions but also to about 10-20 % of annual emissions of methane, 20-40 % of carbon monoxide (CO), 5-15 % of N_2O, and 10-35 % of NO_x (Burke & Lashof 1990). For additional information on the contribution of terrestrial ecosystems to emissions of the latter greenhouse gases reference is made to Bouwman (1990a).

The total amount of recoverable fossil fuel, most of which is coal, is probably in the range 4000 to 6000 Pg C. Between the year 1860 and 1964 an estimated 183 ± 15 Pg C have been emitted to the atmosphere by fossil fuel combustion alone (Bolin 1986b). In 1989 the global emissions of CO_2 associated with fossil fuel burning, gas flaring and cement manufacturing amounted to 5.97 Pg C (CDIAC 1992 p.1); this figure could well be of the same order of magnitude as the one associated with a possible, small change in soil respiration flux associated with the anticipated warming of Earth. The year 1989 marks the sixth consecutive year that the "industrial" CO_2 emissions have increased (CDIAC 1992 p. 1). By the year 2050 this may change to 2-20 Pg C yr^{-1}, depending on the "adopted" abatement strategies (Keepin *et al.* 1986).

Carbon stored in deep oceans amounts to about 39,000 Pg C. About 90-100 Pg C yr^{-1} is exchanged annually between the atmosphere and the ocean, resulting in a net oceanic uptake of 1-3 Pg C yr^{-1} (Lashof & Tirpak 1990, IPCC 1990 p. 12). A clear overview of the uptake of CO_2 by the oceans is included in IPCC (1990, Section 1.2).

At present, coral reefs worldwide act as a sink for 111 Tg C yr^{-1} (1 Tg = 10^{12} g C), corresponding with about 2 % of present anthropogenic output (Kinsey & Hopley 1991). Recent best estimates for global river organic carbon fluxes are 0.2 Pg C yr^{-1} for dissolved organic carbon and 0.2-0.3 Pg C yr^{-1} for particulate organic carbon, with a range of 0.3 to 0.5 Pg C yr^{-1} for total organic carbon (see Sarmiento & Sundquist 1992 p. 590).

Some 800 Pg C is probably stored in calcic horizons, popularly known as caliches or calcretes, which occur in the world's deserts. The natural carbon flux from the atmosphere to inorganic carbon in arid soils is estimated to be about 1-2 Pg C yr^{-1} (Schlesinger 1985 & 1986). Vast amounts of carbon are stored in sediments worldwide, and these amounts are relatively stable. The role of weathering in the CO_2 balance of soils, however, cannot be neglected as it may remove from 0.16 to 0.27 Pg C yr^{-1} of atmospheric CO_2 as HCO_3^- (see Van Breemen & Feijtel 1990). Bohn (1990) recently discussed the possible changes in inorganic carbon content in soil upon climate change (see also Sombroek 1990).

Estimates for the amounts of carbon stored in land biota and world soils are 700-1700 and 1000-3000 Pg C, respectively (see Section 4.5.1). This means that changes in the carbon contents in land biota and soils may have important repercussions for atmospheric C-levels. The principal, technical means of reducing biotic emissions would be to limit the rate of tropical deforestation and making biomass use more efficient. In this Chapter the focus of the discussion will be on the factors and processes that control the storage/release of CO_2 in terrestrial ecosystems. The present Chapter of necessity is selective in view of the vast "dimension" of this aspect of the carbon cycle.

4.1.2 Structure of chapter

In Section 4.2 the functions and turnover of organic matter and its fractions in soil will be reviewed. The main abiotic and biotic factors that regulate the stability and decomposition of organic matter in soils are reviewed in Section 4.3. Examples of CO_2 evolution associated with "soil respiration" and changes in land use are presented in Section 4.4, which also includes a discussion of the possible "fertilization effect" associated with increasing atmospheric CO_2 levels. In Section 4.5 estimates of world soil carbon pools are discussed with reference to some modelling approaches. Possible limitations inherent to using available soil data in estimating the size of soil carbon pools worldwide are formulated in Section 4.5, and concluding remarks in Section 4.6.

4.2 Organic matter in soil

4.2.1 Properties

The favourable effects of organic matter on the physical and chemical properties of soils and on biological activity, and by implication in sustaining soil productivity, have been discussed at length in many handbooks (Russell 1980 & 1988; Neue & Scharpenseel 1984 and many others). The organic constituents of tropical soils do not possess any special qualities that set them apart from those of temperate regions (e.g., Theng *et al.* 1989). Organic matter has a stabilizing effect on soil structure (see Section 4.3.4), improves the moisture holding and release characteristics of soil, and protects soils against erosion. Decaying organic matter slowly releases nutrients (e.g., N, P, S, K) essential for plant and microbial growth. Some organic constituents in humic substances may stimulate plant growth under conditions of adequate mineral nutrition (Chen & Aviad 1990). Soil organic matter is also an important determinant of the cation exchange capacity of soils, particularly in coarse textured soils and so called "low activity" clay soils. It also plays an important role in retention of non-ionic organic compounds and pesticides in soil (Chiou 1990). The generally dark colour of organic matter in topsoils can increase the adsorption of solar energy as a result of which crop growth on bare soils rich in organic matter may start somewhat earlier in cool climates. Upon deforestation or a shift in land use the above favourable properties may be altered to a varying extent as a result of accelerated decomposition of a fraction of the organic matter present in soil. The related decrease in soil organic matter content commonly leads to structural soil degradation, causing increased compaction and decreased soil hydraulic properties (Spaans 1989, 1990), clay mobilization (Wielemaker & Landsu 1991), increased erosion hazard, and/or enhanced losses of soil acting herbicides adsorbed to soil organic matter (e.g., Harrod *et al.* 1991; Vaidyanathan & Eagel 1991).

4.2.2 Definitions of soil organic matter

Organic matter levels in soil are essentially regulated by net primary production, the distribution of photosynthates into "roots" and "shoots", and the rate at which these various organic residues decompose. Plant residues that fall on the soil as "fresh" litter are gradually altered through physical fragmentation, fauna/microflora interactions, mineralisation and humus formation. The different types of organic matter in litter have recently been reviewed by Eijsackers & Zehnder (1990). Litter is not considered to be a part of soil organic matter as it essentially lies on the soil's surface. As such it is not considered in the calculation of soil organic carbon pools (e.g., Buringh 1984; Bouwman 1990a).

Many research groups have studied the characteristics, fractions and dynamics of organic matter in soil (e.g., Kononova 1966; Greenland & Hayes 1978; Stevenson 1982; Frimmel & Christman 1988; Coleman *et al.* 1989; Mortvedt & Buxton 1987; Shawney & Brown 1989; Russell 1980). In the following paragraphs the definitions of "soil organic matter" as formulated by Russell (1980), Schnitzer (1991), Theng *et al.* (1989) and Stevenson (1982) are discussed to illustrate the necessity for a standardization of terms.

According to Russell (1980) the "soil organic matter consists of a whole series of products which range from undecayed plant and animal tissues through ephemeral products of decomposition to fairly stable amorphous brown to black material bearing no trace of the anatomical structure of the material from which it was derived". It is this latter, amorphous material that Russell (1980) terms humus. Similarly, Schnitzer (1991) defines soil organic matter as the sum total of all organic carbon-containing substances in soils which consist of "a mixture of plant and animal residues in various stages of decomposition, of substances synthesized microbiologically and/or chemically from the breakdown products, and of the bodies of live and dead microorganisms and small animals and their decomposing products". The same author divides soil organic matter into non-humic and humic substances. Non-humic substances still display recognizable chemical characteristics, are relatively easily degraded in soils, and have short life spans. Conversely, humic substances no longer exhibit specific chemical and physical characteristics and are more resistant to microbiological and biological degradation.

Theng *et al.* (1989) use a somewhat different definition of soil organic matter which they divide into a "living" and "non-living" component. The "living" component (on average <4 % of total soil organic C) is divided into plant roots, macroorganisms or fauna, and microorganisms (5-10, 15-30 and 60-80 %, respectively). The "non-living" component consists of "macroorganic materials" and "humus". The "macroorganic" fraction largely consists of plant residues in varying stages of decomposition that can not pass through a sieve with 0.25 mm mesh. It is considered to be similar to the "light fraction" obtained by flotation on liquids with a density of 1.6 to 2.0 g cm^{-3}. In the terminology of Theng *et al.* (1989) "humus" is what remains after physical separation of the "light fraction". It consists of non-humic substances, which are well defined classes of organic compounds, and humic substances.

Stevenson (1982) uses a narrower and possibly more widely applied definition (by modellers) of soil organic matter: "the organic constituents of soil - excluding undecayed plant and animal tissue -, their partial decomposition products, and the soil biomass". According this definition soil organic matter includes: a) identifiable high-molecular weight organic materials such as polysaccharides and protein; b) simpler substances such as sugars, amino acids, and other small molecules; and c) humic substances. In this sense soil organic matter (SOM) resembles humus which is commonly defined as the structureless component of the soil organic fraction (see also Russell 1980). This humus is primarily derived from the higher plants and formed during the microbial decomposition of original plant materials and of new substrates synthesised by soil micro-organisms.

Fractions

Humic substances form "a category of naturally occurring biogenic, heterogeneous organic substances that can generally be characterized as being yellow to black in colour, of high molecular weight, and refractory" (Aiken *et al.* 1985a). Humic substances cannot be classified into any discrete categories of compounds such as polysaccharides or proteins (e.g., MacCarthy *et al.* 1990c; Stott & Martin 1990; Theng *et al.* 1989). Each humic component in each environment (soil, stream water and ocean water) is unique and possesses an individuality that is characteristic of the particular component in any particular environment (Malcolm & McCarthy 1991).

By convention the "fractions" of humic substances are operationally divided into humic acid, fulvic acid and humin. The fraction of humic substances that is not soluble in water under strongly acidic conditions (pH <2) but is soluble at higher pH values is termed humic acids. Fulvic acids are the components of humic substances that are soluble irrespective of the pH conditions in aqueous solutions. Humin corresponds with the fraction of humic substances that is not soluble in water at any pH value (Aiken *et al.* 1985a). These definitions do not imply any distinct functional boundary between humic acid, fulvic acid and humin (as fractions) in terms of their physico-chemical properties in relation to their biological degradability.

Modelling of processes of pedogenesis and soil acidification demand data on functional attributes such as pKs, density of dissociable groups, and complex formation constants (Theng *et al.* 1989). Alternatively, soil organic matter is often divided into a so-called "light" and "heavy" fraction when modelling the dynamics of organic matter turnover in soil. These fractions are considered to correspond with the "labile" and "stabile" compartments, respectively. The fractions are commonly separated physically by sieving and flotation.

The "light fraction", as defined by Anderson & Ingram (1989) in the Tropical Soil Biology and Fertility (TSBF) Manual , is physically bounded by a mesh size of 2 mm - the upper limit for the USDA "fine earth" fraction - and 0.25 mm, and separated from the soil by flotation on water. It is considered to consist of microbial biomass and partially humified/cellular organic matter with a rapid turnover (1-5 yr). Independent studies, however, have shown the "light fraction" (< 1.6 g cm^{-3}) may include significant amounts of recalcitrant charcoal which should be removed (Skjemstad *et al.* 1990). For obvious practical reasons the "heavy fraction" of TSBF is defined as corresponding with the fraction not retained by a 0.25 mm sieve. The corresponding organic matter is considered to be physically protected or to consist of organic matter which is resistant to decomposition with "slow" (20-40 yr) to "passive" (200-1500 yr) turnover times (Anderson & Ingram 1989).

As is already reflected by the findings of Skjemstad *et al.* (1990) there still is a need for developing fractionation schemes that "truly" reflect the dynamic character of SOM for use on a wide range of soils (e.g., Theng *et al.* 1989; Bonde 1991). Experimental work suggests it may be necessary to combine physical fractionation with biologically based techniques such as long term incubation (Bonde 1991). Mechanical procedures such as sieving or sonication of soil samples before incubation, however, may introduce artifacts that affect the observed mineralisation of the respective fractions (e.g., Houot *et al.* 1991; Feller *et al.* 1991; Balesdent *et al.* 1991). Fractionation schemes that truly reflect the biological diversity of organic matter in soil are needed (Van Veen 1986); adequate methods to experimentally establish the partitioning of soil organic matter over the different pools conceptualized in modelling studies are still lacking (Verberne *et al.* 1990).

Residence time

With the introduction of radioisotopic dating techniques it became possible to calculate the mean age of carbon in soil (for discussion see Harkness *et al.* 1991). The calculated ^{14}C age of humus in five pasture soils from the midwestern USA was 200-400 yr (Simonson 1959). Half-lives of 1700 to 2200 yr were reported by Paul *et al.* (1964) for humus in selected Canadian soils. The mean calculated age of humus in some soils of the Rothamsted classical experiments was 1240 yr (Jenkinson & Rayner 1977). Topsoil (0-23 cm), sampled in 1881 from unmanured plots of the Broadbalk continuous wheat experiment, contained 27.5 t ha^{-1} of organic carbon with a measured ^{14}C age (recomputed to 1881) of

1330 years (Jenkinson 1990). The mean residence time of the various humus fractions of a Chernozem increases in the sequence humic acid ≈ humin > fulvic acid with mean values of 495 ± 60 yr, 1140 ± 50 yr and 1235 ± 60 yr, respectively (Campbell *et al.* 1967 a, b). Alternatively, Zehnder (1982) reported the "mobile" humus fraction, *sensu* humic and fulvic acids, has a mean residence time of 250-800 yr whereas humins are often older than 2000 yr. Marked differences exist in the mean residence time of the "acid hydrolysable" and "non-hydrolysable" components of both the humic acid and humin fractions (Campbell *et al.*, *op cit.*). The oldest organic fraction in two soils of the Jura mountains, France, corresponded with the non-hydrolysable material of clay-sized humin (Balesdent 1987). Mean residence times of 2000 to 5000 yr have been reported for soils rich in allophane (Wada & Aomine 1975), reflecting the importance of mineralogy in preserving organic materials in soil (see Section 4.3.3).

The $^{14}C/^{12}C$ ratio of the upper part of the litter of Brazilian Tabuleiros soils was shown to be in equilibrium with atmospheric CO_2 levels, indicating a turnover time of less than 1 year (Lobo *et al.* 1990). The lower part of the litter had a turnover time of 17 ± 1 yr, whereas in the A1 horizon (0-24 cm) the mean turnover time was 100 ± 15 yr (Lobo *et al.* 1990). Harrison *et al.* (1990) studied the turnover time of organic matter in various soil layers in an oak-ash-birch forest of Meathop Wood, Cumbria, with radiocarbon dating. The calculated turnover times increased with depth from the litter layer from about 2 yr for the litter, 18 yr for soil organic matter in the "0-5 cm", 40 yr for the "5-10 cm", 100 yr for the "10-15 cm", 500 yr for the "15-25 cm", and 600 yr for the "25-50 cm" layer, respectively. Recently, Raich & Schlesinger (1992) estimated that, when reasonable estimates about root respiration are made, the global mean residence time of soil organic matter is about 32 years.

Turnover of microbial biomass

The microbial biomass forms a relatively small and labile fraction of the soil organic matter complex. Yet, its turnover is a rate determining process in the cycling of organic matter and nutrients (see Van Veen 1986). Available techniques for measuring microbial biomass have been reviewed and discussed by Bonde (1991) amongst others.

The microbial biomass may be influenced by the type of vegetation present. Microbial C - determined with the fumigation extraction method - for selected soils under conifers, deciduous forest and arable use was 1.19, 1.13, and 1.04 % of total C, respectively (Martikainen & Palojärvi 1990). Microbial biomass amounted to 2.9-4.1 % (Bonde 1991) and 1.8-3.2 % (Houot *et al.* 1991) of total carbon in selected temperate agro-ecosystems. Similar values have been reported for a tropical Acrorthox (i.e., 1.8-4.8 % of total carbon; Bonde 1991). Van Veen *et al.* (1985) postulated that soils have characteristic capacities to preserve both organic matter and microorganisms. Preservation of the microorganisms could be the result of protection against degradation and/or amelioration of harsh environmental conditions. Van Veen and co-workers assumed that biomass which is formed in excess of the soils preservation capacity will die at a relatively high rate.

Paul & Voroney (1983) used simulation modelling to estimate the turnover time of microbial biomass C, finding mean values of 0.24 yr for a site in Brazil and 2.5 yr in England. Similarly, Houot *et al.* (1991) measured a turnover time of 1.4-1.8 yr for microbial biomass C in a field incubation in France, while Bonde (1991) reported a turnover time of about 0.13-0.17 yr at his EMBRAPA site in Brazil.

These data point at a more rapid degree of microbial breakdown in the humid tropical sites as compared to the temperate European sites under consideration.

Recalcitrant carbon

The "active" fraction of soil organic matter had an average turnover time of 7-10 yr at a temperate site in Sweden as compared to 2 yr for a humid tropical site in Brazil (Bonde 1991). Not all the components of the physically defined "active" fraction of soil turn out to be easily decomposable. Measurement of $D^{13}C$ values with depth in Australian krasnozems, for instance, showed that charcoal was a serious contaminant in the light fraction (< 1.6 g cm^{-3}) of all samples (Skjemstad *et al.* 1990). Sanford *et al.* (1985) calculated the uppermost 1 m of selected "terra firme" forest soils from Venezuela contain 4.6 ± 1.8, 6.9 ± 3.6 and 13.9 ± 6.6 Mg ha^{-1} of charcoal (the ratio of C to charcoal was not specified). The age of the charcoal fragments ranged from 250 ± 50 yr to 6260 ± 110 yr B.P., the oldest mean age being recorded for the 60-70 cm layer of the soils under consideration. Jenkinson (1990) showed it is necessary to consider biologically inert carbon in the Rothamsted model; arbitrarily, the corresponding value was set at 300 g C m^{-2} for all freely draining soils of the world. The fact that fossil charcoal in soil can still be related to the occurrence of paleo-wildfire (Jones & Chaloner 1991) may illustrate the degree of persistence of some charcoal compounds.

The importance of past and present charcoal formation during biomass burning in present global carbon budgets remains a source of uncertainty (Bolin 1986b). Based on several assumptions Esser (1990a) suggests that charcoal formation since 1860 may have amounted to as much as 8 Pg C in grasslands and savanna, and 1.5 Pg C in coniferous forests. Seiler & Crutzen (1980) reported that charcoal or inert carbon, resulting from biomass burning, may amount to 0.5 to 1.7 Pg C. This amount is significant, reflecting the need for further efforts to define the relevant processes in simulation models such as the Osnabruck Biosphere Model (Esser 1990 a & b) or the model of Goudriaan (1990).

4.2.3 Modelling organic matter turnover in soil

Interest in the spatial distribution and nature of organic matter in soil has existed for a long time. In 1882 Dockuchaev compiled a systematic map of organic matter content in the Chernozem areas in Russia. Jenny (1941) was one of the first to model the turnover of organic matter in soil. Since then many conceptual and mathematical models have been developed to describe the dynamics of organic matter in soil. In most of these one to several pools of organic mattermare considered. These compartments are kinetically defined with different and specific turnover rates (see reviews of Jenkinson 1990; Bouwman 1990a). Alternatively, Janssen (1984) presented a model in which the decomposition rate is made variable in time ($k = 2.82*(a + t)^{-1.6}$, with a the apparent age of the organic material added).

Jenkinson (1990) essentially groups the different types of models according to whether they are: a) single homogenous compartment models; b) two compartment models; c) multi-compartmental models; and d) non-compartment decay models. Models b) to c) conceptualize a small pool of organic matter with a rapid turnover time, and one or more pools of greater size and slower turnover rates.

The decay processes of the respective pools is commonly described using first-order, logarithmic decay functions. The model of Jenkinson (1977) may be considered as an example of a two compartment model. In this model, each C compartment (X and Y) decomposes according to a first order process at different and distinct rates (k1 and k2 respectively):

$$C = X*e^{-k1*t} + Y*e^{-k2*t}$$

Alternatively, Houot *et al.* (1991) described the kinetics of released CO_2 as a combination of first-order kinetics and zero order kinetics:

$$CO_2\text{-}C = C1*(1 - e^{-k1*t}) + k2*t$$

After about 30 days the kinetics of C mineralization became nearly constant which is represented by the second term of the equation (k2*t). Houot *et al.* (1991) observed similar rates (k2) of CO_2 accumulation in cultivated or bare soils which had been amended with organic materials. Similarly, Melillo *et al.* (1989) presented a two-phase breakdown model for organic matter with a first phase of rapid mass loss and a much slower second phase. Well known examples of multi-compartment models include CENTURY (Parton *et al.* 1987, 1989) and ROTHAMSTED (Jenkinson 1990). The principles of the latter model, which considers 5 compartments, we shall briefly discuss (Figure 4.2).

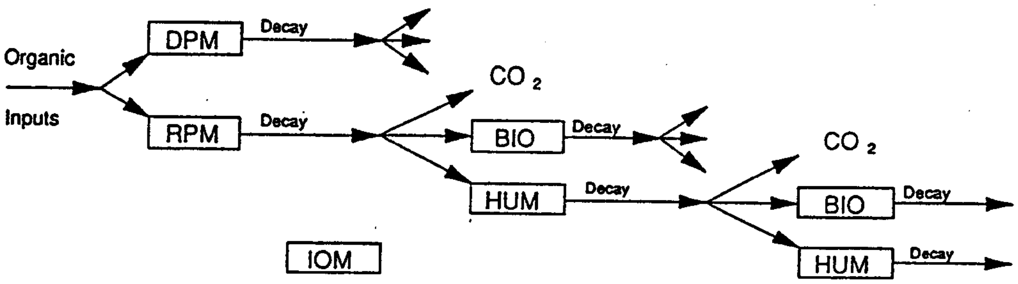


Figure 4.2 Schematic representation of the ROTHAMSTED model (Source: Jenkinson 1990; see text for definition of abbreviations).

The ROTHAMSTED model uses a monthly time step. Inputs of crop residues are first alloted into decomposable (DPM) and resistant (RPM) plant material. Both the DPM and RPM are considered to decompose to carbon dioxide, which is lost from the system by evolution, microbial biomass (BIO) and humified organic matter (HUM). A uniform BIO/HUM conversion ratio is assumed during substrate decomposition for all soils. During decomposition of HUM, more CO_2, microbial biomass (BIO) and fresh humus (HUM) are formed, again in the same proportion. A small organic component is considered to be inert to biological attack (IOM). The montly decay is derived from the expression $1 - e^{-abckt}$. In this expression *a* is a temperature rate modifying factor, *b* a moisture rate modifying factor, and *c* a plant retainment factor. Additional information on the ROTHAMSTED model may be found in Jenkinson (1990).

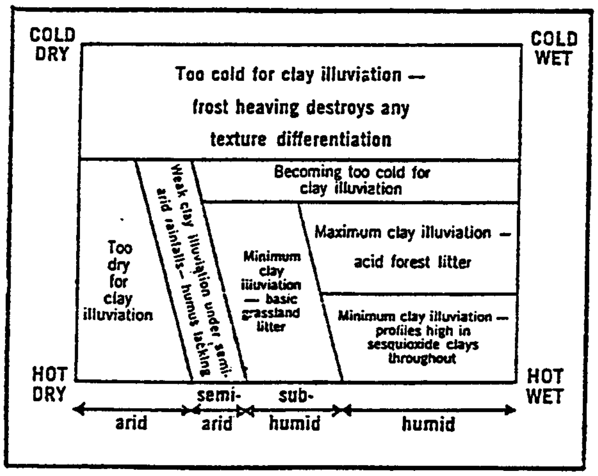
Agren & Bosatta (1988, 1991) and Moran *et al.* (1990) have challenged the concept/use of discrete pools of soil organic matter in models. They visualize the decomposition as a continuum that starts with the addition of organic matter and leads to the formation of refractory humic substances. This means they view SOM heterogeneity as a continuously varying quality variable, where the substrate degrades in quality due to microbial action. As the mathematical modelling of this approach is considered difficult, as compared to compartment-based models, it has not been applied to long runs of data from agricultural trials (see Jenkinson 1990). Alternatively, it may be cumbersome to derive the degradation rate constants (k) for the respective C pools in multi-compartmental models. Van Breemen & Feijtel (1990), for instance, consider distinct and different k-factors for litter - depending on whether it consists of leaves, branches or stems -, roots, soluble organic C, and soil organic C at different depths in the soil. These k-factors are adjusted for actual conditions of moisture and temperature using a "conversion graph". This may require calibration for specific situations, thereby posing a high demand in terms of field observations. Attempts to describe more precisely the turnover of organic matter in soil are increasingly focusing attention on the key role of biota (see review of Ladd 1986; Van Veen 1986). There is also a need to consider more the spatial distribution of soil organic matter and its decomposers in soil (Van Veen 1986; Verberne *et al.* 1990).

An important bottleneck in "refining" models is that it remains difficult to physically or chemically isolate the "conceptual" soil organic matter pools that are considered in the respective types of models (see Section 4.2.2).

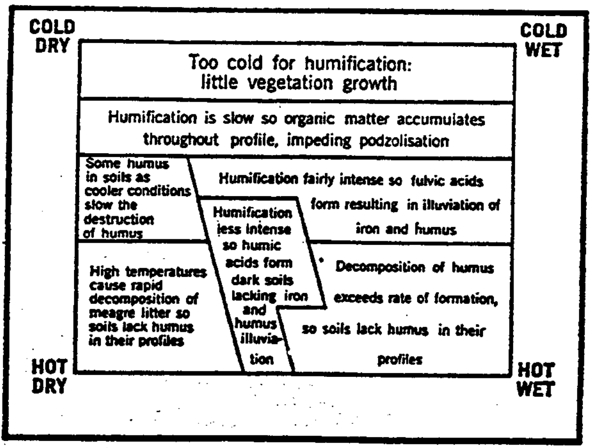
4.3 Factors affecting the organic matter status of soils

4.3.1 Introduction

The primary environmental determinants of plant growth in any location are solar radiation, temperature and length of the growing period (e.g., Van Keulen & Wolf 1986). Photosynthesis, through its effect on net primary production, primarily determines the size of the input of organic matter into the soil. As the increase in microbial decay rate (Q_{10}) generally exceeds the increase in plant growth associated with a similar rise in temperature - provided water and nutrients are not limiting - there often is a negative relationship between temperature and soil organic matter content. If the soil forming factors of parent material, topography, vegetation and time are held constant, organic carbon in soil is further expected to increase with increasing precipitation (see Jenny 1941). Because of the many possible interactions - antagonism or synergism - between the different abiotic and biotic regulators of organic matter formation and decomposition it often proves difficult to assess unambiguously how the various controls will affect the dynamics of organic matter in any given soil. Proces-based modelling provides a tool for increasing the conceptual knowledge of these relationships. Major environmental controls of organic matter decomposition in soil are moisture status, soil temperature, oxygen supply, soil fertility and clay content and mineralogy (e.g., Alexander 1977; Eijsackers & Zehnder 1990; Anderson & Flanagan 1990). Biotic controls include the type of flora and fauna, as well as possible modifications therein resulting from the influence of man (e.g., cultivation, irrigation, atmospheric pollution).



The effect of climate on texture differentiation in soils.



The role of organic matter in soil formation in response to climate.

Figure 4.3 A framework for relating the direct interactions of climatic factors with the three processes that determine the characteristics and dynamics of soils (Source: Walker & Graetz 1988 p. 17).

4.3.2 Effects of climate

The distribution of rainfall and temperature over the year determine the period during which soil moisture and soil temperature conditions are favourable for plant growth as well as for the micro-, meso- and macrofauna. In the humid tropics this may be the whole year as opposed, for instance, to temperate regions where cold conditions may slow down or stop biotic growth in some seasons. Basically, under non limiting conditions of temperature and nutrient supply, the breakdown of organic matter in soil will be slowed down when soils are either too dry or too wet. As a result arid soils generally have lower organic matter contents than soils from wetter regions where organic matter tends to accumulate (e.g., USDA 1975; Kimble *et al.* 1990). The latter happens particularly under cool temperatures, anaerobic conditions, and high water tables commonly associated with depressions in the landscape as topography influences soil organic matter through the effects of slope and drainage. The anaerobic microbial decomposition of cellulose, oligolignols and monoaromatic lignin derivatives has recently been reviewed by Colberg (1988). Figure 4.3 shows a framework for relating the direct interaction of climatic factors (rainfall, temperature etc.) on organic matter dynamics in soil.

Kadeba (1978) observed that mean annual rainfall and, particularly the number of rainy days, were the major factors governing the amounts and distribution of soil C and N in some savanna soils of northern Nigeria. During the dry season, similar soils tend to dry out earlier and more completely in the open than under shade. Consequently, the decay of organic matter can go on longer in the shade, although at lower temperatures (Jenkinson & Ayanaba 1977). Similarly, Dabin (1980) attributes to the reduced humidity during the dry season in savanna the fact that the ratio of "litter/addition of organic materials to soil" is higher under savanna than under forest, which restricts the decomposition of the litter. Dabin (1980) reported transformation coefficients are 0.1 under forest and 0.2 under savanna.

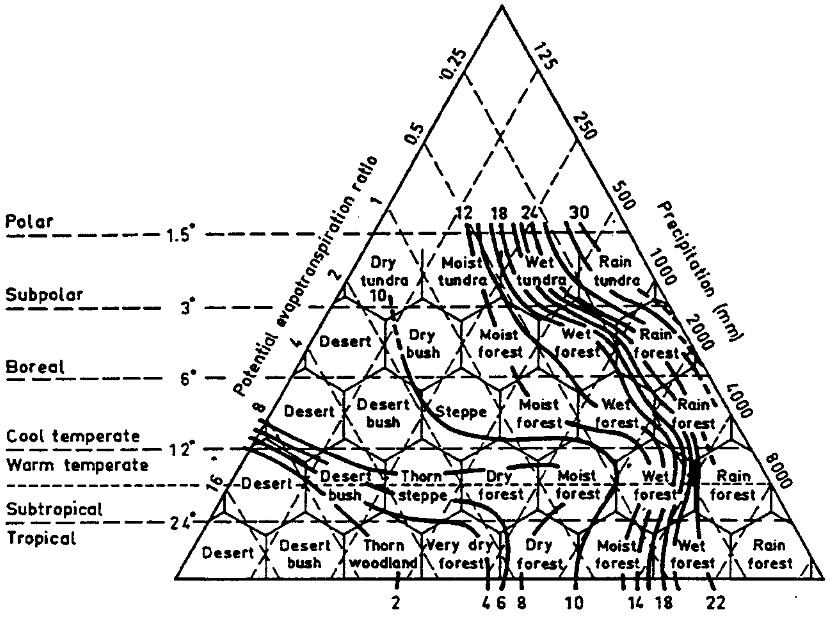


Figure 4.4 Contours of soil carbon density plotted in Holdridge's scheme for world life zone classification (Source: Post *et al.* 1983).

Post *et al.* (1983, Figure 4.4) grouped 2700 soil profiles on a climate basis using the Holdridge life zone classification system. They showed soil carbon density generally increases with rising precipitation, and also that soil carbon density increases with decreasing temperature for any particular level of precipitation. Kimble *et al.* (1990) studied 2715 profiles, classified according to the Keys to Soil Taxonomy (USDA 1987), and found that both within "iso" and non-iso" soil temperature regimes there is a decrease in carbon as the mean soil temperature rises.

McDaniel & Munn (1985) grouped 143 Mollisols and Aridisols from Wyoming and Montana into cryic, frigid and mesic temperature regimes, and found that texture was only significantly correlated to organic C content in the mesic (warmest) soils (0-40 cm depth zone). Sims & Nielsen (1986) found that clay content had much less influence on organic matter accumulation in cool soils of Montana than in warmer soils of the southern Great Plains of the USA. Similarly, clay content was selected earlier in the stepwise multiple-regression fitting-process for the tropical areas than for the "cooler" areas of Australia (Spain *et al.* 1983). Similar observations were made by Lepsch *et al.* (1991) in a study of 99 paired native vegetation-row cropped sites in well drained, clayey "low activity clay" soils from udic, ustic and perudic regions of St. Paolo State. In these "tropical" climatic zones, the organic C content in the 0-20 cm layer was found to be better related to clay + silt content than to any other soil or climatic parameter. A practical implication of the above findings is that empirical relationships between clay content and organic C content, or degradation constants (k-factors), should only be applied in the regions and for the site conditions for which they were originally developed.

A similar increase in temperature - under otherwise non-limiting conditions - will affect the activity of plants and microorganisms to a different degree. On average, net primary production increases with temperature with a Q_{10} of 1.0-1.5 (Harvey 1989, Kohlmaier *et al.* 1990), while soil respiration increases with an average Q_{10} of 2.0-2.4 (Harvey 1989, Raich & Schlesinger 1992). Kohlmaier *et al.* (1990) report a somewhat wider range for mean Q_{10} values (1.3-4.0) for heterotrophic soil respiration. Inherently, the size of the Q_{10} ratios will vary with the temperature range under consideration (e.g., from 0 to 10 °C or from 20 to 30 °C) and will be biota specific. Nevetherless, the above figures suggest that an increase in mean soil temperature, associated with the predicted global warming, is likely to form a positive feedback to the greenhouse effect.

4.3.3 Effects of soil mineralogy and fertility

The inherent fertility of soils, as determined by the nature of the parent material/rock, is one of the regulators of net primary production and thereby of the possible input of organic matter in soils under pristine conditions. The organic matter content of soil depends to an important degree upon the phosphorus content of the parent material and the degree of weathering (Walkers & Syers 1976). When the other regulating factors are not limiting, soils formed on basic rocks will tend to have a higher content of organic matter than acid soils (under freely drained conditions). In Nigerian savannas, a good correlation was observed between organic C and percent clay in soils developed from basaltic rocks, while no such relationship was found for soils developed from acid rocks (Kadeba 1978). The effect of parent material is also illustrated by the low organic C levels in the Nebraska Sand Hills and some sandy areas of Minnesota and Wisconsin (Franzmeier *et al.* 1985). Schimel *et al.* (1985) observed microbial biomass and mineralization did not vary with the slope position, whereas parent material (sandstone, siltstone and shale) had a significant effect upon organic matter transformations. Surface accumulation of organic matter in forest rendzinas over limestone, for instance, can be explained by inhibition of humification processes by active calcium carbonate. Similarly, the stability of soil organic matter in man-made "Terra Preto dos Indios" is due to large additions of organic materials rich in Ca, P and N. Stimulation of microbial activity by these inputs leads to an accelerated mineralization of organic substances less resistant to degradation (e.g., polysaccharides, proteins) and thus to a relative enrichment of the stable humus fraction rich in aromatic compounds (Zech *et al.* 1990).

The parent rock/material also has an effect on stabilizing organic matter in soil in that it determines to a great extent the type of clay minerals that will be formed upon weathering. The formation of interlayer clay-organic complexes, for instance, requires a smectitic clay mineralogy, an accumulation of organic matter associated with low microbial activity, and a highly acid soil reaction (Theng *et al.* 1986). Nayak *et al.* (1990) propose that a decreasing content of acidic groups in humic substances promotes their fixation by montmorillonite because of a lowering of the inter-particle repulsive forces as well as a reduction in hydratation energies; the net energy available for breaking down the clay-humus bonds would consequently be reduced. In absence of montmorillonite and calcium carbonate, and under conditions of good drainage and aeration, soil humus is less condensed and less stabile so that it can easily be destroyed by small alterations of the environment (Volkoff & Cerri 1980). Boudot *et al.* (1990) observed the gross mineralization rates of both N and C were inversely related to the content of amorphous-Al and allophanic materials, reflecting a good protection of organic matter by these materials. Conversely, the mineralization of deceased micro-organisms and newly formed metabolites did not seem to be affected by the mineralogical composition of the allophanic soil samples (Boudot *et al.* 1990). Generally, the stabilizing effect of clay size particles on organic matter decreases in the following order: allophane > amorphous or poorly crystalline Al-silicates > smectite > illite > kaolinite (see Van Breemen & Feijtel 1990).

Possible changes in soil weathering rates associated with a potential doubling of atmospheric CO_2 concentration and associated temperature increases have been discussed by Sombroek (1990). The CO_2 sink associated with weathering is generally much lower in areas with silicate rocks than in calcareous areas (Van Breemen & Feijtel 1990). The size of this sink will gradually decrease as the area affected by acid deposition increases. Consequently, the possible effects of acid deposition on organic matter dynamics should be studied as a lowered soil pH and associated nutrient losses may have an adverse effect on biotic diversity, biomass growth, and organic matter decomposition in soil.

Soil acidity slows down the decomposition of organic matter under tropical conditions although the differences between acid soils and neutrals soil become less marked with time (2 yr incubation period; Ayanaba & Jenkinson 1990). Jenkinson (1977) found similar results for acidic and neutral soils under temperate conditions, in which decomposition was markedly slower in the acidic soil during the first year or two. For tropical regions, Dabin (1980) showed that the decomposition of organic matter is always important in well drained media, even when soils are acid. Only an increase in the length of the dry season increased the fraction of non-decomposed organic matter, and at the same time caused a decrease in total C. In Brazil, the geographic distribution of soil organic matter under natural vegetation was shown to be principally determined by three factors: temperature (external), soil acidity and soil drainage (Volkoff & Cerri 1988). In the acid soils studied, the differentiation is first according to drainage, and thereafter according to temperature if the soil remains well drained. No effect of rainfall regime on soil organic matter contents was observed in the study of Volkoff & Cerri (1988).

4.3.4 Effects of soil structure

The higher stability of soil aggregates in pasture soils as compared to arable soils reflects the effect of higher levels of indigenous organic matter in producing more stable aggregates (Swift 1991). The physical protection of organic matter in soil varies with the degree of aggregation of the soil particles (soil structure) and the clay mineralogy (e.g., Sorensen 1975; Mendoca *et al.* 1991 and many others).

Organic substances in aggregates can increase the cohesion of clay fractions through H-bridges, covalent linkages, physical linkages by Van der Waal's forces, and complexation with metallic ions. Volkoff *et al.* (1984), for example, explained organic carbon accumulation by the formation of organo-mineral complexes stable with aluminium. Part of the humified organic matter in clayey Oxisols may be locked-up in organo-Fe complexes (Santos *et al.* 1989). The organic material in interlayer-clay complexes is resistant to H_2O_2 (peroxide) and pyrophosphate extraction, and thermally stable up to 400 °C (Theng *et al.* 1986).

Encrustation of plant debris is an important feature of many stable aggregates and a major mechanism responsible for protecting the enclosed plant debris (Waters & Oades 1991). Cell walls, humified hyphae, and other decomposed organic materials, easily identified in large pore spaces, are important in binding the clay particles in microaggregates of some Oxisols (Santos *et al.* 1989). The positive effect of soil organic matter in forming and stabilizing soil aggregates is not due to the soil organic matter as a whole but to specific components. The polysaccharides and soil humic substances are particularly important in this respect (see Swift 1991). Tisdall & Oades (1980) proposed a hierarchical conceptual model for soil aggregate structure in which various binding agents operate at different stages in the structural organization of aggregates. They grouped the organic binding agents into 3 functional groups: a) transient binding agents, consisting mainly of polysaccharides, which are readily decomposed by microorganisms; b) temporary binding agents such as thin roots and fungal hyphae; and c) persistent organic binding agents such as resistant aromatic components associated with polyvalent metal cations, and strongly sorbed polymers. Several subsequent and independent studies have confirmed that the nature and stability of organic matter in aggregates may change with the size of the aggregates. Macroaggregates of Red-Yellow latosols, for instance, contain more fulvic acids and less humic acids than the microaggregates (Méndoca *et al.* 1991). In an Australian krasnozem, the organic matter within microaggregates (< 0.2 mm) contained up to 32 % more "old" carbon than the remaining soil material 83 years after conversion from forest to pasture (Skjemstad *et al.* 1990). Van Veen & Paul (1981) observed soil organic matter is strongly complexed by inorganic colloids in so-called "water-stable" aggregates, in that it is oxidized with more difficulty by H_2O_2 than the organic matter of aggregates with low water stability. Similarly, Mendonca *et al.* (1991) found that the resistance of organic matter to oxidation is related to the soil structure, changing between the classes of aggregates (i.e., > 4, 4-2, 2-0.2, and 0.2-0.05 mm) and depth (*sensu* A1 and A3 horizons). The quantities of organic matter, Fe, Al, P and humic substances also varied between classes of aggregates and were influenced by soil cultivation. The macro- and micro-aggregates differed in organic matter-Fe complexation, which was shown to be influenced by the kind of organic matter present (Mendoca *et al.* 1991).

The calculated turnover rates for organic matter in the "heavy" soil fraction (> 1.6 g cm^{-3}) from the 0-7.5, 7.5-15 and 60-80 cm depth zone of a krasnozem soil was 60, 75 and 276 yr, respectively, while it was 75, 108 and 348 yr for organic matter within microaggregates from the same horizons (Skjemstad *et al.* 1990). Martin *et al.* (1990) found the turnover of coarse debris (> 250μm) was greater than the mineralization of the clay-associated fractions (< 20μm). Similarly, Elliot (1986), with reference to wet-sieved aggregates, suggested that C substrate availability to organisms increases with increasing aggregate size. Alternatively, Piccolo & Mbagwu (1990) observed a close relationship between aggregate stability and presence of high molecular humic substances (from pig slurry, cattle slurry and sewage slurry). Waters & Oades (1991) used scanning electron microscopy to confirm soil aggregates are not random assemblages of smaller particles, but that soil particles are stabilized in increasingly larger units by different organic binding agents.

Van Veen & Kuikman (1990) recently discussed the importance of spatial arrangement in soil on the availability of substrates to microorganisms. Upon cultivation the soil structure is disrupted and the aggregates are broken apart as a result of which a larger surface area is exposed to microbial attack (e.g., Waters & Oades 1991). Disruption of soils results in an increase in mineralization of both carbon and nitrogen, and it apparently reduces the protection of part of the originally physically protected soil organic matter against microbial attack (Gregorich *et al.* 1989).

4.3.5 Effects of texture

In many studies the content of organic matter in soil has been shown to be related to the textural composition. The general pattern appears to be that organic carbon is better protected from decomposition in fine textured (clayey) soils than in coarse-textured (sandy) soils (Kononova 1966; Korteleven 1963; Dabin 1980; Schimel *et al.* 1985; Spain *et al.* 1983; Feller 1991; many others), although clay mineralogy and soil structure are also of importance in this respect (Sections 4.3.3 and 4.3.4). The low physical protection of SOM in sandy savanna soils from Côte d'Ivoire, for instance, has been attributed to the low (5-6 %) clay content of mainly kaolinite minerals (Martin *et al.* 1990). Korteleven (1963) attributed the lower mineralization of soil organic matter in clay soils, as compared to sandy soils, to a physical protection of SOM and microbial biomass.

The C and N contents are correlated with the size of the silt and clay fractions ($r=0.92$ and $r=0.91$, respectively) in virgin soils of the semi-arid pampas, Argentina. These correlations disappear upon a change in land use to agricultural management and pasture (Buschiazzo *et al.* 1991). Bauer & Black (1981) reported more pronounced losses of both C and N in sandy soils than in medium to fine textured soils. Alternatively, over a 1-2 year period, soil texture had relatively little influence on the decay of organic matter in the soils studied by Ayanaba & Jenkinson (1990). A relative enrichment in organic carbon was observed only in the fine silt and clay fractions in the long term experiment described by Houot *et al.* (1991). Incorporation of straw into soil often maintains a high carbon content in the coarse fraction (Christensen & Sorensen 1985; Houot *et al.* 1991).

Feller (1991) studied the relative variation of soil organic matter within different size fractions as influenced by three cropping systems (i.e., clearing-cultivation succession; cultivation-fallow/pasture succession; cultivation plus organic amendments). For coarse textured soils, the main variations (plus or minus) in relation to the different cropping systems concerned mainly the "plant debris" (> 20 μm) followed by the "organo-silt" (2-20 μm) fraction, but very little the "organo-clay" (0-2 μm) fraction. For fine textured soils, the main variations (+ or -) concerned the "plant debris" and the "organo-clay" fractions. With respect to soil organic matter dynamics and biochemical processes the results of Feller (1991) indicate the major role of plant debris in sandy soils, and the importance of the "organo-clay" compartment in clayey soils.

The "protection" of organic matter by clay minerals has been considered in models. Verberne *et al.* (1990), for instance, divide the "active" organic matter into a physically protected component (POM) and a non-protected component (NOM) as a function of the clay + silt content, using a higher degree of protection for fine textured soils. The labile fraction, which includes root exudates and products of the microbial activity, was allocated to the fine clay fraction and the latter to the coarse clay fraction. Anderson & Paul (1984), however, found both labile and stabilized organic matter in the clay fraction. Similarly, Bonde (1991) found active, slow and passive SOM was present in all particle-size classes, but in varying proportions. Balesdent *et al.* (1988) observed the clay fraction included both the most stable C, and some labile C, whereas clay associated with fine silt had a turnover that suggested slow replacement of the whole fraction. These findings suggest that mechanical separation of particle-size classes and subsequent analysis of SOM content may not be sufficient to estimate the active, slow and passive fractions. This may make it difficult to determine SOM fractions, as needed for models, through physical separation alone (e.g., Bonde 1991).

Feller *et al.* (1991) used the "sonication/sodic resins" method to study the distribution of organic C in 19 tropical soils. The mean C/N quotient of the 0-2 μm, 2-20 μm and 20-2000 μm fraction were 10.5 ± 1.5, 16.5 ± 3.2 and 20.8 ± 4.4, respectively, decreasing from the coarse to the fine fractions. No significant differences in C/N quotient were found for the 0-0.2 and 0.2-2.0 μm fractions (clay). The C/N quotient of the 2-20 μm fraction is considered indicative for the presence of organic debris. In relative terms the 20-2000, 2-20 and 0-2 μm fractions represented 25, 26 and 47 % of the total C in the soils under consideration. Balesdent *et al.* (1991) found the organic C concentration in coarse clay was always higher than for the fine clay fraction; regressions of the quantities of organic C in the clay fractions *versus* the respective mass of these fractions yielded slopes of 32 ± 9 mg C g^{-1} coarse clay (0.2-2 μm) and 13 ± 5 mg C g^{-1} fine clay (< 0.2 μm). Similarly, Feller *et al.* (1991) observed that the organic C content of coarse clay fractions was significantly higher than the organic C content of the fine clay fraction. A possible explanation for the above phenomenon has not yet been proposed by the respective researchers.

Schnitzer *et al.* (1988) studied the organic matter associated with the fine clay fraction separated from the Ae horizon of a Typic Haplorthod. About half of the clay-associated organic matter consisted of humic materials; the other half was composed mainly of long chain aliphatics. The study indicated that long-chain aliphatics have low mobilities in soils and that it is fulvic acid that is capable of penetrating clay interlayers. Schnitzer *et al.* (1988) postulate that if aliphatics are present in clay interlayers, they have most likely been transported there by fulvic acids or other humic materials within which they are captured and that act as vehicles for the transport of hydrophobic materials within soil profiles.

Nelson *et al.* (1991) studied the relationship between soil properties and dissolved organic carbon (DOC) in Australian streams. The concentration of DOC in these streams was shown to depend on the clay content of the soils in the catchment area and the flow path of water through the soils. Some of the organic carbon transported by rivers will be deposited in alluvial or marine deposits or be degraded in the sea.

4.3.6 Effects of organisms

Ladd (1986) reviewed methods for following the turnover of organic matter in soils, and stressed the need for describing more precisely the key role of biota. The main role of organic carbon in soils is to function as energetic source, electron donor and provide organisms with growth structure. Beauchamp *et al.* (1989) reviewed the importance of carbon sources for microbes, with special reference to denitrifiers. Selected examples of how different organisms may affect the decomposition of organic matter in soil are presented below. Tinker & Ineson (1991) discuss possible effects of climate change upon the micro-organism species involved in the decomposition of organic matter.

Beck's (1989) measurement of microbial biomass and activity in a beech forest showed the role of saprophagous soil fauna in decomposing litter consisted in controlling the resource utilization of fungi. The soil fauna caused hyphal growth to utilize the litter as the primary food resource, whereas in the absence of soil fauna fungi consumed their own decaying hyphal mass. In the study under consideration the main role of soil fauna consisted in controlling the kind and speed of litter decomposition by interaction with the microflora, especially by controlling microfloral growth.

Interactions between different types of organisms are also possible. Bacterial feeding nematodes, for instance, affect the decomposition of organic matter in various ways (Freckman 1988): a) by feeding on microbes and regulating the rate at which organic compounds are degraded into inorganic forms; b) by dispersing microbes throughout the soil and water; c) by feeding on saprophytic and plant pathogenic bacteria, and by influencing the composition of the microbial community; d) by serving as prey and a source of nutrient for fauna and microflora, such as soil nematophagous fungi; and e) by affecting the distribution and function of plant symbionts.

Absence of soil animals and restricted microbial decomposition in an acid soil was responsible for the formation of mor type humus (Hopkins *et al.* 1990). In case of mull soils under beech forest, a greater number of species, greater faunal biomass ($\approx$ 15 g dry mass m^{-2}), dominance of macrofauna and microfauna, and a greater trophic diversity with a preponderance of saprophagous animals has been reported (Schaeffer & Schauermann 1990). Alternatively, moder soils under beech forests have a smaller number of species, smaller faunal biomass ($\approx$ 5 g dry mass m^{-2}) and more mesofaunal microphytophagous animals. Mull forming fauna penetrate deeper into soil than moder forming soil fauna (Schaefer & Schauermann 1990).

The rapid turnover of SOM in especially the upper 10 cm of savanna soils from Côte d'Ivoire has been attributed to the intense activity of earthworms in this layer (Martin *et al.* 1990). Differences exist between various earthworm species. *Lumbricus rubellus*, for instance, stimulated microbial respiration by 15 % in a coniferous forest soil whereas *Denrobaena octaedra*, another earthworm, stimulated it only slightly (Haimi & Hutha 1990). Alternatively, termites play a major role in decomposing litter in savannas. In semi-arid bushland from Northern Kenya, they consumed 50 % of the grass litter and 4 % of the woody litter from the original plant litter substrates. The termites were estimated to consume about 298 g m^{-2} of litter per year, corresponding with about 61 % of the estimated annual net primary production (Bagine 1989). Additionally, termites are an important source of methane (see Chapter 2).

Respiration by the fauna responsible for decomposition causes a net increase in CO_2 levels in the soil rhizosphere. As a result the concentration of CO_2 dissolved in soil solution may increase ($H_2O + CO_2 \dashrightarrow H^+ + HCO_3^-$). Upon reaching open-water surfaces, the CO_2 dissolved in aqueous solution will equilibrate with the atmospheric CO_2 levels; the surplus of CO_2 will be released to the atmosphere by degassing. Draining of waterlogged areas to improve wood production thus can lead to increased CO_2 emissions (Eriksson 1991). Alternatively, in case of peat soils drainage may also increase the oxidation of peat releasing an additional amount of CO_2.

4.3.7 Effects of vegetation

Vegetation is the main source of organic matter input into soil. In forest ecosystems most of the fresh organic residues are in the litter layer, while under pasture they are predominantly in the dense root mats. Both the quantity, nature, and spatial distribution of these fresh organic residues may have an effect on organic matter in soil. Different results have been reported in different studies.

Different rates of decomposition were recorded for different components of vascular plants in a Georgian wetland (Moran *et al.* 1989). Additionally, changes in rates of decomposition of each component changed over time, so that the specific rate of decay of each fraction decreased as decomposition proceeded. The kinetics of decomposition were best described by a decaying coefficient model which treats plant detritus as a single component but allows for a decreasing specific decomposition rate as material ages (Moran *et al.* 1989). This model accommodates changes in quality of plant detritus which result from the preferential decomposition of more labile components (e.g., non-lignocellulose material and holocellulose) and the relative accumulation of more refractory components (e.g., lignin) observed with time. Bosatta & Agren (1991) also consider initial litter quality as a parameter in distinguishing different organic materials. Jenkinson *et al.* (1991) use different "decomposable plant material" over "resistant plant material" (DPM/RPM) ratios for forests (0.25), tropical woodland and savanna (0.43), deserts, tundra and cool temperature steppe (0.5), and for cultivated land and temperate thorn steppe (0.67) in the ROTHAMSTED model.

Hopkins *et al.* (1988) observed no significant effects of grass species on the turnover of organic matter in some grassland soils. Similarly, Krosshavn *et al.* (1990) found no correlation between the vegetational background and chemical structure of terrestrial humus. Changes in amounts and nature of photosynthates added to freely drained soils will not change the composition of the organic matter; the latter is controlled by the microbial biomass and interactions of the biomass and its decomposition products with the soil matrix (Oades *et al.* 1988). Conversely, other studies show the chemical composition of plant debris influences the rate of decomposition of organic matter in soil. Weakly acidic to neutral pH values for organic materials stimulated soil respiration under spruce while a low pH value (< 2.1) inhibited it (Wilhelmi & Rothe 1990). Besides the pH, the relative proportions of compounds such as cellulose, hemicellulose and lignin are important in that they determine the recalcitrance of organic material to breakdown (e.g Alexander 1977; Moran *et al.* 1989). The degree of recalcitrance of certain of these components can be modified by the drainage condition, increasing with anaerobiosis (see Colberg 1988).

In the modelling study of Pastor & Post (1986) patterns of soil organic matter are related to differences in initial organic matter levels and differences between successional species, especially in the amounts of woody litter produced (Aspen and Pin cherry). Decomposition of young *Calluna vulgaris* was shown to be slower than that of young grass material; in this case the plant species affected organic matter accumulation (Hopkins *et al.* 1988). The rate of litter decomposition was inversely related to lignin content and the lignin/N ratio of litter in a study comprising a mixed terra firma forest, a tall Amazonian catinga and a low bana (campina) forest on Podsolized sands (Cuevas & Medina 1988). Alternatively, Cepeda-Pizarro & Whitford (1990) observed differences between decomposition of litter from the locally dominant species and Creosote bush leaf litter in some instances, but these differences could not be attributed to differences in lignin content nor C:N ratio.

The regeneration form of certain plants such as *Protea* has an influence on the "root:shoot" ratio (Smith & Higgins 1990), and thereby on soil organic matter evolution. *Erasgrotis curvula* pastures were more effective in restoring the organic matter and N levels in sandy, but not in loamy soils (Haplic Phaeozems and Kastanozems) with respect to the original undisturbed semi-arid pampas. This could be due to a better efficiency of roots of *E. curvula*, as compared to the autochthonous grass species, to produce humifiable residues in coarse textured soils than in fine textured soils (Buschiazzo *et al.* 1991). Skjemstad *et al.* (1990) observed that of two grasses, *Pennisetum clandestinum* gave more input of organic matter into the 7.5-15.0 cm layer of a krasnozem than *Paspalum dilatatum*. In the other layers considered, however, both grasses performed equally. Schiffman & Johnson (1989) reported old field plantations of *Pinus taeda* store more carbon than natural forests of *P. virginiana* by 42 Mg ha^{-1} (≈ 22 %), with most of the gain being in the phytomass. Regeneration or succession may thus influence how the biomass is distributed and later degraded in soil. This points at the importance of considering sample site vegetation and cultivation history in studies of soil organic matter.

Growing roots are a significant source of readily accessible C for microbial biomass and render an additional fraction of soil organic carbon available to microbial utilization (e.g., Lynch 1990). Consequently, growing plant roots often have a priming effect on the breakdown of soil organic matter (e.g., Helal & Sauerbeck 1986; Lynch 1990). Alternatively, in "drier" climates plant roots may compete for moisture with the decomposing organisms.

Bazzaz & Williams (1991), studied changes in atmospheric CO_2 levels with height in a mixed deciduous forest in New England, and found the CO_2 concentrations in the forest may be quite different from those in bulk air. Consequently, seedlings, saplings and mature trees may experience different CO_2 environments for which they may exhibit different responses in photosynthesis, growth and water use. Graham *et al.* (1990) discuss the potential effects of changed climate and elevated CO_2 on key ecological processes for each level of biotic organization (i.e., the biosphere, the biome, the ecosystem, and the tree). Patterson & Flint (1990) recently prepared a review of the possible effects of increasing atmospheric CO_2 levels and climate change for plant communities in natural and managed ecosystems. Increasing atmospheric CO_2 to twice ambient levels, the usual assumption in General Circulation Models (GCMs), will generally increase biomass production although the magnitude of growth simulation will vary greatly with species, photosynthetic pathway (more for C_3 and less for C_4 plants), growth stage, and water and nutrient status. Weeds and other plants with broad ecological amplitudes are likely to prosper at the expense of endemic species or species already in marginal habitats. This will have repercussions for the incorporation of organic detritus in soils, the breakdown of organic matter and development of new steady state conditions for soil organic C pools as the process of global climate change evolves. The study of Aerts *et al.* (1988), for instance, showed *Erica tetralix* will probably be replaced by *Molinia caerula* in a wet heathland when available nutrient levels increase as a result of atmospheric deposition of e.g. Nitrogen, which in turn will lead to an increased flow of carbon and nutrients into the soil system. Alternatively, Wookey & Ineson (1991) showed that realistic concentrations of "dry deposited" SO_2, a well known atmospheric pollutant, can induce marked chemical and biological changes in forest litter. Some organic carbon may also be deposited with polluted rainfall, especially in forest areas (Bartels 1990). This again shows the need for long term impact studies of the formation of soil organic matter and organic carbon and nutrient cycling, particularly in forest ecosystems prone to atmospheric pollution.

4.3.8 Effects of land use changes or succession

Introduction

Over long periods of time carbon storage in soils can vary due to climatic-, geologic- and soil- changes, while over short time periods vegetation disturbances or succession, and land use conversion mainly affect storage (Zinke *et al.* 1986). Upon cultivation soil carbon contents may decline because of a variety of processes, including the removal of topsoil by mechanical clearing, disruption of aggregates and increased oxidation of organic matter or increased accessibility of organic matter to decomposing organisms. According to Buringh (1984), the estimated average loss of soil carbon after conversion of forest to cropland is 48 %, of forest to grassland 28 %, and of forest to mixed cropland and grassland 35 % over a 1 m depth interval. Other values have been proposed by different researchers in view of the occurring uncertainties (see Bouwman 1990a). It is however apparent from the magnitude of the above changes that especially changes from forest to agricultural use will have a marked direct effect on soil C pool size and thereby CO_2 evolution to the atmosphere.

There is an abundant literature quantifying C-losses associated to cultivation (e.g., Mann 1986; Bouwman 1990a). Of necessity, these reviews are based on data from earlier studies. Few of these investigations consider the kind of sampling density and intensity required to reveal significant changes in soil organic C upon a change in land use practices. Nor are they necessarily based on similar analytical procedures for assessing soil carbon contents. Several methodological aspects of relevance in modelling global C pools and possible changes therein are discussed in Section 4.5.4. In this part of the report selected examples of how changes in land use or succession may influence soil organic matter pools are discussed.

Time to achieve steady state conditions

In any undisturbed soil, the organic matter content will stabilize at an equilibrium level characteristic of the permanent soil characteristics and land use or vegetation cover. When soils are first placed under cultivation the organic matter content usually declines. Thereafter, a prolonged period of constant management is required to reach a new equilibrium. In the long term Deherain field experiment, for instance, which started in 1875 with a wheat-sugar beat rotation to compare the effects of organic amendments and mineral fertilizers, soil organic matter has presently reached equilibrium and the various pools are constant (Houot *et al.* 1991). It takes at least 10-30 years before a new organic carbon equilibrium is reached in soil (Buringh 1984). Brown & Lugo (1990) found that the time for recovery of soil C and N during succession was similar in the three subtropical life zones under consideration, being about 40-50 yr for C and 15-20 yr for N, respectively. They observed that the rate of recovery of soil C was more rapid in the wet and moist life zone, whereas N seemingly recovered faster in the dry life zone (Brown & Lugo 1990). About 30 yr was needed for soil organic matter to be stabilized in the tidal marsh environment studied by Hsieh & Weber (1984). The dynamics of soil organic matter evolution and turnover in soil can be studied using a range of mathematical models (see Section 4.2.3).

Conversion of forest to arable land or pasture

Forests contain from 20 to 100 times more organic C per unit area than agricultural land so that conversion of forest to cropland or pasture generally reduces the amount of organic carbon on land (Houghton 1990). Detwiler (1986) reports that cultivation reduced the carbon content by 40 % 5 years after clearing whereas the use of the same tropical soils for pasture reduced it by about 20 %. Generally, the carbon content of soils used by shifting cultivators returns to the level found under primary forest about 35 years after abandonment (Detwiler 1986). With increasing population density, however, the length of the "restoration cycle" rapidly drops below this recommended level. On an all India basis, for example, the total area affected by shifting cultivation has increased by about 81 % (from 2,710 to 4,912 million ha) during the period 1956 to 1984/85. During the same time period the annual area under shifting cultivation increased from about 0.542 to 1.000 million ha (≈ 84 %), reflecting the severity of the problem. Kaul (1991) estimated that over 151 million tons of forest biomass (dry weight) was burnt annually in India during the period 1985-1987, the major contribution being from tree biomass (88 %), burning of litter (8 %) and grasses (3.5 %). This corresponds with some 68 million tons of carbon evolved as CO_2.

Sanchez *et al.* (1983) studied the changes in soil properties during the first 8 years after clearing of a 17 yr old secondary forest (slashed, burned, then crops for 8 yr ± fertilization) in Peru. The rate of organic carbon decomposition averaged 25 % during the first year and then levelled off; no significant differences due to fertility treatment were detected during the study period.

Chone *et al.* (1991) studied the effects of burning and deforestation on soil organic matter in the topsoil of two managed Oxisols in Manau (<2 mm fraction; treatments: natural forest, before and after slash and burning, and under pasture established for 1, 2 and 8 years). Under natural forest, the organic carbon content reached maximal values of 28 t ha^{-1} in the 0-3 cm layer, 62 t ha^{-1} in the 3-20 cm layer, and decreased rapidly with depth. Burning removed about 4 t ha^{-1} of organic carbon, chiefly from the 0-3 cm soil layer, but this loss was recovered after one year of pasture (Choné *et al.* 1991). Decreases of about 8 t ha^{-1} after 1 year and 28 t ha^{-1} after 2 years were observed in the 3-20 cm layers, probably because the humification of grass root residues did not balance the decomposition of pre-existing SOM from natural forest. After 8 years of pasture, however, the initial organic carbon content of surface soil had been almost entirely restored, including the 3-20 cm layer. The introduction of graminaceous vegetation in succession to forest may stimulate microorganisms during the initial years as a result of which they also decompose residues and even humified material from the original forest (Chone *et al.* 1991). Clear-felling of tropical rainforest soils and subsequent cropping with pastures caused an initial decrease in microbial biomass, followed by an increase in 1-2 yr old pastures and a subsequent decrease in 8 yr old pastures (Bonde 1991 p. 24).

Brown & Lugo (1990), in a study encompassing mature and secondary forests and agricultural sites in three subtropical life zones of the US Virgin Islands and Puerto Rico, observed that conversion of forests to pasture resulted in less soil C and N loss than conversion to crops. Choné *et al.* (1991) observed that entrance of organic C derived from pasture (upon clearing of natural forest) proceeded mainly from the soil surface, suggesting that the contribution of aerial parts of pasture was higher than that of root deposits during the initial period. After 8 yr of pasture, however, there was a great contribution of carbon from both the aerial parts and root deposits of the pasture, and soil carbon content was then again close to that observed under natural forest.

Conversion of grassland and cropland to forest

Martin *et al.* (1990) studied the medium term dynamics of organic matter in sandy savanna soils from Latimo, Côte D'Ivoire, looking at the change in the $^{13}C/^{12}C$ ratio induced by vegetation changes from C_4 to C_3 photosynthetic plants. After 25 years of protection from fire, a soil previously covered by C_4 grassland vegetation had been progressively colonized by C_3 woody plants. Although the total C content did not differ markedly, 52-70 % of the original C_4 carbon was turned over when the vegetation cover was changed.

Schiffman & Johnson (1991) found that natural reforestation of old agricultural fields over a 50-70 yr period increased carbon storage from about 55,000 to 185,000 kg ha^{-1} ($\approx$ + 235 %). Carbon in the phytomass accounted for 76 % of the increase, the forest floor for 13 %, and surface soil for 10 %. The contemporary practice of converting natural *P. virginiana* forest to *P. taeda* plantations, however, yielded only a small gain in carbon, most of which is stored in phytomass scheduled for harvesting and not in detritus.

Conversion of natural grassland soils to crop land

The review of Schlesinger (1986) indicates that the loss of carbon from soil profiles on cultivation is about 30 % over a 20-50 yr period. Tiessen *et al.* (1982) studied the losses of C, N and P when three prairie soils of different texture were cultivated. In this study, the concentrations of organic carbon were reduced to about 35 % in clay and silt soils after 60 to 70 years of cultivation. Reductions in N concentrations ranged from 18 to 34 % and were influenced by the presence or absence of legume crops. Phosphorus losses were reduced by 12 % and all P losses were accounted for by losses from the organic fraction. During a similar period of cultivation a lighter texture sandy soil had greater losses of C, N, and P of 46, 46, and 29 %, respectively, with P losses occurring both in the organic and inorganic fractions. The average soil organic matter content under Dutch grasslands was shown to be 2 to 5 times higher than that of "cropland", and to increase with clay and silt content (Korteleven 1963).

Annual tillage in an experiment changed the dominant plant species from grasses to annual herbs as a result of which carbon storage in the surface 15 cm of soil was reduced by 24 % (679 g C m^{-2}), 76 % of which was due to a reduction in root biomass (Richter *et al.* 1990). Relatively small changes were found in mineral soil organic C from annual tillage, i.e., about 1 mg C g^{-1} soil (Richter *et al.* 1990). Bauer & Black (1981) found that average organic C and total N contents were significantly higher under wheat stubble mulch than conventional tillage management.

Under irrigation the pool size of organic carbon in soils of arid regions will tend to increase. The potential for changes in the storage of inorganic carbon in soil carbonates when arid lands are irrigated has been discussed by Schlesinger (1986 p. 206). Generally, irrigation will result in dissolution of a part of the carbonates present. Nettleton *et al.* (1990) extensively discuss the occurrence of calcium carbonate in soils.

Effects of cultivation upon the distribution of organic matter in arable land

In a long-term experiment addition of lower organic inputs (roots, crop residues, farmyard manure) caused the total soil organic carbon to decrease, and this mostly in the silt and clay fractions (Houot *et al.* 1991). In the long term study of Hang *et al.* (1988) cultivation caused a relative shift of organic matter from the sand and the silt fractions towards the fine clay fractions in Iowa soils displaying similar climate, parent material, time and slope. Two years of growing *Digitaria decumbens* in a Vertisol from Martinique markedly increased the C and N contents; fractionation of the organic matter indicated that this increase occurred mainly in the >50 μm fraction (plant residues) and < 5 μm fraction (organo-mineral) (Chotte 1988). Similarly, Feller (1988) observed the fractions most affected by different cropping systems (grassland, fallow and crop rotation) on selected Vertisols and Ferallitic soils mainly were the 5-200 μm (plant residues) and organo-mineral (<5 μm) fractions.

The effects of land use on soil carbon content generally become negligible somewhere between a depth of 10-60 cm, the wide range being attributed to differences in life zones, soil type and land use (Detwiler 1986). Other studies have presented evidence for loss of soil carbon during cultivation up to a soil depth of 50 to 100 cm (Brown & Lugo 1990). Mann (1985) reported an average 40 % difference in carbon concentration (0-15 cm) between all cultivated and uncultivated loess derived Alfisols and Mollisols in a study of the changes in soil carbon following cultivation. The carbon content of the total profile data was 28 % lower in cultivated as compared to the uncultivated Udalfs studied, and 11 % greater in cultivated *versus* uncultivated Udolls (only one soil series). After 60 years of cultivation, total soil organic C, N, and P had declined by 55-63 % in the surface 15 cm in the study of Bowman *et al.* (1990), with about half of this loss occurring in the first 3 years of cultivation. In comparison the labile fractions of the organic C and N declined by 67-75 % after 60 years, but over 80 % of the labile C loss and more than 60 % of the labile N loss occurred during the first 3 years of cultivation. Half of the total P decline came from the organic pool, representing about a 60 % decrease in the organic P levels in the first 3 years.

The organic matter content in soil can also increase under cultivation, provided large amounts of organic material of good quality are added. An extreme example are the Anthropogenic soils which have received large amounts of farm-refuse over a prolonged period of time. As an example, the "Terra Preto do Indios" in Brazil may be cited (see Sombroek 1966). Similarly, soils of the Rothamsted Classical experiments, which have received 35 t ha^{-1} farm yard manure (FYM) each year since their start in the 1840s and 1850s, now have about 3.5 % C compared to 1 % C initially (Johnston 1991). Between 1942-1967 annual applications of 37.5 t ha^{-1} of FYM to the sand loam at Woburn increased organic carbon from 0.87 to 1.64 % C; doubling the FYM input gave an increase to 2.26 % C. The soil humus content began to decline rapidly when the FYM was no longer applied; in the first 5 years, soils which had received the single and double FYM lost 0.17 and 0.41 % C, respectively (Johnston 1991).

Effects of forest harvesting

Activity of logging machinery in the study of Johnson *et al.* (1991) resulted in the redistribution of organic matter within the solum; the thickness of the O horizon decreased while the O horizon mass and organic matter content increased (from 8.7-12.2 kg m^{-2} and from 5.4-5.7 kg m^{-2}, respectively). One fourth of the post-harvest soils exhibited an Ap horizon which was not present prior to harvesting, and was made up of material from the O, E and Bh horizons. Compaction during logging resulted in a 5-15 % increased bulk density in the upper 20 cm of the mineral soil (This means that use of uniform soil sampling intervals for studying changes in soil C may not be truly indicative of carbon changes in cases where the bulk density has changed). The total pool of organic C in the solum did not change following harvesting. Losses of organic matter via streamwater and respiration were approximately balanced by inputs from decaying roots and leaf litter (Johnson *et al.* 1991).

Huntington & Ryan (1990) quantitatively assessed the C and N pools before and after whole-tree harvesting (0 resp. 3 yr after) in a 65 yr old second growth northern broadleaf forest at Hubbard Brook. The aim of the study was to assess whether cutting would reduce or redistribute the C and N pools within soil compartments. Logging operations resulted in immediate disturbance which displaced or buried the original forest floor over 24 % of the watershed. Mechanical disturbance contributed to an increase in variability of soil N and C pool-size estimates, and made it more difficult to distinguish forest-floor/mineral soil boundary in the field.

Five main processes essentially explain changes in organic matter pools, bulk density, and horizonation following whole tree harvesting (Johnson *et al.* 1991):

a) leaching loss of organic matter from the solum to streams;
b) respiration;
c) decay of root biomass;
d) physical disturbance and mixing induced by logging machinery; and
e) accelerated decomposition and translocation of organic matter from the O horizon to the upper mineral soil.

Effects of fire/burning

Inherently, the intensity of fire will be related to the nature and amount of biomass burned as well as moisture and wind conditions. Zinke *et al.* (1978) observed that during a fire temperature may surpass 600 °C at 1-2 cm above the soil, whereas at a depth of 3 cm soil temperature did not seem to surpass 70 °C except under concentrated piles of fuel (cited in Detwiler 1986). Ghuman & Lal (1989) measured soil temperature at several depths following biomass burning in windrows following clearing of a primary rainforest in southern Nigeria. During burning the maximum soil temperatures rose to 218, 150, 104 and 70 °C at 1, 5, 10, and 20 cm depths, respectively.

No general tendencies can be identified for fire-induced changes in the content and composition of organic matter in soil. The processes for the incorporation and denaturalization of the humic fraction greatly depend on the soil geochemistry, as well as on such external factors as the type of vegetation and the morphology of soil epipedon (Almendos *et al.* 1990). Burning clearly affected the content of organic carbon in the 0-3 cm layer in the study of Chone *et al.* (1991). Hernani *et al.* (1987a), however, observed the total organic C content above and below a depth of 4 cm did not decrease significantly as a result of burning. Similarly, Greene *et al.* (1990) found no significant effect of fire "treatments" on the total organic carbon content of the 0-1 cm layer in a semi-arid eucalypt woodland. The fire reduced the percentage of water-stable aggregates (> 2 mm), but increased the percentage of aggregates (<0.25 mm) in the 0-1 cm layer relative to the unburnt control (Greene *et al.* 1990). As was indicated earlier, part of the biomass consumed by fire may remain in soil as recalcitrant charcoal (Skjemstad *et al.* 1990). Slow burning of standing trees is also a possible mechanism for producing "wood-ash stone", composed mainly of calcite, in nutrient poor acidic soil parent materials (Humphrey *et al.* 1987).

Jones *et al.* (1990) studied how soil organic matter and biological factors respond to burning regime. Surface soils (0-15 cm) were sampled from plots burned annually, biennially and triennially in winter, as well as in plots protected from fire for 34 years. The organic C content was 25 % higher in the protected plot than in the burned plots, where there was a gradual decrease in carbon with increasing fire frequency. Total N followed the same trend, as did the N mineralization potential. Nitrogen mineralization showed a much greater sensitivity than total N to burning frequency. Burning may severely reduce the amount of microbial biomass present in the surface layer (Cerri *et al.* 1985). Jones *et al.* (1990), for instance, observed microbial biomass was double on their unburned plot relative to the burned plots (0.008 % as compared to 0.004 %). Santos & Grisi (1979) observed that while the microbial activity under undisturbed tropical rain forest decreased with soil depth, it increased with soil depth in burned areas, reflecting the possible effect of burning on soil fertility and soil dynamics.

Burning of vegetation often has a short term positive effect on soil biological processes. It can cause the release of nutrients by direct oxidation during the fire, and often leads to an increase in temperature due to removal of shading and blackening of the surface, and increase in surface pH through the formation of oxides of bases, and an increase in moisture content of the surface because of cessation of transpiration, microbial activity increases (Post 1990).

The flaming stage of biomass burning produces higher oxidized products, while methane is mainly formed during smouldering combustion (Lobert *et al.* 1990; Kuhlbusch *et al.* 1990). The CO/CO_2 emission ratio is as a good indicator for the extent of smouldering combustion. Post (1990 p. 20) expressed the ratio of CH_4/CO_2 emission resulting from biomass burning as a function of the temperature index CO_2/CO with $Y = a*X^b$. In this expression Y is the CH_4/CO_2 ratio, X the molar CO_2/CO ratio with $a = 0.1187$ and $b = -1.17$ fitted by the least squares technique.

Effects of fire and/or drainage in peatlands

In case of peatlands, the intensity of fire and the amount of organic matter that is oxidized depend not only on current weather but also on the antecedent weather and its effect on the water table (see Post 1990). Large reserves of carbon exist in soils and peats of the boreal and tundra ecosystems which are estimated to contain 350 Pg C (Post *et al.* 1985). Estimates of peat stored in bogs range from 180 Pg to 280 Pg C (Gorham 1988). These ecosystems are thought to be small net sinks of atmospheric carbon ($\approx$ 0.1-0.3 Pg C yr^{-1}) since the last glacial retreat (Miller 1981; Gorham 1988), reflecting the imbalance of organic matter production over decomposition. Alternatively, Kling *et al.* (1991) observe that the above estimates of the carbon balance are only for the "terrestrial" part of the ecosystems. Their measurements of the partial CO_2 pressure (pCO_2) in 20 aquatic ecosystems across arctic Alaska, in most cases, showed that CO_2 was released to the atmosphere. This CO_2 probably originated in terrestrial environments; erosion of particulate carbon plus ground water transport of dissolved carbon from tundra contribute to the CO_2 flux from surface water to the atmosphere. If this system is representative for that of other tundra areas, Kling *et al.* (1991) believe current estimates of the arctic terrestrial sink for atmospheric CO_2 may be 20 % too high.

Delaune *et al.* (1990) recently modelled the processes governing marsh formation. Due to natural accretion, Histosols may absorb about 0.2 Pg C yr^{-1} (Buringh 1984). This value was obtained by assuming an average accretion of 0.5 to 1 mm yr^{-1}, an average bulk density of 0.25 g cm^{-3} and an average carbon content of 50 %, in conjunction with the extent of Histosols delineated on the FAO/Unesco soil map. This type of estimates could readily be refined on a georeferenced basis using the future WISE data base.

The net release of CO_2 from wetlands upon drainage amounts to 0.15-0.18 Pg C yr^{-1} according to Armentao & Menges (1986). According to Schlesinger (1986) drainage and cultivation may release 0.03 Pg C yr^{-1} from organic soils of the world, transforming peatlands areas from a sink to a source of atmospheric CO_2 (Schlesinger 1986). About 1.6 to 3.1 Pg C yr^{-1} in additional releases of CO_2, and somewhat greater than 0.22 Pg C yr^{-1} in additional releases of CH_4 to the atmosphere may occur as a result of the climate change scenarios modelled by Post (1990). These figures reflect the potential significance of climate change impacts in especially the boreal and tundra regions (see Post 1990 p. 14).

Carbon losses associated with erosion

The importance of organic matter in protecting soils from water and wind erosion is well known. Organic matter essentially affects the soil's susceptibility towards "on site" erosion, as opposed to "off-site erosion", through its effects on surface aggregate stability, surface sealing and crusting, and soil porosity (e.g., Gabriels & Michiels 1991). As water erosion sorts soil particles by size and weight, the smallest and lightest particles are moved furthest. Since these are the "active" fractions from a biological point of view, it is likely that superficial organic materials in depositional areas are easily decomposable (e.g., Voroney *et al.* 1981; Tiessen & Stewart 1983; Anderson *et al.* 1981).

Voroney *et al.* (1981) modelled soil organic C dynamics and found that organic C levels decreased rapidly when water erosion was included as an output of the model. Similarly, Tiessen *et al.* (1982) reported that organic matter levels in untilled grasslands continued to decline after 90 years because of erosion. Erosion caused an extra loss of organic C of at least 7 % after a 100 year cultivation period in the simulation study of Bouwman (1990b). Erosion runoff experiments in Ontario have shown that 20 yr of continuous maize production has caused soil organic matter content to decrease by up to 20 % (Voroney 1988).

Selected studies of organic C losses associated with erosion illustrate the possible magnitude of the problem. In Western Nigeria, C losses from bare-fallow Alfisol plots with slopes of 1, 5, and 10 % varied from 54 to 3080 kg ha^{-1} (Lal as cited by Gabriels & Michiels 1991). Hernani *et al.* (1987b) studied C losses from Yellow Latosol (Ultic Haplorthox) plots with a 14 % slope. The annual losses of organic matter varied with management practices, amounting to 497, 32, 7.2 kg ha^{-1} for "total clearing by bulldozer", "total burning", "all forest material left on site (mounding)" as compared to only 0.9 kg ha^{-1} for the intact forest plots. Using rainfall simulators Lowrance & Williams (1988) found that continuous fallow plots had significantly higher C concentrations in runoff and higher sediment concentrations. The highest C content measured in runoff was 5.83 % for a four-row peanut plot. Total loads of C and sediment and total runoff were about twice as high as for their bare bedded plots. About 1 % of the total soil C, from the 0-29 cm zone, could be moved annually from the continuous fallow plots in the experiment of Lowrance & Williams (1988). The total amount of C transported depended on surface runoff, and the C content of the eroded sediments was related to the crop residue cover (Lowrance & Williams 1988). Bouwman (1990a) calculated a possible C loss of 0.15 to 0.30 ton C ha^{-1} by assuming a total soil loss in the range 5-10 t ha^{-1} and average soil organic carbon content of 3 % in the eroded materials.

Assessing changes in SOM following succession with the $D^{13}C$ technique[2]

Plants differ in their capability to take up atmospheric CO_2 during the process of photosynthesis (e.g., Smith & Epstein 1971; Bazzaz & Fajer 1991). Plants with a Calvin cycle (abbreviated as C_3 plants) are more discriminative against the natural radioisotope ^{13}C than those with a Hatch-Slack cycle (C_4). This means that changes in climax vegetation from either C_4 to C_3 plants or from C_3 to C_4 plants provide a natural labelling of organic matter. Many researchers radioisotopic labelling has been used for studying the dynamics of organic matter incorporation into soil, both in time and with depth. For instance, where forest is cleared to grassland (i.e., C_3 to C_4 vegetation; Cerri *et al.* 1985; Balesdent *et al.* 1977; Bonde 1991; Chone *et al.* 1991; Skjemstad *et al.* 1990) or where a climax grassland vegetation is reafforested (i.e., C_4 to C_3; Balesdent *et al.* 1988; Martin *et al.* 1990). Mean $D^{13}C$ values of C_3 plants are in the order of -26 to -27 $^{o}/_{oo}$ while this is about -12 $^{o}/_{oo}$ for C_4 plants (Balesdent *et al.* 1988; Chone *et al.* 1991). Martin *et al.* (1990) reported mean $D^{13}C$ values of -12.9 to -15.8 $^{o}/_{oo}$ for savanna soils and of -27.5 to -23.5 $^{o}/_{oo}$ for forest soils. Lobo *et al.* (1988) consider $D^{13}C$ values of -33.1 and -26.7 $^{o}/_{oo}$ as being representative of organic matter derived from a forest vegetation.

$D^{13}C$ values of "under-canopy" leaves in a tropical rain forests were always more negative than those from the upper canopy (i.e., -32.9 to -36.0 *versus* -28.8 to -32.6 $^{o}/_{oo}$, respectively), and this difference varied with the tree species. Leaves, stems and roots of the same plants show small differences in $D^{13}C$ values (Medina *et al.* 1986). In adult trees maximum differences in $D^{13}C$ between upper canopy leaves and bark from the main trunk at 1.t m height ranged from 0.7 $^{o}/_{oo}$ in *Micrandra sprucei* to 3.1 $^{o}/_{oo}$ in *Eperuara purpurea*. Such differences will be reflected in the $D^{13}C$ of litter that falls on the ground. The ^{13}C isotopic composition of organic matter in soil is not constant with depth. In the litter layer of well drained acid soils Volkoff & Cerri (1988) observed a slight enrichment in ^{13}C. Two scenarios are however possible for the deeper layers depending on whether the soil is under forest or savanna. In the case of forest there is a progressive enrichment in ^{13}C with depth (Volkoff *et al.* 1978; Bonde *et al.* 1991), whereas under savanna the opposite pattern is observed (Volkoff & Cerri 1987). Bonde *et al.* (1991) found $D^{13}C$ values in the forest soils under consideration ranged from less than -28 $^{o}/_{oo}$ in the topsoil to about -26 $^{o}/_{oo}$ in the deepest layers. Similarly, Bertram (1985) reports a linear enrichment of ^{13}C of about 2 $^{o}/_{oo}$ from the soil surface down to the bottom of the aerated layer of undisturbed forest soils from Scandinavia and Germany. This effect has been attributed to carbon isotope fractionation during the microbial degradation of soil organic matter. Microbes would preferentially "consume" the isotopically lighter material, because it is energetically easier to "decompose" its bondings, so that the residual organic matter becomes enriched in ^{13}C (Bertram 1985).

---

[2] $D^{13}C$ (in ‰) = 1000 ‰ x [$(^{13}C/^{12}C)_{sample}$ - $(^{13}C/^{12}C)_{PDB}$)] / $(^{13}C/^{12}C)_{PDB}$; with PDB the standard.

The decrease in D^{13}C values from fresh under-canopy litter to decomposing litter and soil organic matter may also be related to changes in the chemical composition during the decomposition process (Medina *et al.* 1986). Natelhoffer & Fry (1988) found no evidence for selective preservation of ^{13}C depleted litter components, such as lignin, during long-term decomposition of organic matter in surface soils of oak forests (*Quercus* spp.).

Atmospheric CO_2 levels vary with height within a forest and may affect photosynthesis (see Bazzaz & Fajer 1991). Alternatively, Medina *et al.* (1986) report lower D^{13}C values of the shade flora under a tropical rain forest may primarily result from the assimilation of CO_2 depleted in D^{13}C which originates from soil respiration; the study of Medina *et al.* (1986) did not specify whether the shade flora was of the C_3 or C_4 type. The D^{13}C of soil CO_2 also varies as a function of soil depth due to differences in the D^{13}C of the organic substrate undergoing decomposition and the mixing with CO_2 from the overlying atmosphere (Amundson & Davidson 1990).

Choné *et al.* (1991) studied changes in $^{13}C/^{12}C$ of soil organic matter to determine the respective contribution of the organic carbon originating from forest and from pasture. One year after clearing the forest, the proportion of forest derived C (Cp) was already 5 % in the whole 0-20 cm layer. After 2 years it was 20 %, whereas about 40 % of the C originating from forest (Cf) had disappeared. After a period of 8 years, the proportion of Cp was close to 40 %. No further decrease of Cf was however observed between 2 and 8 yr of permanent pasture. Following forest clearing and 1 year of pasture, the variation in D^{13}C did not exceed 1 $^{o}/_{oo}$. Subsequently, the D^{13}C value of the 0-3 cm layer increased from -23 $^{o}/_{oo}$ after 2 years of pasture to -17.5 $^{o}/_{oo}$ after 8 yr of pasture. The D^{13}C values in the 0-10 cm layer were -26 and -24 $^{o}/_{oo}$ after 2 and 8 yr pasture, respectively (Chone *et al.* 1991).

A difficulty in applying the D^{13}C technique in soil comparative studies of organic matter dynamics in a particular soil (series) is to ensure that the "disturbed" soils were similar to the reference soils at time zero (in terms of original soil carbon content between different sites under forest) (Chone *et al.* 1991).

Discussion

One of the conclusions that may be derived from the above review is that the amount of carbon stored in a soil at a certain moment in time, i.e., as corresponding with the time of sampling in routine soil surveys, need not be in equilibrium depending on whether the site was under climax vegetation or recently disturbed by management practices. In cases where commonly accepted standards have been followed (FAO 1977) little or no information will be recorded about the "recent past" land use. This may be seen as a possible source of uncertainty when such data sets are used in a soil data base (e.g., WISE) to assess the size of current soil carbon pools, and the anticipated changes therein upon specified changes in land use (e.g., natural forest to crop land). Additional remarks as to possible sources of uncertainty associated with the use of routinely collected soil carbon data are made in Section 4.5.4.

4.4 CO_2 emissions from selected terrestrial ecosystems

4.4.1 Introduction

Two main forms of biotic processes influence the evolution of carbon dioxide from soil: CO_2 release through "soil respiration" (Section 4.4.2) and CO_2 releases essentially associated with large scale deforestation (Section 4.4.3). The physical, chemical and biological processes regulating the production of CO_2 in, and evolution of CO_2 from terrestrial ecosystems are highly variable in space and time. The importance of macroclimate on soil microbial biomass and basal respiration (CO_2-evolution) has been discussed by Insam (1990). In a diffusion dominated soil, the partial pressure or concentration of CO_2 in the soil atmosphere varies as a function of soil depth and is dependent on the microbial production rate and gas diffusivity (Amundson & Davidson 1990). Mean rates of soil respiration in different types of vegetation, range from 60 ± 6 gC $m^{-2}yr^{-1}$ for tundras up to 1260 gC $m^{-2}yr^{-1}$ for tropical moist forests (see Raich & Schlesinger 1992). Inorganic reactions involving CO_2 will influence the CO_2 concentration in soil and natural waters. Such processes include the natural precipitation of CO_2 in soils as carbonates (e.g., Nettleton *et al.* 1991), CO_2 release by irrigation with alkaline and CO_2 rich water, the removal of $CaCO_3$ by dissolution and accumulation of HCO_3^- as a result of irrigation, and the release of CO_2 by upwelling of CO_2 rich waters (e.g., Bohn 1990). Consequently, CO_2 concentrations within the soil and just above the soil-plant surface vary widely both between and within different ecosystems. Worldwide, soil CO_2 concentrations vary from 0.04 to 13.0 % by volume in the upper several metres of freely drained soil (see Amundson & Davidson 1990). In poorly drained soils higher CO_2 levels may be anticipated as diffusion will be limited.

4.4.2 CO_2 evolution associated with "soil respiration"

Definition

Carbon dioxide (naturally) evolved from intact soil, or soil respiration, consists of CO_2 derived from microbial respiration, faunal respiration, autotrophic root respiration, and in some cases abiotic oxidation of organic matter. The contribution of soil fauna to the CO_2 flux generally is much less than that of the microbial population, often accounting for only a few percent of the total carbon mineralized. Holt (1987), for instance, estimated C respired from a population of termite mounds (101 kg ha^{-1} yr^{-1}) amounted to some 3 % of the total C respired (3400 kg ha^{-1} yr^{-1}). On average from 30 to 70 % of the CO_2 evolved by soil respiration may be due to root respiration (Schlesinger 1977), but the contribution of root respiration is difficult to measure in the field (e.g., Smucker & Safir 1986). Recently, Holt *et al.* (1990) determined that, in an Australian tropical semi-arid woodland, root respiration accounted for about 39 % of the CO_2 released by soil respiration (1500 *versus* 3800 kg C ha^{-1} yr^{-1}). In this tropical area soil moisture was found to have a major effect on soil respiration, while temperature was of lesser importance. Most respiratory activity in the soil was confined to the relatively short wet season, with respiration rates being much lower during the dry season. Whether day soil respiration rates surpass those during the night depends upon the interactive effects of temperature and water on soil biological activity (Grahammer *et al.* 1991), and possibly root respiration through photosynthesis. This example already indicates "soil respiration" related CO_2 evolution rates from any particular soil will be highly variable both in space and time. A possible additional source of variability in measured CO_2 fluxes resides in the method of determination adopted.

Measurement methods

Mosier (1990) recently reviewed the techniques available for measuring trace gas fluxes from soil. Soil respiration is often determined by recording the efflux of CO_2 from the soil surface; on an annual basis this efflux will be about equal to the soil respiration rate provided significant losses of inorganic C, for instance through leaching or deposition, do not occur (*cf* Raich & Schlesinger 1992). Commonly applied methods for measuring soil respiration include the use of CO_2 absorbents such as NaOH, and direct measurements such as infrared gas analysis and gas chromatography. For additional information on these techniques reference is made, amongst others, to Raich *et al.* (1989), Shelton & Parkin (1989), Sparling & West (1990), Sakamoito & Yoshida (1988), Rochette *et al.*(1991), Freijer & Bouten (1991), Gardini *et al.* (1991).

Raich *et al.* (1990) compared the "soda-lime" method for measuring CO_2 evolution in forest soils with a static chamber technique using gas chromatography analysis of CO_2-concentration changes during short term incubations. The CO_2 efflux rates were variable within sites and showed no spatial autocorrelation. Neither were there any consistent differences between the two methods, indicating that either one of the two methods may be used over the range of mean daily CO_2 efflux rates encountered (1.7-11.4 g $m^{-2}d^{-1}$). The "soda-lime" technique cannot give any information on diel variations in CO_2 effluxes. The short term incubation technique, however, can be used to simultaneously monitor several trace gases and to assess diel trends in flux rates (Raich *et al.* 1991).

Sakamoto & Yoshida (1988) measured *in situ* soil respiration rates by a dynamic method in which CO_2 was directly measured by an infrared gas analyzer. They observed the rate of soil respiration increased with increasing air flow rate. The CO_2 diffusion rate, however, was approximately constant regardless of the air flow rate and was almost equal to that under natural conditions (without a chamber). Based on these findings Sakamoto & Yoshida suggest that the process of mass flow by air flow contributed to soil respiration. In a comparison with soil respiration measured with a static technique (use of alkali NaOH solution to entrap CO_2), the soil respiration rate as measured by the static method was 58 % of that determined by the dynamic method at an air flow of 1 l/min^{-1}. The observed difference in values between the static and dynamic method may be due to the decrease in the rate of CO_2 diffusion and mass flow in the static method. Sparling & West (1990) recommended the gas chromatography method to measure soil respiration should be restricted to soils at field capacity or below and with a pH of less than 6.5. CO_2 retention was shown to increase markedly in solutions above pH 6.5.

Recently, Freijer & Bouten (1991) evaluated three widely used methods for measuring the total CO_2 evolution from soil:

1) The "dynamic CO_2 absorption method" has the potential to absorb all CO_2 emanating at the soil surface, and was shown to have only a small impact on the CO_2 concentration-depth gradient and the efflux of CO_2. The method proved accurate, simple and of low cost, and consequently suitable for the study of temporal and spatial dynamics of CO_2 evolution from soil.
2) The "static CO_2 absorption method" was shown to underestimate the evolution of CO_2 from soil, because the absorption velocity is too low, due to slow diffusion processes;

3) The "chamber technique" records increasing CO_2 concentration with time under a closed cover. The accumulation of CO_2, however, alters the gradient, does not yield the exact surface efflux, because the effect of increasing storage in soil is not incorporated.

In view of the different measurement techniques used, a non-negligible part of the inter-site variability in soil respiration rates may partly be due to methodological differences. This makes the comparison and interpretation of published soil respiration data cumbersome (cf Raich & Schlesinger 1992). Mean rates of soil respiration in different types of vegeatation, as derived from an analysis of the literature (Raich & Schlesinger 1992), are presented in Table 4.3 indicating the importance of mean annual temperature and mean annual precipitation at the global level. Additionally, there is a close correlation between mean annual NPP of different vegetation biomes and their mean annual soil respiration rates; on the average, soil respiration rates are 24% higher than mean annual NPP. Priority areas for additional research on soil respiration rates are the arid, semi-arid and tropical regions for which there only relatively few measurements available (Raich & Schlesinger 1992).

Table 4.3 Mean rates of soil respiration in different types of vegetation (Source: Raich & Schlesinger 1992).

Vegetation type	Soil respiration ($gC\ m^{-2}yr^{-1}$; Mean ± SE)	*n*
Tundra	60 - 6	11
Boreal forest and woodlands	322 - 31	16
Temperate grasslands	442 - 78	9
Temperate coniferous forests	681 - 95	23
Temperate deciduous forests*	647 - 51	29
Mediterranenan woodlands and heath	713 - 88	13
Croplands, fields, etc.	544 - 80	26
Desert scrub	224 - 38	3
Tropical savannas and grasslands	629 - 53	9
Tropical dry forests	673 - 134	4
Tropical moist forests	1260 - 57	10
Northern bogs and mires	94 - 16	12
Marshes	413 - 76	6

Note: * = including mixed broad-leaved and needle-leaved forests. SE is the standard error, and *n* the number of observations.

Spatial and temporal variability

In the following paragraphs the results of several studies of CO_2 evolution associated with soil respiration carried out by different research groups are presented and the important predictor variables are identified.

Random CO_2 evolution measurements over the growing season of a wheat crop indicated the number of samples required to estimate soil respiration of a one hectare area within 10 % ($p= 0.05$) of its mean value decreased from 190 at the time of seeding to 30 at the end of the cropping season. The maximum soil respiration during the growing season corresponded with the period of maximum growth of the maize and wheat crops (Rochette *et al.* 1991), reflecting the possible importance of root respiration. Beyer (1991) found that while in a sandy Podzol 5 replicate measurements gave adequate results of CO_2 flux associated with soil respiration, with an error probability of 10 %, in their loamy Luvisols it was necessary to use 10 replicates to specify the same degree of difference.

Rochette *et al.* (1991) studied the spatial and temporal variability of soil respiration using chamber measurements of CO_2 evolution on bare soil and soil under maize and wheat crops. Semivariograms indicated no definite structure of spatial autocorrelation on bare soil when measurements were made along transects. The spatial variability was found to occur at a scale smaller than 15 cm. Under dry conditions, soil respiration under the maize crop was significantly higher than in the interrow. When wet, soil respiration in the interrow compacted by the tractor wheel was significantly lower than on non-compacted soil and no significant difference was found between rows and interrows. Rochette *et al.* (1991) attribute these observations to the contribution of plant roots to soil respiration measured in dry conditions. In wetter soil, the role of microorganisms was dominant except in the compacted interrow where a lower air porosity caused lower respiration. Similarly, in the study of Groffman & Tiedje (1991), CO_2 production rates were positively related to air filled porosity in well drained loams but negatively related to air filled porosity in poorly drained loams. Doran *et al.* (1990), with respect to 18 US benchmark soils, found soil respiration to be parabolically related to water filled pore space (WFPS). Maximum evolutions were observed for 54, 61 and 78 % WFPS, for medium to fine textured soils, coarse textured and highly weathered soils, respectively. Less available moisture or aeration in soil, which results in a decreased microbial activity, may explain the "conserving" effect of living roots on soil organic matter (Dormaar 1990).

Seasonal changes in CO_2-evolution rate and soil temperature were exponentially correlated in two Japanese forest soils, with Q_{10} values of 1.93 and 2.33, respectively (Sakai 1990). Naganawa *et al.* (1989) measured soil respiration with portable infrared gas analyzers by measuring CO_2 concentration in small chambers placed in an experimental field at Shimane University (103 plots, 1081 data). The soil respiration rate had a geometrical mean of 11.4 mmol $h^{-1}m^{-2}$, with a range from about 0 to 80. In this experiment, the evolution of CO_2 was strongly enhanced by temperature ($r^2= 0.76$; $Q_{10} = 2.2$; temperature range 4 - 40 °C), and weakly by the soil moisture level and input of organic matter. Wilhelmi & Rothe (1990) measured CO_2 evolution under spruce, and found an optimal biological activity at 20-35 °C and water contents ranging from 40 to 60 %. Alternatively, Carlyle & Than (1988) found temperature had little effect on soil respiration at low soil moisture levels. Maximum soil surface temperature and soil moisture content proved to be the most reliable predictors of CO_2 evolution for all treatments in Weber's (1990) study with aspen. Rochette *et al.* (1991) observed a peak in soil respiration after a 2 hour rainfall event, when soil was at field capacity. Soil respiration was 9 times higher than its level prior to the shower and gradually decreased with time. Similarly, fluxes in N_2O from soil are often associated with rainfall events (see Chapter 3).

Aiken *et al.* (1991) measured the soil CO_2 efflux in a wheat field at two different dates with differing soil water contents, and soil plus vegetation CO_2 efflux in three grassland sites in order to characterize the positional trend, spatial correlation and random variation in these effluxes. The alkali absorption method was used to measure the CO_2 efflux using static chambers positioned in a 3 m grid within a 18 by 18 m square. Statistical analyses indicated the assumption of spatial homogeneity (first-order stationary) was not justified for CO_2 efflux for 4 of the 5 data sets. Positional trends accounted for 16 to 48 % of the total variability in CO_2 efflux in these cases. Aiken *et al.* (1991) detected no spatial correlation, although ignoring positional trends may well have resulted in the opposite conclusion. Spatial structure in CO_2 evolution was affected by the soil water content under wheat.

Yang *et al.* (1989) studied soil respiration from 4 meadows with *Kobresia humilis, Dasiphora fruticosa* a shrub, *Elymus mutans* and forbs meadows in the Hepei alpine environment, China. Soil respiration varied according to vegetation types and also diurnally, with the highest soil respiration occurring during day time. Soil respiration also decreased gradually with soil depth (depths of sampling of 0-10, 10-20, 20-40, and 40-60 cm). Under the 4 vegetation types considered, soil respiration was well correlated with the number and activity of microorganisms, the enzyme activities, and soil temperature. Additionally, significant correlations were found between soil respiration and total N, pH, CEC, organic matter, available K and hydrolysable N content (Yang *et al.* 1989).

In Ontario, Weber (1990) studied the respiration of forest soils under stands of 20 yr old aspen (*Populus tremuloides* and *P. grandidentata*) which had been subjected to cutting or burning treatments either before or after the 1984 spring leaf-flush. Soil respiration was measured *in situ* as CO_2 evolution using the "soda lime" technique. The CO_2 evolution varied seasonally from a maximum of about 7000 mg CO_2 $m^{-2}d^{-1}$ in midsummer for the control, minima of just over 2000 mg CO_2 $m^{-2}d^{-1}$ in spring and autumn reflecting a possible temperature effect. Similarly, Insam (1990) found a significant relationship between basal microbial respiration and climate. Soils from warmer climates exhibited a mean basal respiration of 0.3 mg CO_2 g^{-1} soil per hour as compared to 0.1 mg CO_2 g^{-1} soil per hour for cooler climates.

When plant residues are added to soil much of the C is rapidly oxidized to carbon dioxide. For crop residues, typically 70 % of the carbon is converted to CO_2 in 1 year (see MacCarthy *et al.* 1990b). Carbon added in the form of water-soluble compounds that are assimilated by microbes, is mineralized even more rapidly, with as much as 90 % evolved as CO_2 in 1 yr (Stott & Martin 1990). Polysaccharides and proteins in soils are also readily mineralized in a period of 6 to 12 months. The remainder of this non-aromatic C is incorporated into the soil organic matter and microbial biomass (see MacCarthy *et al.* 1990b). Bremner *et al.* (1991) studied the effects of grinding, addition of fertilizer N, and the absence of soil on C mineralization from agricultural plant residues with an elevated C/N ratio (wheat straw, lentil straw and lentil green manure with a C/N ratio of 80, 36 and 9 respectively). In the initial stage the CO_2 evolution was much faster for the lentil green manure than from the lentil or wheat straw, but by 98 days similar amounts of CO_2 had evolved from all residues incubated in soil with no added N. Incubation of plant residues in the absence of soil had little effect on CO_2 evolution from the lentil green manure or lentil straw, but strongly reduced CO_2 evolution from the wheat straw. Grinding did not affect carbon dioxide evolution from the lentil green manure but did increase the CO_2 evolution from the lentil straw without added N and from the wheat straw. The addition of N increased the rate of CO_2 evolution from ground wheat straw between days 4 and 14 of the experiment but not from unground wheat straw, and only slightly increased the rate of CO_2 evolution from lentil straw during the initial decomposition. Over the study period of 98 days, the added N reduced the amounts of CO_2 evolved from both lentil and wheat straw, due to reduced rates of CO_2 evolution after about 17 days. Bremer *et al.* (1991) attributed the lack of an N response during the early stages of decomposition to the low C/N ratio of the soluble straw component and to microbial adaptations to an N deficiency, while the inhibitory effect of N on CO_2 evolution during the later stages of decomposition may be attributed to effects of high mineral N concentrations on lignocellulolytic microorganisms and enzymes.

In Brazil, Zech *et al.* (1990) studied the CO_2 evolution from Ah horizons of a "Terra Preta do Indios", a man-made "kitchen-midden" Humox, and a Haplorthox, respectively. Both soils had similar clay + silt content and were formed from similar "Beltera clay" parent material. The CO_2 production during incubation from the Ah-horizon of the Tera Preta was significantly lower than that of the Haplorthox even though the Ah of the Terra Preta contained 92 g C kg-1 and the Ah of the Haplorthox 30 g C kg-1 (Zech *et al.* 1990). This reflects the higher stability of the soil organic matter in the Terra Preta (see also Section 4.3.4).

Based on a recent study, Raich & Schlesinger (1992) conclude it appears that conversion of native vegetation increases soil respiration. Similarly, fertilization generally seems to increases soil respiration rates. Additional direct measurements and comparisons of soil respiration from "untreated" *versus* "treated" sites are needed to fully elucidate the nature and importance of the respective controls of soil respiration. The rate at which carbon dioxide evolves from soil to the atmopshere is dependent on its rate of production in the soil, soil characteristics (e.g. texture, structure, moisture content, organic carbon content), concentration gradients between CO_2 in soil pore space and levels above ground, as well as wind speed.

Soil CO_2 levels

It is unlikely that increased concentrations of atmospheric carbon dioxide will directly modify the CO_2 concentration in the soil pores, as the latter levels are much higher than the former (*cf* IGBP 1992 p. 65). Kursar (1989) observed substantial microspatial variation for soil respiration and soil CO_2 concentration in a study of soil gas exchange in freely drained soils in lowland moist forest in Panama. During the rainy season, the soil CO_2 levels at 40 cm below the surface amounted to 2.3-4.6 % and were shown to be correlated with rainfall during the preceding two weeks. Temporal changes in soil CO_2 were rapid, large and displayed similar trends between sampling points. The soil CO_2 levels in acid forest soils in Shenandoah National Park, Virginia, fluctuated annually by two orders of magnitude, showing a strong correlation with soil temperature (Castelle & Galloway 1990). In coarse textured Nevada desert soils, soil CO_2 appeared to be more dependent on temperature than moisture during the winter and spring, whereas it appeared to be dependent on moisture in the summer and autumn (Terhune & Harden 1991).

Dyer & Brook (1991) studied the spatial and temporal variations in soil CO_2 concentration in a Georgian temperate forest soil during the "non-growing" season over the 1985-1986 period. The soil CO_2 levels varied with soil depth, varied spatially at constant depth, and varied temporally with changing environmental conditions. Variations with depth in the upper 140 cm of the soil were of greater magnitude than temporal variations, and spatial differences at 30 cm depth were of lesser magnitude. Mean soil CO_2 content was higher in evergreen forest (0.21 %) than in deciduous and mixed forest (0.16 %). Dyer & Brook (1991) observed no trends in soil CO_2 along hillslopes or with changes in soil texture, bulk density, moisture content, or temperature. Higher soil CO_2 levels were recorded near trees, possibly reflecting increased root densities and/or more numerous pockets of microbial activity. At a depth of 30 cm, the mean daily temperature range in the month before measurement and the actual evapotranspiration in the week before measurement (AET) explained 76 % of the variation in mean soil CO_2 levels. In a profile, where soil CO_2 levels was measured at five depths, 66 % of the variability in CO_2 was explained by soil depth, AET, and the average daily temperature range in two months before measurement.

4.4.3 CO_2 evolution associated with deforestation and afforestation

Deforestation as a cause of CO_2 emission

For many centuries human activities associated with agricultural expansion and urbanization have caused wide scale changes in natural ecosystems. During the last century the major component of the associated (biogenic) carbon loss resulted mainly from the cultivation of virgin grasslands, while more recently it derives mainly from deforestation. Tropical forest resource assessments have been prepared by FAO/UNEP (1981). The alarming rate of current deforestation in many tropical regions is apparent from the recent reviews of Woodwell *et al.* (1983, 1984a, 1986), Hall *et al.* (1988), Detwiler & Hall (1988), Myers (1989) and Bouwman (1990) amongst others. Estimations of the extent and rates of loss of forests over the globe vary widely, in part because of different definitions and methodologies. The importance of remote sensing in monitoring changes in forested area has recently been discussed, for instance, by Woodwell (1984a) and Bouwman (1990a).

The amount of forest remaining in the humid tropics is now in the order of 8 million km^2 or roughly half of what once existed according to bioclimatic data. Around 100,000 km^2 are being severely disrupted each year by heavy logging and intensive slash-and-burn practices. About 2.5 % of the biome is being removed each year in terms of viable forest cover with full biomass and ecological complexity (Myers 1989). As a "regional" example, the recent deforestation history of eastern rainforest in Madagascar may be quoted. In 1985 there remained 3.8 Mha of rain forest, corresponding with about half of the 7.6 Mha remaining in 1950, and with about 34 % of the estimated original extent of 11.3 Mha of rain forest in eastern Madagascar (Green & Sussman 1990). Current deforestation rates of 20 to 30 % per year are accepted for the states of Amazonas, Mato Grosso, Pará, and Rondônia where most of the deforestation takes place in Brazil (Setzer & Pereira 1991). The latter deforestation and burning processes in the Amazon region started in the early 1970s with the official policy to develop the region (see Setzer & Pereira 1991). This reflects current deforestation rates are essentially related to the ever increasing land pressure and related unfavourable socio-economic conditions of the local population. Consequently, there is an urgent need for sustainable agricultural policies to reduce current deforestation rates in the humid tropics (see Sanchez *et al.* 1990).

Deforestation and changes in land use during the period 1860-1984 have been estimated to cause losses of 150 ± 50 Pg C (Bolin *et al.* 1986), with current releases being in the range 1-2 Pg C yr^{-1} (Bolin 1986b; Bouwman & Sombroek 1990) to 2-5 Pg C yr^{-1} (Houghton *et al.* 1985; Crutzen & Andreae 1990). Detwiler & Hall (1988) estimate the current CO_2 release from non-tropical forest regions *anno* 1980 to be at the most 0.1 Pg C and for tropical forests to be 0.42 - 1.60 Pg C. Of the latter amount, 0.1-0.3 Pg C were attributed to decreases in soil organic matter content, while decay and burning may have accounted for 0.3 to 1.3 Pg C (Detwiler & Hall 1988). The mean annual carbon release associated with fire in moist tropical forests is estimated to be 30 g m^{-2} yr^{-1}, in contrast to 150 g $m^{-2}yr^{-1}$ for seasonally dry savannas and scrubland. Fires in closed tropical and subtropical forest release about 0.5 Pg C yr^{-1}, whereas for temperate forests this is some 0.1 Pg C yr^{-1}. Tropical woodands and savannas, on average, are estimated to contribute 1.5 Pg C yr^{-1} (Olson 1981 as quoted by Mooney *et al.* 1987). The preceding estimates of C loss vary amongst other in view of the uncertainties in acreage deforested, type of forest removed (biomass), land uses to which these forests are cleared, and different definitions of biomes (see Bouwman 1990a).

Afforestation as a possible means of sequestering atmospheric CO_2

Afforestation of bare land or redundant arable land has been proposed as a good measure for (temporarily) sequestering atmospheric CO_2 in growing trees and for reducing the greenhouse effect. However, there are several arguments why this need not be so. Putting previously bare land under vegetation would lower atmospheric carbon dioxide levels by only 1.5 ppmv for each 10^{12} m^2 of land additionally covered (Goudriaan 1989). Alternatively, to produce annually the amount of fuelwood equivalent to the world use of fossil fuel-energy *anno* 1980 (15 Pg stemwood) would require 10 to 37 10^{12} m^2 of managed forest of the type described by Houghton (1990). Wolf & Janssen (1991) modelled that a (proposed) doubling of forest area in the Netherlands would just offset carbon losses associated with other changes in land use, and that it would not result in additional fixation of carbon in soil. Reforestation withdraws carbon from the atmosphere for only as long as the forests are gaining biomass; after maturity forests are approximately in balance with respect to carbon (Houghton 1990).

Many authors have discussed the possibility of planting trees to reduce the buildup of carbon dioxide in the atmosphere (e.g., Kimball *et al.* 1990; Grantham 1990; Houghton 1990). These studies do not always consider where these vast areas of trees could be planted. Alternatively, Houghton (1990) considered only those areas where trees had been grown in the past (prior to deforestation and currently not under cropland or urban use) as being climatically and edaphically suitable for forests. In general planning studies at the global level environmentally suitable areas for forestry can be derived from physical land evaluation, using for instance 1/2 x 1/2 degree grid data bases on climate (e.g., Leemans & Cramer 1991) and soils, combined with generalized information on the environmental requirements of important tree species (see FAO 1984). Of course the assessment must also take into consideration the need for land other than as viewed from the perspective of the global carbon cycle (e.g., food, fibre, timber, housing). Schlesinger (1990) observes that as the human population continues to grow exponentially, contributions of potential vegetation shifts (e.g., arable land to forest) and the "CO_2 fertilization effect" (see Section 4.4.4) to create a carbon sink on land may become largely academic. Alternatively, large scale changes in natural ecosystems to accommodate vast acreages of forest may have some "unanticipated" effects. Expansion of commercial forestry in Finland, for instance, is leading to the replacement of most of the region's natural forests with uniform plantations. Instead of helping to moderate the greenhouse effect, the associated draining of vast areas of Finnish peatlands for forestry has resulted in huge increases in CO_2 emissions (Isomaki 1991). Alternatively, draining of these peat areas reduces the emission of methane, another critical greenhouse gas.

Mattson & Swank (1989) observed no statistically significant difference in CO_2 efflux between two types of residue treatment on forest clearcuts in the southern Appalachian (the logging residue was removed on one "clearcut" and left in place on the other). The CO_2 evolution from the clearcuts were 33 % lower than those from the control watershed (uncut). The lower CO_2 effluxes from the two clearcuts were associated with higher soil temperatures, smaller live root masses, and larger forest-floor masses. Mattson & Swank (1988) observed no long-term changes in soil C pools following forest cutting and natural regeneration (5-8 yr period). Cutting of these Appalachian forests followed by regeneration does not seem to result in large net transfers of carbon to the atmosphere (Mattson & Swank 1989), contrary to what has been generally assumed. Similarly, modelling studies by Emanuel *et al.* (1984) have shown that due to establishment of ground vegetation following forest clearing the net carbon flux from the terrestrial biotic system to the atmosphere is less than the release due to clearing, in some instances.

Effects of massive forest burning on local climate; the Amazon as an example

The repercussions of biomass burning in Brazil's Amazon Basin during the dry season of 1987 were analyzed by Setzer & Pereira (1991) using satellite imagery. As a conservative estimate 350,000 independent fires were identified, corresponding possibly to about 20 million ha of different types of burned vegetation. Estimates of the emissions emanating from these dry season fires, in million of tons, were 1700 for CO_2, 94 for CO, 6 for total particulate matter, 9 for ozone (secondary reactions), 10 for CH_4, 1 for NO_x and 0.1 for CH_3Cl. The emissions essentially influenced the lower troposphere, although some smoke clouds reached up to 4 km before starting to disperse horizontally. The relevant emissions caused severe atmospheric pollution effects on a synoptic scale, with possible global implications (Setzer & Pereira 1991). This aspect is also illustrated by the work of Shukla *et al.* (1990) who coupled numerical models of global atmosphere and biosphere to assess the effects of Amazonian deforestation on regional and global climate. When tropical forests were replaced by degraded pastures, the model indicated there would be a significant increase in surface temperature and a decrease in evapotranspiration and precipitation over Amazonia. The simulation runs showed the length of the dry season would increase. This would make it difficult to re-establish forests as potential captors of atmospheric CO_2 after extensive deforestation (Shukla *et al.* 1990). Additionally, clearing of primary forest for other uses often is associated with a significant loss of nutrients, which may form an additional limitation for widespread reafforestation, particularly where the inherent fertility of the mineral soil is low. Under conditions of reduced nutrient supply and reduced rainfall the potential positive effects of the "enhanced atmospheric concentrations of CO_2 may not materialize (see Section 4.4.4). Henderson-Sellers *et al.* (1988), with reference to climate models, discussed important processes associated with tropical deforestation such as a possible increase in surface albedo, a decrease in length of the surface-roughness, and changes in the soil properties.

4.4.4 Possible consequences of the CO_2-fertilization effect

Many researchers studied how crops respond to a possible doubling of carbon dioxide (e.g., Idso 1989; Cure & Acock 1986; Kimball *et al.* 1990; Lekkerkerk *et al.* 1990; Kuikman *et al.* 1991). The increase in atmospheric CO_2 concentration, however, is but one of the aspects of the projected enhanced greenhouse effect (see e.g., Hume & Cattle 1990). There are three ways in which the "greenhouse effect" can be important for agriculture (e.g., Warrick 1986a; Parry 1990, Parry *et al.* 1990). Increased atmospheric concentrations of CO_2 can have a direct effect on the growth rate of certain crops, plants and weeds (the so-called CO_2 fertilization effect). Secondly, CO_2 induced changes may alter the ambient temperature, rainfall and incoming sunshine (e.g., through changes in cloud cover) and thereby modify plant and animal productivity. Thirdly, there may be adverse effects associated with anticipated sea level changes, such as an increased intrusion of salinization in agriculturallly important low lying areas such as the Nile delta.

Shugart *et al.* (1986) and Maini (1988) recently discussed how global change could affect forests, for instance by ultimately shifting the current latitudinal and altitudinal zoning of many forest types (particularly in the middle latitudes) as well as the latitudinal and altitudinal tree-lines, and by influencing growth and biomass production. Schlesinger (1990b) indicates that if the terrestrial biosphere is indeed to act as a carbon sink under future elevated levels of CO_2, this would be more likely to be the result of changes in the distribution and biomass of terrestrial vegetation than of changes in the accumulation of soil organic matter. A limitation of climate models is that they cannot yet provide estimates of the regional climate changes (e.g., length and time of occurrence of growing period) which are essential to assess the possible impacts on agriculture (see Hume & Cattle 1990).

There remain widely differing views on the possible repercussions of enhanced atmospheric CO_2 concentrations and related changes in climate on net primary production, and by implication on phytomass and soil carbon reserves, amongst the different research groups (see Kimball *et al.* 1990). Basically, increased atmospheric levels of carbon dioxide may affect plant growth in three ways (e.g., Bazzaz & Fajer 1992; Esser 1990; Kimball *et al.* 1990; Goudriaan & Unsworth 1990). First through a direct effect of the partial CO_2 pressure in the plant cell on the enzyme kinetics of RUBP carboxylase, which directly affects the quantum efficiency of photosynthesis. (RUBP is a five-carbon sugar called ribulose phosphate). Increased CO_2 levels also have an indirect effect on plant transpiration through the stomatal resistance. The intercellular partial pressure of CO_2 will rise with increasing atmospheric CO_2 levels to which plants may respond by closing the stomata (increasing the stomatal resistance) to maintain the internal CO_2 partial pressure constant. Closing of the stomata would reduce the transpiration.

Idso (1991) in a challenging paper terms the increasing levels of atmospheric CO_2 as "probably the best thing that could ever happen to the biosphere" as it could lead to its "rebirth". About 5 to 10 % of the actual rate of increase of agricultural productivity worldwide can be ascribed to the fertilizing effect of rising atmospheric CO_2 levels (Goudriaan & Unsworth 1990). The positive direct effect of CO_2 on plant growth is often smaller when crops are poorly fertilized, but it is fully retained when water shortage limits productivity (Goudriaan & Unsworth 1990). Bazzaz & Fajer (1992) explain why the possible beneficial effects of enhanced atmospheric CO_2 levels on plant growth, the so-called "CO_2 fertilization" effect, are likely to be overstated. Often, these studies do not consider possible associated regional changes in mean air temperature or precipitation and related shifts in "climate" zones. The modelling study of Adams *et al.* (1990) indicates the size of the terrestrial carbon reserve would seem to be responding more to climate factors than to the level of atmospheric CO_2 *per se*. Another important aspect is that most of the projections claiming advantageous growth under increased levels of atmospheric CO_2 are based on studies of vegetative growth. Sinha *et al.* (1988), however, indicate that a warming of 2 °C above a mean temperature of 22 °C promotes sterility in rice and will reduce the yield by 25 % or more, although the temperature increase *per se* has little effect on photosynthesis.

Mooney *et al.* (1987) argued that it is uncertain whether any possible increase in carbon fixation resulting from increased atmospheric CO_2 concentration will also cause increased decomposition. This could be a crucial point, because it is the change in net carbon storage, and not photosynthesis, that controls feedback from carbon dioxide absorption by plants, to further alter atmospheric concentration. Decomposition could simply increase with increasing productivity. Yet when nutrients are limiting, plant tissues will display higher ratios of C to nutrients when CO_2 levels are elevated. This change in plant chemistry could alter (reduce) the rate of decomposition of plant materials and related nutrient release, which possibly will reduce production on the long term in natural systems and by implication possible future inputs of organic residues into soil. Alternatively, Lekkerkerk *et al.* (1990) suggest that under elevated CO_2 levels in air the decomposition rate of organic matter may decrease due to competition between plants and microbes for limiting nutrients and water possibly leading to increased soil organic matter contents. Alternatively, the temperature increase associated with the enhanced greenhouse effect could cause decomposition to increase faster than net primary productivity (NPP).

4.5 Modelling changes in terrestrial carbon pools and sinks

4.5.1 Introduction

<u>Changes between the Last Glacial Maximum and present times</u>

About 18 Kyr ago, at the time of the Last Glacial Maximum (LGM), about 968 Pg C was stored in vegetation (346 Pg C) and soils (625 Pg C) based on an analysis of palynological, pedological and sedimentological data. The present carbon reserve, as calculated by Adams *et al.* (1990b), is 924 Pg C for vegetation, 1115 Pg C for soils and 280 Pg C for peat, amounting to a total of 2319 Pg C. The corresponding, calculated increase in terrestrial carbon since the LGM is 1351 Pg C (Adams *et al.* 1990b). This is much more than the change of 30 to -50 Pg C which Prentice & Fung (1990) computed for the mass transfer of terrestrial biosphere carbon to the atmosphere. With respect to the preceding studies, Schlesinger (1990) observed they are "only" based on changes in the distribution of vegetation in response to past and future climates. As such these studies do not consider the possible stimulation of photosynthesis and carbon storage as a response to higher CO_2 concentrations in the atmosphere today. Esser (1987) calculated that between 1860 and 1981 the NPP of the terrestrial biosphere has increased from 43.1 to 48.6 Pg C yr^{-1} due to the CO_2 fertilization effect. It should be noted the latter figure includes a considerable reduction associated with a lower NPP of agricultural areas, as compared to the original vegetation, of which the acreage expanded markedly during the period 1860-1981 (Esser 1987). The major carbon "components" of major vegetation zones of the world, as presented by Tinker & Inseon (1991), are summarized in Table 4.4.

According to the calculations of Adams *et al.* (1990b), the size of the soil carbon pool has increased by 490 Pg C since the LGM. Buringh (1984) calculated about 537 Pg C of soil organic carbon has been lost since prehistoric times, corresponding with about 27 % of the amount present prior to the spread of civilization in the last 2000 yr (from 2014 to 1477 Pg C). Alternatively, Schlesinger (1984) computed the cumulative transfer of carbon to the atmosphere since prehistoric times only may have amounted to 40 Pg C. These figures reflect the uncertainty in these calculations.

Table 4.4 Current estimates of plant biomass, litter input, soil organic matter and microbial biomass of major global vegetation types (Source: Tinker & Ineson 1990 p. 79)

Subject	Tropical forest	Temperate forest	Boreal forest	Savanna	Temperate grassland	Tundra
Area (10^{12} m^2)	24.5	12.5	12.0	15	9	8
Plant biomass (g C m^{-2})	18,000	14,000	9,000	1,800	1,440	250
Litter input (g C $^{m-2}$)	710	368	250	360	667	75
Soil C (g $^{m-2}$)	13,000	9,000	15,000	5,400	23,000	22,000
Soil N (g $^{m-2}$)	816	640	1,100	333	2,100	1,125
Microb. biomass C (")	50	110	35	60	215	20
Microb. biomass N (")	2	14	2.5	8.7	51	1
Microbial turnover (yr)	0.07	0.30	0.14	0.17	0.32	0.27

Before 1980 the biosphere was a small net carbon source (to atmosphere), releasing about 30 to 40 Pg C during the period ≈ 1860-1980 (Esser 1990; Goudriaan 1989). In the mid 1980s the inferred terrestrial storage of carbon was 2.0-3.4 Pg C yr^{-1} which would indicate soils and the terrestrial vegetation are already acting as a sink for atmospheric CO_2; the atmosphere does not contain as much of the fossil fuel CO_2 as it should (Tans *et al.* 1990, Walker & Kasting 1992). Similarly, according to other model calculations by Esser (1990) the terrestrial biosphere formed a net sink for atmospheric carbon of 0.6 Pg C yr^{-1} in 1980; deforestation, afforestation and changes in agricultural use resulted in CO_2 emissions of 0.8 Pg C yr^{-1}, but these losses from soil were compensated by the fertilization effect (≈ 1.25 Pg C yr^{-1}) with the litter and soil organic carbon binding an additional 0.2 Pg C yr^{-1} due to so-called "secondary effects" (Esser 1990). The current maximum potential sink in soils is not likely to exceed 0.4 Pg C yr^{-1} according to Schlesinger (1990b). Alternatively, Tinker & Ineson (1991) estimate the current net release of C from soils and plants to be around 1 Pg C yr^{-1}.

The recent reviews of Schlesinger (1986) and Bouwman (1990 p. 62) and Table 4.5 illustrate that estimates for current soil C pools vary widely. Computations by the various authors are based on different calculation techniques, i.e., based on soil groups, vegetation groups and life zone classes, as well as dynamic modelling (see discussion in Bouwman 1990), and based on different data sets and variable assumptions which results in a fairly wide possible range in error for estimating the size of terrestrial C pools. This aspect may be illustrated by the study of Zinke *et al.* (1984) who used two different computation procedures. In the first one soil profiles were classified into Holdridge life zones using appropriate life zone areas. Based on this approach, the global world soil pool was estimated to be 1,309 Pg for C and 92 Pg for N, respectively. In the alternative approach, the average organic carbon and nitrogen densities from 1 degree latitude bands were multiplied by the earth's surface area in the relevant bands. The total pools so obtained were 1,728 Pg C and 117 Pg N, respectively (Zinke *et al.* 1984).

Table 4.5 Estimates of global organic carbon pools in soils (Pg C).

Method	Source	Carbon pool	Cumulative loss	Annual release
Vegetation	Bolin (1977)*	700	10-40a	0.3
	Schlesinger (1977)*	1456	–	0.85
	Bolin *et al.* (1986)*	1672	–	1 - 2
	Atjay *et al.* (1979)*	1635	–	–
	Houghton *et al.* (1983)*	–	45-76b	0.87
	Zinke *et al.* (1984)	1309 or 1728		
Soil	Bohn (1976)*	3000	–	–
	Atjay *et al.* (1979)*	2070	–	–
	Post *et al.* (1982)	1395	–	–
	Schlesinger (1984b)*	1515	36a	0.8
	Buringh (1984)	1477	537b	1.5-5.4
	Bohn (1982)	2200		
	Kimble *et al.* (1990)	1061		
	Bouwman (1990a)	1600-1800		
	Adams *et al.* (1990b)	1115	-490c	
Modelling	Meentemeyer *et al.* ('81)*	1457		
	Goudriaan& Ketner ('84)*	1400		

Note: For sources indicated with a * see Bouwman (1990a); a refers to C losses since prehistoric times, b to losses since the mid 1980s, and c to losses since the LGM.

Post *et al.* (1982) estimated the size of the world organic soil carbon pool at 1395 Pg C by associating Holdridge life zone classification with estimates of the area of major ecosystem complexes, relying on the correspondence of life zones with vegetation associations. Soil carbon was calculated for each life zone using the relevant mean soil carbon densities. Bohn (1982) estimated the total mass of organic C in mineral and organic soils at 2200 Pg C, of which 1800 Pg C occur in mineral soils. Kimble *et al.* (1990) estimated the organic carbon content in soils of the world to a depth of 1 m - using about 2700 pits classified according to the Keys to Soil Taxonomy (USDA 1987) - and the spatial extent of the relevant orders (Histosols excluded) at 1061 Pg C, of which an estimated 496 Pg C occur in tropical soils. Present reserves of C in peat have been variously estimated at around 202 or 377 Pg C (*cf* Adams *et al.* 1990 p. 713).

In a similar manner to Buringh (1984), Bouwman (1990a) compiled "generalized" soil carbon profiles for the major soil units of the Soil Map of the World (FAO/Unesco 1971-1981), assuming a bulk density of 1.5 g cm^{-3} for all soils and a maximum thickness of 1 m, and combined this information with the area for the respective major soils and land cover types, showing the global soil C pool to be in the order of 1600-1800 Pg C. The estimates of Bouwman (1990a) exclude C stored in organic soils. Bouwman (1990a) used general conversion keys (e.g., soil carbon in the upper 1 m decreases by 40-60 % when forest or grassland is converted to cropland) to estimate the possible effect of broad categories of land use change on soil carbon pools. Inherently, results may vary widely depending on the type of assumptions used (e.g., land use affects the soil organic matter content up to a depth of 40 cm or 100 cm).

Current estimates of world soil C pools - both for mineral and organic soils - could be improved greatly by presenting organic carbon data for regionally representative major soils of the world together with such essential data as soil horizon depth, bulk density and stone content, combined with quantitative estimates of the geographic extent of the various major soils (see Chapter 6).

Possible explanations for the so-called "missing carbon"

From the beginning of the 20th century, significant changes in land use have occurred over large areas in the mid-latitudes. These changes include extensive reforestation, which may lead to higher woody biomass and possibly carbon storage in soil. During the period these forests are in a mid-successional stage they may form an important potential sink for atmospheric carbon. Especially because current N-eutrophication associated with pollution, and enhanced levels of atmospheric CO_2 could lead to a higher NPP. Based on these considerations, Matson & Ojima (1990) proposed that changes in the so-called "chemical climate" may amplify the possible sink strength for atmospheric CO_2. Alternatively, it can be argued that acid deposition and ozone accumulation, being a source for forest decline, could adversely affect potential storage of atmospheric carbon dioxide in tree biomass. The possible antagonisms and synergisms as portrayed above make it difficult to understand the causative factors as well as their relative importance; there is a need for "manipulative" experiments (Matson & Ojima *op cit.*).

It still proves cumbersome to balance the global carbon budget. The estimated emissions are larger than the sum of atmospheric increase plus the model-computed uptake by the oceans. This could indicate there exists an important, unidentified "missing carbon" sink. In part, the "missing carbon" has been attributed to a "CO_2 fertilization effect", associated with increased atmospheric CO_2 levels on plant growth. It has been argued that this contribution may outweigh the effect of forest clearing (Walker & Kasting 1992), but the views on this matter still differ appreciably between the various research groups (see Section 4.4.3). The actual increase in amplitudes of seasonal variations in atmospheric carbon dioxide levels, as reported by Bacastraw *et al.* (1985) and Houghton (1987), may be seen as "independent" evidence of a possible atmospheric CO_2 fertilization effect. Alternatively, discrepancies in estimates of the still unknown, large terrestrial sink for CO_2 may in part be due to the net flux of carbon to the oceans by rivers and rain; these figures must be added to the synoptic air-to-sea CO_2 flux to obtain the total oceanic uptake of anthropogenic CO_2 (for more details see Sarmiento & Sundquist 1992).

Detwiler & Hall (1988) have reduced the discrepancy in the carbon budget to a maximum of 2.8 Pg C of "missing carbon" in 1980. Tans *et al.* (1990) calculated there must be a terrestrial sink for atmospheric CO_2 at temperate latitudes to balance the global carbon budget and to match the N-S gradient of atmospheric CO_2. The mechanism of this sink, with a size of 2.0 to 3.4 Pg C yr^{-1}, is unknown. It depends on the sources in the tropical and boreal and tundra ecosystems (see Tans *et al.* 1990). In a recent study of the interhemispheric transport of carbon dioxide, Broeckner & Peng (1992) challenged the findings of Tans *et al.* (1990). It would appear that the N-S gradient of atmospheric CO_2 has changed sign in recent times. Watson (1992), with reference to the findings of Broeckner & Peng (1992), finds it very plausible that Tans *et al.* (1990) may have underestimated the northern ocean sink. As a result, Tans *et al.* (1990) may have had to assume an unrealistically large vegetation sink to balance the global carbon dioxide budget according to Watson (1992).

4.5.2 Examples of book-keeping methods

Besides with "dynamic" models (see discussion below) the role of terrestrial biota in the CO_2 balance is commonly estimated with "book keeping" methods (e.g., Bolin 1986 p. 130..; Detwiler & Hall 1988). Bouwman (1990a p. 74-76) recently reviewed commonly used book keeping methods for calculating CO_2 emissions associated with mainly deforestation.

The net release of carbon from a certain soil-vegetation type varies depending on whether the area was cleared for permanent agriculture, pasture, shifting cultivation or timber. In most book keeping methods, the carbon released upon clearing one hectare of forest (primary or secondary) for specified types of land use is computed by multiplying the estimated release per unit surface area by the land area converted yearly to each land use in the region under consideration. The general data requirements for this type of book keeping methods are:

a) Carbon content of soil to a given depth (at equilibrium) before clearing;
b) Estimated average changes in soil carbon content over the considered depth range under each land use (see Houghton *et al.* 1986);
c) Area of forest converted to the respective uses each year. This type of information can increasingly be derived from remote sensing/GIS based studies of changes in vegetation or land use (Bouwman 1990a; Woodwell 1984; Estes & Cosentino 1989).

Alternatively, book keeping methods have been used to estimate the effect of anticipated global warming associated with the greenhouse effect on "biological" activity. Bertram (1991), for instance, calculated the additional release of CO_2 associated with temperature increase since 1880. To this avail he used a "representative" Q_{10} value for soil respiration in combination with past temperature increase in a global model. According to these calculations the amount of soil-borne CO_2 associated with the increase in mean air temperature could be of the same order of magnitude as the CO_2 evolved from the burning of fossil fuels, and about 2/3 of the observed increase in atmospheric CO_2 may come from soil respiration and not from industrial pollution (Bertram 1991). If average soil respiration is 68 Pg C yr^{-1} and the average Q_{10} for metabolic activity is 2.4, then the increase in soil respiration associated with a uniform global warming of 0.3 °C at the end of the next decade could increase soil respiration by almost 2 Pg C yr^{-1} (Raich & Schlesinger 1992). This may be seen as a substantial, positive feedback to the greenhouse effect. Alternatively, Carlyle & Than (1988) studied the effects of soil moisture and soil temperature in two models (GRESP and BRESP) to predict soil respiration. Both models overestimated respiration at low moisture levels, because the Q_{10} quotient had initially been given a fixed value in both models (Carlyle & Than 1988). Inclusion of a moisture dependent Q_{10} term in a revised version of GRESP, however, gave an excellent fit with measured respiration ($r^2 = 0.85$).

A common shortcoming of the above mentioned "book keeping" models is that they do not account for the CO_2 fertilization effect (e.g. Esser 1990). This "limitation" also applies to the equilibrium model of Wolf & Janssen (1991) which they propose to use to calculate the effect on net CO_2 emissions associated with rates of tropical deforestation, as well as those associated with a "possible" shift of climate zones with their characteristic vegetation.

4.5.3 Examples of dynamic models

The interest for developing dynamic CO_2-simulation models continues to increase. An example of a well known dynamic model is OBM, the Osnabruck Biosphere Model (Esser 1987). In this model, carbon transfer rates and transfer coefficients, respectively, are calculated on a grid basis from environmental variables such as mean annual temperature, average annual precipitation, CO_2 concentration of the atmosphere, soil fertility, related vegetation formation, and land use category. The relevant equations are based on theoretical considerations and have been calibrated against ecological field data or data from physiological experiments. For a complete description of the assumptions and procedures of OBM and its data requirements reference is made to Esser (1987 & 1990). For descriptions of other dynamic global C models see for instance Goudriaan & Ketner (1984), Goudriaan (1987, 1989) and Walker & Kasting (1992). Examples of terrestrial-biosphere models include those developed by King *et al.* (1989) and Schimel *et al.* (1990).

Schimel *et al.* (1990), with reference to the CENTURY model, discussed the steps required to develop ecosystem models for regional extrapolation. First, driving variables for the processes of interest need to be identified. Then, relationships between the driving variables and rates of the processes have to be quantified. Subsequently, the geography of the driving variables must be assessed. This information may then serve to develop regional simulation models. Schimel *et al.* (1990) indicate that if the environmental variables have been identified, much of the spatial variability in rates of processes can be simulated. These researchers consider the above approach a suitable mechanism for extrapolation from process measurements typically conducted in the laboratory or in small scale fields to the regional level.

Jenkinson *et al.* (1991) extended the ROTHAMSTED simulation model to the global scale to predict how much CO_2 will be liberated from the world soil organic matter pool for a given rise in temperature. Jenkinson *et al.* (1991) calculated that if world temperature would rise by 0.03 °C annually, the most probable increase according to IPCC (1990), the additional release of CO_2 from soil organic matter over the next 60 years will be 61 Pg C. This corresponds with about 19 % of the CO_2 that will be released by combustion of fossil fuel during the next 60 years under the assumption that present fuel use remains at the current level (Jenkinson 1990). In the modelling exercise Jenkinson *et al.* (1991) set the clay content for all soils at 20 %, a recognized (yet not necessary) source of error.

Van Breemen & Feijtel (1990) discuss a procedure to model the CO_2 balance of soil units from the FAO/Unesco Soil Map of the World. Besides soil data, information is needed on climate and land use as these essentially determine the net primary production and hence the inputs of fresh organic matter into the soil. According to Van Breemen & Feijtel (1990) the following soil factors should ideally be considered in such an exercise: depth of soil profile, textural make up; nature of the clay fraction (incl. percentage of allophane); presence or absence of calcium carbonate; weatherability of silicate minerals; soil drainage class. Van Breemen & Feijtel outline, in general terms, how information on the specified soil factors could be derived from the "qualitative" terminology of the FAO/Unesco Soil Map of the World. These data have been proposed for inclusion as attributes in the WISE soil data base, but then as quantitative attributes (see Chapter 6). With good geographic data on land use and changes in land use together with georeferenced soil data, process-oriented models should ultimately replace the more common book-keeping methods to estimate changes in CO_2 fluxes from soils (Van Breemen & Feijtel

1990). Several possible sources of uncertainty in current soil data sets - of importance for studies of changes in carbon pools - are discussed in Section 4.5.4.

4.5.4 Uncertainty in soil carbon data

Several sources of uncertainty may be encountered when modelling changes in the organic carbon content of soils upon a predefined change in land use. The discussion below mainly concerns the soil attribute data. Information will be also be required on the type and extent of the various land use changes which forms an additional source of uncertainty. This aspect has been extensively discussed by Bouwman (1990a).

Sampling intensity and density

Huntington *et al.* (1988) assessed whether an intensive sampling programme can provide estimates of soil C and N pool size with sufficiently small confidence limits that changes of 20 % of the means can be detected. To this avail 60 plots were selected out of a total of 360 from a 25 x 25 m grid, located in a northern hardwood forest ecosystem. Huntington *et al.* (1988) stratified the plots into six elevation bands to ensure adequate representations of the elevation gradient, soil mapping units, topography and tree species. The number of plots per band was weighted by the proportion of the watershed represented by the elevation band. The location of pits within plots was also randomly selected. Sampling was according to depth strata as this was considered more repeatable than per genetic horizon (0-10, 10-20, and 20 cm to bottom of B horizon). Mann (1986), however, found that a 30 cm sampling depth provided a less variable estimate ($r^2 = 0.9$) of changes in carbon than a sampling depth of 15 cm ($r^2 = 0.6$). This indicates that a judicious selection of sampling depth will be needed to adequately reflect changes in soil C content upon changes in land use (see under sampling methodology).

Huntington *et al.* (1988) calculated the minimum detectable changes (defined as 1.96 times the standard error) in total C pool sizes for the forest floor and 0-10 cm depth stratum were 5.9 and 2.4 Mg C ha^{-1}, respectively. Based on these findings they concluded that large scale disturbances, such as harvesting of timber, may produce statistically measurable changes within a period of 5 to 20 yr. In practice, however, few studies of modifications in soil organic matter content upon a change in land use have considered the kind of sampling intensity as used by Huntington *et al.* (1988).

Sampling methodology

Besides the sampling density/scheme the technique of analysis can be important in identifying changes in soil carbon pools. Jones *et al.* (1990), for instance, found that while changes between burned and unburned sites were sufficiently marked after a period of 34 years to be detectable by total analysis, differences between annual, biennial and triennial burnings were more subtle requiring the measurement of mineralization rates and microbial biomass, a more sensitive technique. In order to determine the effects of land use on soil C, the soil sampling scheme must distinguish clearly between effects on plant roots from those on mineral-soil organic matter (Richter *et al.* 1990). In view of the nature of the frequency distribution of soil carbon data in Australian Great Soil Groups, Spain *et al.* (1983) considered it preferable to present summaries of these data in terms of medians and interquartiles instead of averages. Out of necessity, however, many studies of soil C changes induced by modifications in land use practices do only consider single pit (e.g., in "paired" studies) or average carbon data.

During routine soil surveys, soil samples are taken according to the horizonation which reflects the pedogenesis. These depth "layers" do not necessarily coincide with the depth zone that will be affected by a change in land use. As land use practices may influence horizonation, soil bulk density in any soil, similar soil depth ranges "before" and "after" cultivation need not correspond with similar volumes of soil, making the comparison for changes in organic carbon content cumbersome. An additional problem is that bulk density data are seldom provided on a routine basis in many soil survey reports (see Msanya 1987). In case of missing data, Post *et al.* (1982) calculated bulk density using a regression function of the following form: $bd = bo + b1*d + b2*\log(cf)$, with bd the bulk density, d the depth to the centre of the horizon, and cf the mass fraction of organic carbon. Post *et al.* (1982) assumed bulk density does not greatly with depth in soils from the same vegetation type. The fact that this need not be so is apparent from the low coefficients of determination ($r^2 = 0.18$ to 0.52) which reflect the poor predictive capability of the proposed regression function. Soil structure/porosity, soil texture/mineralogy and soil carbon content are important determinants of bulk density which ideally should be considered when developing pedotransfer functions for bulk density. Additionally, the volume of coarse fragments should be considered in calculations of carbon density.

Analytical methods

The way according to which soil organic matter and soil organic carbon content are determined in the laboratory also has repercussions on the estimates of soil organic C-reserves. With respect to the commonly used Walkley-Black method, Allison (1965) recommends using a conversion factor of 1.33 to account for incomplete oxidation unless more accurate methods - e.g., dry combustion, an estimator of actual organic C - are available for comparison. Similarly, in their study of organic matter in surface soils from Australia, Spain *et al.* (1983) scaled all the Walkley-Black data by this arbitrary (but widely used) average factor to convert them to a level comparable with that obtained by dry combustion. A correction factor > 1 indicates the presence of organic compounds that are resistant to chemical digestion but which are readily broken down by high temperature dry combustion, while a correction factor of <1 possibly indicates the presence of ferrous iron in the samples (Allison 1965). Recent statistical analyses by Grewal *et al.* (1991), for 40 samples from 8 New Zealand soils with a wide range in texture (20-56 %) and organic matter content (2-16 %), suggest an average conversion factor of 1.25 irrespective of the position in surface or subsurface horizon. Our recomputation of the individual conversion ratios for the respective horizons, however, indicates a fairly wide range between the individual conversion factors of about 1.1 - 1.6, corresponding with individual recoveries in the range 62 to 85 %. Similarly, in the original study of Walkley & Black (1934) the individual recoveries ranged from 60 to 80 %.

In the 8 soils studied by Grewal *et al.* (1991) there was no clear tendency in the recovery ratio to either decrease or increase consistently with soil depth. Alternatively, Edwards & Todd-Ross (1983) used correction factors for "high temperature dry combustion / Walkley & Black" of 1.08, 0.90, and 1.38 for the 0-15, 15-30 and 30-45 cm depth zones, respectively. Basically, the higher correction factor for the 30-45 cm zone, as compared to the 0-15 and 15-40 cm zone reflects the fact the ratio of relatively inert organic compounds to readily decomposable compounds should increase with increasing depth from the readily decomposable litter and root detritus near the surface. In the soil studied by Edwards & Ross-Todd (1983) the 30-45 cm layer was almost devoid of roots. Richter *et al.* (1990 p. 79) used the "uncorrected" Walkley & Black values when studying the effect of annual tillage on soil organic carbon levels; according to these researchers the correction factors vary too widely. Tiurin (as quoted in the Transactions of the 1930 International Congress of Soil Science, p. 124) suggested a comparison of the titration value with the amount of CO_2 actually liberated by oxidation might be used to characterise the type of organic matter present.

The organic matter (OM) content has frequently been estimated by loss on ignition and organic C content by using a "C/OM" ratio. Considerable error is expected when a single C/OM ratio is used, because the ratio varies depending upon soil type and soil depth (Nelson & Sommers 1982). The review of Nelson & Sommers (1982) showed a range of 0.40 to 0.59 for the C/OM ratio. Schlesinger (1977) criticized his own use of the commonly adopted "standard" correction factor of 58 % (1/1.724) for converting from soil organic matter to carbon because there should be a qualitative change in the nature of organic matter with depth. This aspect may be illustrated by the study of Huntington *et al.* (1989). These researchers observed the carbon concentration decreases more rapidly with depth than the organic matter concentration, resulting in a decrease in C/OM ratio from 0.56 in the Oi + Oe horizon of the forest floor to 0.44 in the Bs2 horizon of a forested Spodosol. In an earlier study, Huntington *et al.* (1988) measured a conversion factor of 0.55 ± 0.02 (kg/kg) for "C/OM loss on ignition" for forest floor samples in their study, while 0.45 ± 0.09 was found for the mineral soil. Similarly, the C/OM ratio commonly changes with the nature of the vegetation present. Wolf & Janssen (1991), for instance, used different C concentrations for crop residues, tree litter, manure and soil organic matter (average C/OM ratios of 0.45, 0.48, 0.50 and 0.58, respectively) in their modelling study.

Although the above discussion shows the use of "standard" conversion factors for "incomplete oxidation (1.33)" and "C/OM conversion (58 %)" irrespective of the vegetation/crop cover, type of humus, and soil depth need not be justified, it will often be necessary to use these conversion factors in studies at the global level as there are no other valid alternatives. Procedures for estimating soil organic matter content from remote sensing remain in the early stages of development (see Henderson *et al.* 1989).

Type of data sources

It has been proposed to include numerical data for representative major soil units (*sensu* FAO/Unesco 1988) in the WISE data base as point data (see Chapter 6). From a scientific point of view the use of point data may conflict with the spatial resolution (and related level of abstraction) required in a small scale, 1/2 by 1/2 degree grid mapping exercise. Alternatively, actual soil carbon data as a function of depth will be needed for each major soil if quantitative estimates of global C pools are to be refined.

Most data on the "worldwide organic soil carbon and nitrogen data" of Zinke *et al.* (1991) tape originate from profiles under natural vegetation. Thereby, they form a baseline for evaluation of effects of disturbance and modification to natural vegetation on soil carbon equilibrium in regional and global studies. Soil carbon data derived from routine soil survey reports, however, need not correspond with "steady state" conditions. Although soil pits description will mostly present information on current land use often they do not specify the past land use history. Nor do they indicate at which moment in time eventual changes in land use, and related modifications in soil organic matter dynamics, may have occurred nor do they tell us anything about the nature of these changes. Nevertheless, we believe the available numerical data should be stored in WISE as they provide the best (and only) alternative available today for georeferenced quantitative studies of e.g., soil carbon at the global level. Similarly, of necessity Kimble *et al.* (1990) did not consider differences in "cropping systems and native vegetation" in their study of organic carbon in tropical and temperate soils. The alternative of compiling "synthetic carbon profiles" for the major soil units (*sensu* FAO/Unesco Soil Map of the World), as was done by Bouwman (1990a), we do not consider the most suitable alternative for application in a georeferenced soil data base. The use synthetic soil profiles has been shown to be unpractical (see e.g., Van Engelen & Pulles 1991).

4.6 Conclusions

The understanding of the global carbon cycle markedly has improved in recent years, so as to permit the development and testing of dynamic models (e.g., Bolin 1986; Esser 1990; Goudriaan 1989), yet there remain several sources of uncertainty. While the CO_2 emissions associated with fossil fuel burning, ocean-atmosphere transport and wide scale deforestation/biomass burning are fairly well understood and quantified in the global budget some of the carbon is still "missing" if the budget is to be balanced. These uncertainties to a large degree seem to be related to the still poorly understood role of terrestrial biota and soils in the turnover of carbon.

Quantification of the past and present global exchange of atmospheric CO_2 associated with growth of terrestrial plants and soil respiration remains difficult in view of the ubiquitous, and spatially and temporarily diverse nature of the underlying physical, chemical and biological processes. The greatest challenge to the projections of General Circulation Models may well come from the realm of biology as these elaborate models essentially operate within the confines of physics and physical chemistry (Idso 1991). So far, they account little for the complex functioning of the living world.

An important topic of discussion relates to how the fertilization effect of enhanced levels of atmospheric CO_2, and other atmospheric pollutants, will affect the carbon flow in terrestrial ecosystems through its effect on photosynthesis, the distribution of photosynthates over aerial and subaerial parts, the "quality" of these photosynthates, their decay in litter and soil, and ultimately the effect on soil organic mater reserves. How will the biological processes be influenced, for instance, by acid deposition or alternatively eutrophication associated with agricultural, urban and industrial activities? What will be the nature of the carbon feedback from different ecosystems, also seen in the perspective that the latitudinal and altitudinal boundaries of ecosystems are likely to shift as a result of possible regional and seasonal changes in temperature and rainfall associated with global warming? Can the present biota "cope" with the anticipated, relatively rapid nature of the predicted climate change? And how will this affect future biotic diversity? Or what will be the consequences of the increasing human population and related increased demands for arable and urban land for the size of the terrestrial carbon pool? These are but a few of the sources of uncertainty that still need to be resolved to better understand the effects of biota on soil carbon reserves in terms of sequestering of atmospheric CO_2.

Within the framework of the related modelling activities there would be a clear need for up to date and georeferenced information on slected, essential "key properties" (e.g., organic C; texture; bulk density) of the FAO soil unitds of the world. This type of data proposed for inclusion in the 1/2 x 1/2 degree resolution global soil data base that will be compiled during the second phase of the WISE programme. The WISE data base would also allow to refine the still widely varying estimates of current soil carbon pools, and show how the soil carbon reserves are geographically distributed on a global terrestrial grid.

4.7 References

Adams, J.M., H. Faure, L. Faure-Denard, J.M. McGlade & F.I. Woodward 1990b. Increases in terrestrial carbon storage from the Last Glacial maximum to the present. *Nature 348, 711-714.*

Adams, R.M., C. Rosenzwieg and 8 others 1990a. Global climate change and US agriculture. *Nature 345, 219-224.*

Aerts, R., N. Berendse, M. Klerk & C. Bakker 1988. Root production and root turnover in two dominant species of wet heathlands. *Oecologia 81, 374-378.*

Agren, G.I. & E. Bosatta 1987. Theoretical analysis of the long-term dynamics of carbon and nitrogen in soils. *Ecology 68, 1181-1189.*

Aiken, G.R., D.M. McKnight, R.L. Wershaw & P. MacCarthy 1985a. An introduction to humic substances in soil, sediments and water. In: *Humic substances in soil, sediment, and water* (eds G.R. Aiken, D.M. McKnight & R.L. Wershaw). John Wiley, New York. p. 1-9.

Aiken, R.M., M.D. Jawson. K. Grahammer & A.D. Polymenopoulos 1991. Positional, spatially correlated and random components of variability in carbon dioxide efflux. *Journal of Env. Quality 20, 301-308.*

Akita, S. & D.N. Moss 1973. Photosynthetic responses to CO2 and light by maize and wheat leaves adjusted for constant stomatal apertures. *Crop Science 13, 234-237.*

Alexander, M. 1977. *Introduction to soil microbiology* (2nd Edition). John Wiley and Sons,New York.

Allison, L.E. 1965. Organic carbon. In: *Methods of soil analysis, part 2: Chemical and microbiological properties* (C.A. Black et al.). Agronomy 9:771-1572, Am. Soc. of Agronomy, Madison, Wisconsin.

Almendos, G., F.J. Gonzalez-Vila & F. Martin 1990. Fire-induced transformations of soil organic matter from an oak forest: An experimental approach to the effects of fire on humic substances. *Soil Science 149, 158-168.*

Amundson, R.G. & E.A. Davidson 1990. Carbon dioxide and nitrogenous gases in the soil atmosphere. *Journal of Geochemical Exploration 38, 13-41.*

Anderson, J.M. & J.S. Ingram (eds) 1989. *Tropical soil biology and fertility: A handbook of methods.* C.A.B. International, Wallingford.

Anderson, D.W. & E.A. Paul 1984. Organo-mineral complexes and their study by radiocarbon dating. *Soil Sci. Soc. Am. J. 48, 298-301.*

Anderson, J.M. & P.W. Flanagan 1990. Biological processes regulating organic matter decomposition in tropical soils. In: Coleman et al. (eds) 1990, p. 97-123.

Anderson, D.W., S. Saggar, J.R. Bettany and J.W.B.Stewart 1981. Particle size fractions and their use in studies of soil organic matter. I. The nature and distribution of forms of carbon, nitrogen, and sulphur. *Soil Sci. Soc. Am. J. 45, 767-772.*

Armentanao, T.V. & E.S. Menges 1986. Patterns of change in the carbon balance of organic soil -wetlands of the temperate zone. *J. Ecol. 74, 755-774.*

Arnold, R.W., I. Szabolcs & V.O. Targulian 1990. *Global soil change: Report of an IIASA-ISSS-UNEP task force on the role of soil in global change.* International Institute for Applied Systems Analysis, Laxenburg.

Ayanaba, A. & D.S. Jenkinson 1990. Decomposition of Carbon-14 labelled rye grass and maize under tropical conditions. *Soil Sci. Soc. Am. J. 54, 112-115.*

Bacastraw, R.B., C.D. Keeling & T.P. Whorf 1985. Seasonal amplitude increase in atmospheric CO_2 concentration. *J. Geophysical Research 90, 10529-10540.*

Bagine, R.K.N. 1989. Plant litter consumption by termites in an arid environment of northern Kenya. *Sociobiology 15, 113-124.*

Balesdent, J. 1987. The turnover of soil organic fractions estimated by radiocarbon dating. *Sci. of Total Environment 62, 405-408.*

Balesdent, J., G.H. Wagner & A. Mariotti 1988. Soil organic matter turnover in long-term field experiments as revealed by Carbon-13 natural abundance. *Soil Sci. Soc. Am. J. 52, 118-124.*

Balesdent, J., J.-P. Petraud & C. Feller 1991. Effets des ultrasons sur la distribution granulometrique des matieres organiques des soils. *Science du Sol 29, 95-106.*

Barnes, I., W.P. Irvin & D.E. White 1984. *Map showing world distribution of CO2 and major zones of seismicity.* Misc. Investigation Series Map I-1528, Dept. of the Interiors, US Geological Survey.

Bartels, U. 1990. Organic Carbon deposited by rainfall into spruce and beech forests in North Rhine-Westfalia (In German with English summary). *Z. Plflanzenernärhr. Bodenk. 153, 125-127.*

Bauer, A. & A.L. Black 1981. Soil carbon, nitrogen and bulk density comparisons in two cropland tillage systems after 25 years and in virgin grasslands. *Soil Sci. Soc. Am. J. 45, 1166-1170.*

Bazzaz, F.A. & W.E. Williams 1991. Atmospheric CO2 concentrations within mixed forest: Implications for seedling growth. *Ecology 72, 12-16.*

Bazzaz, F.A. & E.D. Fajer 1992. Plant life in a CO2 rich world. *Scientific American 266, 18-24.*

Beauchamp, E., J.T. Trevors & J.W. Paul 1989. Carbon sources for denitrification. In: *Advances in Soil Science*, Volume 10 (ed. B.A. Stewart). Springer Verlag, New York. p. 113-142.

Beck, L. 1989. Beech forest soil as habitat. I. Soil fauna and litter decomposition - an overview (In German with English summary). *Verhandlungen Gesellschaft fur Okologie 17, 47-54.*

Bennema, J. 1974. Organic carbon profiles in Oxisols. *Pédologie XXV, 119-146.*

Berner, A.R. 1991. A model for atmospheric CO2 over Phanerozoic time. *Am. Journal of Science 291, 339-376.*

Bertram, H.G. 1985. Verlauf der stabilen Kohlenstoffisotope in natürlich gewachsenen Profilen: Stratigraphisches Hilfmittel und Modellgrundlange. *Mitt. der Deutschen Bodenk. Gesellschaft 43(II), 531-536.*

Bertram, H.G. 1991. Carbon dioxide and climate: Climatic impact of soil-borne CO2. In: *Diversity of environmental biogeochemistry* (ed. J. Berthelin). Elsevier, Amsterdam. p. 392-395.

Beyer, L. 1991. Intersite characterization and variability of soil respiration in different arable and forest soils. *Biol. Fertil. Soils 12, 121-126.*

Bohn, H.l. 1982. Estimates of organic carbon in world soils: II. 1982. *Soil Sci. Soc. Am. J. 46, 1118-1119.*

Bohn, H.L. 1990. Considerations for modelling carbon interaction between soil and atmosphere. In: *Soils and the greenhouse effect* (ed. A.F. Bouwman). John Wiley & Sons, Chichester. p. 391-394.

Bolin, B. (ed) 1981. *Carbon cycle modelling.* SCOPE 16, John Wiley & Sons, Chichester.

Bolin, B. 1986a. Requirements of a satisfactory model of the global carbon cycle and current status of modelling. In: *The changing carbon cycle: a global analysis* (eds. J.R. Trabalka & D.E. Reichle). Springer Verlag, New York etc. P. 403-424.

Bolin, B. 1986b. How much CO2 will remain in the atmosphere? The carbon cycle and projections for the future. In: *The greenhouse effect, climatic change and ecosystems* (eds Bolin, B., B.R. Böös, J. Jäger & R.A. Warrick). SCOPE 29, John Wiley and Sons, Chichester. p. 93-155

Bolin, B., B.R. Böös, J. Jäger & R.A. Warrick (eds) 1986a. *The greenhouse effect, climatic change and ecosystems.* SCOPE 29, John Wiley and Sons, Chichester.

Bolin, B., J. Jager & B.R. Doos 1986b. The greenhouse effect, climatic change, and ecosystems. In: *The greenhouse effect, climatic change and ecosystems* (eds Bolin, B., B.R. Böös, J. Jäger & R.A. Warrick). SCOPE 29, John Wiley and Sons, Chichester. p. 1-31.

Bonde, T.A. 1991. *Size and dynamics of active soil organic matter fraction as influenced by soil management.* Linköping Studies in Arts and Science 63, Linköping University, Sweden.

Bonde, T.A., T. Roswall & R.L. Victoria, 1991. The dynamics of soil organic matter and soil microbial biomass following clear-felling and cropping of a tropical rainforest in the central Amazon. *Soil Sci. Soc. Am. J.* (submitted).

Boudot, J.P., B.A. Bel Hadj & T. Chone 1986. Carbon mineralization in Andosols and aluminium-rich highland soils. *Soil Biology and Biochemistry 18, 457-461.*

Boudot, J.P., B.A. Bel Hadj & T. Chone 1990. Dependence of carbon and nitrogen mineralization rates upon amorphous metallic constituents and allophanes in highland soils. *Geoderma 42, 245-260.*

Bouwman, A.F. 1990a. *Soils and the greenhouse effect.* John Wiley & Sons, Chichester.

Bouwman, A.F. 1990b. Modelling soil organic matter decomposition and rainfall erosion in two tropical soils after forest clearing for permanent agriculture. *Land Degradation and rehabilitation 1, 125-140.*

Bouwman, A.F. & W.G. Sombroek 1990. Inputs to climatic change by soils and agriculture related activities: Present status and possible future trends. In: *Soils on a warmer Earth* (eds H.W. Scharpenseel, H.W., M. Schomaker & A. Ayoub). Developments in Soil Science 20, Elsevier, Amsterdam. p. 15-30.

Bolle, H.-J., W. Seiler & B. Bolin 1986. Other greenhouse gases and aerosols: Assessing their influence for atmospheric radiative transfer. In: *The greenhouse effect: Climatic change and ecosystems* (eds B. Bolin, B.R. Doos, J. Jager & R.A. Warrick). SCOPE 29, John Wiley & Sons, New York. p. 157-203.

Bowman, R.A., J.D. Reeder & R.W. Lober 1990. Changes in soil properties in a Central Plains rangeland soil after 3, 20 and 60 years of cultivation. *Soil Science 150, 851-*

Bosatta, E. & G.I. Agren 1991. Theoretic analysis of carbon and nutrient interactions in soils under energy limited conditions. *Soil Sci. Soc. Am. J. 55, 728-733.*

Bremer, E., W. Van Houtum & C. van Kessel 1991. Carbon dioxide evolution from wheat and lentil residues as affected by grinding, added nitrogen, and the absence of soil. *Biology and Fertility of Soils 11, 221-227.*

Broeckner, W.S. & T.-H. Peng 1992. Interhemispheric transport of carbon dioxide by ocean circulation. *Nature 356, 587-589.*

Brown, S. & A.E. Lugo 1984. Biomass of tropical forest: A new estimate based on forest volumes. *Science 223, 1290-1293.*

Brown, S. & A.E. Lugo 1990. Effects of forest clearing and succession on the carbon and nitrogen content of soils in Puerto Rico and US Virgin Islands. *Plant and Soil 124, 53-64.*

Brouwer, F.M., A.J. Thomas & M.J. Chadwick 1991. *Land use changes in Europe: Processes of change, environmental transformations and future trends.* Volume 18, The GeoJournal Library, Kluwer Academic Publishers, Dordrecht.

Buringh, P. 1984. Organic carbon in soils of the world. In: *The role of terrestrial vegetation in the global carbon cycle. Measurement by remote sensing* (ed. G.M. Woodwell). SCOPE 23, Wiley & Sons, New York. p. 91-109.

Burke, L.M. & D.A. Lashof 1990. Greenhouse gas emissions related to agriculture and land use policies. In: Kimball et al. 1990, p. 27-43.

Buschiazzo, D.E., A.R. Quiroga & K. Starr 1991. Patterns of organic matter accumulation in soils of the semi-arid Argentinean Pampas. *Z. Pflanzenemährr. Bodenk. 154, 437-441.*

Campbell, C.A., E.A. Paul, D.A. Rennie & K.J. McCallum 1967a. Factors affecting the accuracy of the carbon dating method in soil humus studies. *Soil Sci. 104, 181-185.*

Campbell, C.A., E.A. Paul, D.A. Rennie & K.J. McCallum 1967b. Dynamics of soil humus utilizing C dating techniques. *Soil Sci. 104, 217-224.*

Carlyle, J.C. & U.B.A. Than 1988. Abiotic controls of soil respiration beneath an eighteen year old Pinus radiata stand in south-eastern Australia. *J. Ecology 76, 654-662.*

Castelle, A.J. & J.N. Galloway 1990. Carbon dioxide dynamics in acid forest soils in Shenandoah National Park, Virginia. *Soil. Sci. Soc. Am. J. 54, 252-257.*

CDIAC 1992. *CDIAC communications No. 16,* Carbon Dioxide Information Analysis Center, Oak Ridge National Laboratory, Oak Ridge.

Cepeda-Pizarro, J.G. & W.G. Whitford 1990. Decomposition patterns of surface litter of six plant species along a Chihuahuan desert watershed. *American Midland Naturalist 123, 319-330.* (In: Soils and Fertilizers 1990, 53, p. 1514).

Cerri, C.C., B. Volkoff & B.P. Eduardo 1985. Effect of deforestation on the microbial biomass of a Yellow Latosol from Amazonia, Brazil (In Portuguese with English summary). *Rev. Bras. de Cienca do Solo 9, 1-4.*

Chone, T., F. Andreux, J.C. Correa, B. Volkoff & C.C. Cerri 1991. Changes in organic matter on an Oxisol from the Central Amazonian forest during eight years as pasture determined by 13C isotopic composition. In: *Diversity of environmental biogeochemistry* (ed. J. Berthelin). Elsevier, Amsterdam. p. 397-405.

Chen, Y. & T. Aviad 1990. Effects of humic substances on plant growth. In: MacCarthy et al. 1990a. p. 161-186.

Chiou, C.T. 1990. Roles of organic matter, minerals, and moisture in sorption of non-ionic compounds and pesticides by soil. In: MacCarthy et al. 1990. p. 111-161.

Chotte, J.L. 1988. Importance de l'activite rhizospherique dans la dynamique de reconstruction du stock organique des soils (Vertisol, Martinique). *Cahiers ORSTOM, Série Pédologie 24, 345-346.*

Christensen, B.T. & L.H. Sorensen 1985. The distribution of native and labelled carbon between soil particle fractions isolated from two long term incubation experiments. *J. Soil Sci. 36, 219-229.*

Colberg, P.J. 1988. Anaerobic microbial degradation of cellulose, lignin, oligolignols, and monoaromatic lignin derivatives. In: *Biology of anaerobic microorganisms* (ed. A.J.B. Zehnder). Wiley Interscience, New York. p. 333-372.

Cole, C.V., J.W.B.Stewart, H.W. Hunt & W.J. Parton 1986. Cycling of carbon, nitrogen, sulphur and phosphorus: Controls and interactions. *Transactions 13th ISSS Congress, Hamburg 1986.* p. 636-643.

Coleman, D.C., J.M. Oades & G. Uehara 1989. *Dynamics of soil organic matter in tropical ecosystems.* NifTAL Project, University of Hawaii Press, Honolulu.

Crutzen, P.J. & M.O. Andreae 1990. *Science 250, 1669-1678.*

Cuevas, E. & E. Medina 1988. Nutrient dynamics within Amazonian forests. II. Fine root growth, nutrient availability and leaf litter composition. *Oecologia 76, 222-235.*

Cure, J.D. & B. Acock 1986. Crop responses to carbon dioxide doubling: a literature survey. *Agricultural and Forest Meteorology 38, 127-145.*

Dabin, B. 1980. Les mattières organiques dans les sols tropicaux normalement drainés. *Cah. ORSTOM, sér. Pédol. XVIII, 193-196.*

DeLaune, R.D., W.H. Patrick Jr. & N. van Breemen 1990. Processes governing marsh formation in a rapidly subsiding coastal environment. *Catena 17, 277-288.*

Detwiler, R.P. 1986. Land use change and the global carbon cycle: The role of tropical soils. *Biogeochemistry 2, 67-93.*

Detwiler, R.P. & C.A.S. Hall 1988. Tropical forests and the global carbon cycle. *Science 239, 42-47.*

Dokuchaev, V.V. 1882. *Systematic map of Chernozem areas in Russia* (1:4.2 M). (Map reference SU 9d in ISRIC's historical map collection).

Doormaar, J.F. 1990. Effect of active roots on the decomposition of soil organic materials. *Biology and Fertility of Soils 10, 121-126.*

Doran, J.W., L.N. Mielke & J.F. Power 1990. Microbial activity as regulated by water filled pore space. In: *Transactions 14th Int. Congress of Soil Science, Kyoto.* p. 94-99.

Dyer, J.M. & G.A. Brook 1991. Spatial and temporal variations in temperate forest soil carbon dioxide during the non-growing season. *Earth Surface Processes and Landforms 16, 411-426* (Quoted in Soil and Fertilizers 1991, 54 p. 1678).

Edwards, N.T. & B.M. Ross-Todd 1983. Soil carbon dynamics in a mixed deciduous forest following clear-cutting with and without residue removal. *Soil Sci. Soc. Am. J. 47, 1014-1021.*

Eijsackers, H. & A.J.B. Zehnder 1990. Litter decomposition: A Russian matriochka doll. *Biogeochemistry 11, 153-174.*

Elliot, E.T. 1986. Aggregate structure and carbon, nitrogen and phosphorus in native and cultivated soils. *Soil Sci. Soc. Am. J. 50, 627-683.*

Emanuel, W.R., G.G. Killough, W.M. Post & H.H. Shugart 1984. Modelling terrestrial ecosystems in the global carbon cycle with shifts in carbon storage capacity by land use change. *Ecologia 65, 970-983.*

Eriksson, H. 1991. Sources and sinks of CO2 in Sweden. *Ambio 20, 146-150.*

Esser, G. 1987. Sensitivity of global carbon pools and fluxes to human and potential climatic effects. *Tellus 39B, 245-260.*

Esser, G. 1990. Osnabrück Biosphere Model: Construction, structure, results. In: *Facets of Modern Ecology* (eds G. Esser & Overdieck). Elsevier, Amsterdam. p. 3-30 (In print)

Essex, C. 1991. What do climate models tell us about global warming? *Pure & Applied Geophysics 135, 125-133.*

Estes, J.E. & M.J. Cosentino 1989. Remote sensing of vegetation. In: *Global ecology: Towards a science of the biosphere* (eds M.B. Rambler, L. Margalis & R. Fester). Academic Press Inc., Bosrton. p. 75-111.

FAO 1977. *Guidelines for soil profile description.* FAO, Rome.

FAO 1984. *Land evaluation for forestry.* Forestry Paper No. 48. FAO, Rome.

FAO/UNEP 1981. *Tropical forest resources assessment project. Forest resources of Tropical America. Forest resources of Tropical Africa. Forest resources of Tropical Asia.* FAO, Rome.

FAO/Unesco 1971-1981. *Soil Map of the World* (1:5 M scale). Volumes I to 10. Unesco, Paris.

FAO/Unesco 1989. *Soil map of the world: Revised legend.* World Soil Resources Report 60, FAO, Rome.

Feller, C. 1988. Effet de differents systemes de culture sur les stocks organiques de sols argileux tropicaux des Petites Antilles. *Cahiers ORSTOM, Serie Pedologie 24, 341-343.*

Feller, C. 1991. Organic inputs, soil organic matter and functional soil organic compartments in some tropical agrosystems: Examples for low activity clay soils. In: *Dynamics of organic matter in relation to the sustainability of agricultural systems.* Abstract book of International Symposium held at Leuven, Belgium, Nov. 3-6 1991.

Feller, C., G. Burtin, G. Bedard & J. Balesdent 1991. Utilisation des resines et des ultrasons dans le fractionement granulometrique de la matiere organique des soils. Interet et limites. *Science du Sol 29, 77-93.*

Franzmeier, D.P., G.D. Lemme & R.J. Miles 1985. Organic carbon in soils of North Central United States. *Soil Sci. Soc. Am. J. 49, 702-708.*

Fraser, P.J., W.P. Elliot & L.S. Waterman 1986. Atmospheric CO2 record from direct chemical measurements during the 19th century. In: *The changing carbon cycle: A global perspective* (eds J.R. Trabalka & D.E. Reichle). Springer Verlag, New York. p. 66-88.

Frechman, D.W. 1988. Bacterivorous nematodes and organic matter decomposition. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment 24, 195-217.*

Freijer, J.I. & W. Bouten 1991. A comparison of field methods for measuring soil carbon dioxide evolution: experiments and simulation. *Plant and Soil 135, 133-142.*

Frimmel, F.H. & R.F. Christman (eds) 1988. *Humic substances and their role in the environment.* Wiley Interscience, New York.

Gabriels, D. & P. Michiels 1991. Soil organic matter and water erosion processes. In: *Advances in soil organic matter research* (ed. W.S. Wilson). Special Publication No. 90, The Royal Society of Chemistry, Cambridge. p. 141-152.

Gardini, F., L.V. Antisari, M.E. Guerzoni & P. Sequi 1991. A simple gas chromatography approach to evaluate CO2 release, N2O evolution, and O2 uptake from soil. *Biology and Fertility of Soils 12, 1-4.*

Ghuman, B.S. & R. Lal 1989. Soil temperature effects of biomass burning in windrows after clearing a tropical rainforest. *Field Crops Research 22, 1-10.*

Goreau, T.J. 1990. Balancing atmospheric carbon dioxide. *AMBIO 19, 230-236.*

Gorham, E. 1988. Biotic impoverishment in northern peatlands. In: *Biotic impoverishment* (ed. G.M. Woodwell). Cambridge University Press, Cambridge.

Goudriaan, J. 1987. The biosphere as a driving force in the global carbon cycle. *Netherlands Journal of Agricultural Science 35, 177-187.*

Goudriaan, J. 1989. Modelling biospheric control of carbon fluxes between atmosphere, ocean and land in view of climatic change. In: *Climate and geosciences* (eds A. Berger, S. Schneider & J. Cl. Duplessy). Kluwer Acad. Publ. Dordrecht. p. 481-499.

Goudriaan, J. 1990. Atmospheric CO2, global carbon flux and the biosphere. In: *Theoretical production ecology: Reflections and prospects* (eds R. Rabbinge, J. Goudriaan, H. van Keulen, F.W.T. Penning de Vries & H.H. van Laan). Simulation Monographs 34, Pudoc, Wageningen.

Goudriaan, J. & D. Ketner 1984. A simulation study for the global carbon cycle, including man's impact on the biosphere. *Climatic Change 6, 167-192.*

Goudriaan, J. & M.H. Unsworth 1990. Implications of increasing carbon dioxide and climate change for agricultural productivity and water resources. In: *Impact of carbon dioxide, trace gases, and climate change on global agriculture.* (eds B.A. Kimball, N.J. Rosenberg & L.H. Allen Jr). ASA Special Publication No. 53, ASA/CSSA/SSSA. p. 111-130.

Graham, R.L., M.G.Turner & V.H. Dale 1990. How increasing CO2 and climate change affect forests. BioScience 40(80), 575-587.

Grahammer, K., M.D. Jawson & J. Skopp 1991. Day and night soil respiration from a grassland. *Soil Biol. Biochem. 23, 77-81.*

Grantham, R.L. 1989. Approaches to correcting the global greenhouse drift by managing tropical ecosystems. *Tropical Ecology 30, 157-174.*

Green, G.M. & R.W. Sussman 1990. Deforestation history of the eastern rainforest of Madagascar from satellite images. *Science 248, 212-215.*

Greene, R.S.B., C.J. Chartres & K.C. Hodgkinson 1990. The effects of fire on the soil in a degraded semi-arid woodland. I. Cryptogram cover and physical and micromorphological properties. *Aust. J. Soil Res. 28, 755-777.*

Greenland, D.J. & M.H.B. Hayes (eds) 1978. *The chemistry of soil constituents.* Wiley Interscience, New York.

Gregorich, E.G., R.G. Kachanoski & R.P. Voroney 1989. Carbon mineralization in soil size fractions after various amounts of aggregate disruption. *Journal of Soil Science 40, 649-659.*

Grewal, K.S., G.D. Buchan & R.R. Sherlock 1991. A comparison of three methods of organic carbon determination in some New Zealand Soils. *Journal of Soil Science 42, 251-257.*

Groffman, P.M. & J.M. Tiedje 1991. Relationships between denitrification, CO2 production and air filled porosity in soil of different texture and drainage. *Soil Biol. Biochem. 23, 299-302.*

Grotch, S.L. 1988. *Regional intercomparison of General Circulation Model predictions and historical climate data.* DOE/NBB-0084, TR041, US Department of Energy, Washington D.C.

Haimi, J. & V. Hutha 1990. Effects of earthworms on decomposition process in raw humus forest soils: A microcosm study. *Biol. and Fertility of Soils 10, 178-183.*

Hall, C.A.S., S. Brown, F.M. O'Hara Jr., P.B. Bogdonoff, D. Barshaw, E. Kaufman & S. Underhill 1988. *Bibliography on tropical rainforests and the global carbon cycle. Vol. 1. An introduction to the literature.* ORNL/CDIA-24/V1, Oak Ridge National Laboratory. Oak Ridge, Tennessee.

Harkness, D.D., A.F. Harrison & P.J. Bacon 1991. The potential of bomb-14C measurement for estimating soil organic matter turnover. In: *Advances in soil organic matter research* (ed. W.S. Wilson). Special Publication No. 90, The Royal Society of Chemistry, Cambridge. p. 238-251.

Harrison, A.F., D.D. Harkness & P.J. Bacon 1990. The use of bomb-14C for studying organic matter and N and P dynamics in a woodland soil. In: *Nutrient cycling in terrestrial ecosystems: Field methods, application and interpretation* (ed. A.F. Harrison, P. Ineson & O.W. Heal). Elsevier Applied Sci., Barking

Harrod, T.R., A.D. Carter & J.M. Hollis 1991. The role of soil organic matter in pesticide movement via run-off, soil erosion, and leaching. In: *Advances in soil organic matter research* (ed. W.S. Wilson). Special Publication No. 90, The Royal Society of Chemistry, Cambridge. p. 129-138.

Harvey, L.D.D. 1989. Effect of model structure on the response of terrestrial biosphere models to CO2 and temperature increases. *Global Biogeochemical Cycles 3, 137-153.*

Harvey, L.D.D. 1989. Managing atmospheric CO2. *Climatic Change 15, 343-381.*

Helal, H.M. & D. Sauerbeck 1986. Effect of plant roots on carbon metabolism of soil microbial biomass (In English). *Z. Pflanzenernaehr. Bodenk. 149, 181-188.*

Henderson, T.L., A. Szilagyi, M.F. Baumgardner, C.C. T. Che & D.A. Landgrebe 1989. Spectral band selection for classification of soil organic matter content. *Soil Sci. Soc. Am. J. 53, 1778-1784.*

Henderson-Sellers, A., R.E. Dickinson & M.F. Wilson 1988. Tropical deforestation: Important processes for climate models. *Climatic Change 13, 43-67.*

Hernani, L.C., E. Sakai, I. Ishimura & I.F. Lepsch 1987a. Effects of land clearing of secondary forest on a Yellow Latosol of the Ribeira Valley, State of Sao Paolo, Brazil. I. Dynamics of physical and chemical attributes and corn production (In Portuguese, with English summary). *R. bras. Ci. Solo 11, 205-213.*

Hernani, L.C., E. Sakai, F. Lombardi Neto & I.F. Lepsch 1987b. Effects of land clearing of secondary forest on a Yellow Latosol of the Ribeira Valley, State of Sao Paolo, Brazil. II. Erosion losses (In Portuguese, with English summary). *R. bras. Ci. Solo 11, 215-219.*

Hileman, B. 1990. Biomass burning: Environment hurt more than thought. *Chemical and Engineering News 68, 4-5.*

Holt, J.A. 1987. Carbon mineralization in semi-arid northeastern Australia: the role of termites. *Journal of Tropical Ecology 3, 255-263.*

Holt, J.A., M.J. Hodgen & D. Lamb 1990. Soil respiration in the seasonally dry tropics near Townsville, North Queensland. *Aust. J. Soil Res. 28, 737-745.*

Hopkins, D.W. & R.S. Shiel 1991. Spectroscopic characterization of organic matter from soil with mor and mull humus forms. In: *Advances in soil organic matter research* (ed. W.S. Wilson). Special Publication No. 90, The Royal Society of Chemistry, Cambridge. p. 71-78.

Hopkins, D.W., R.S. Shiel & A.G. O'Donnel 1988. The influence of sward species composition on the rate of organic matter decomposition in grassland soil. *J. of Soil Science 39, 385-392.*

Hopkins, D.W., D.M. Ibrahim, A.G.O'Donell & R.S. Shiled 1990. Decomposition of cellulose, soil organic matter and plant litter in a temperate grassland soil. *Plant and Soil 124, 79-85.*

Houghton, R.A. 1986. Estimating changes in the carbon content of terrestrial ecosystems from historical data. In: *The changing carbon cycle: A global analysis* (eds J.R. Trabalka & D.E. Reichle). Springer-Verlag, New York. p. 175-193.

Houghton, R.A. 1987. Biotic changes consistent with the increased seasonal amplitude of atmospheric CO_2 concentration. *J. Geophysical Research 92, 4233-4230.*

Houghton, R.A. 1990. The future role of tropical forests in affecting the carbon dioxide concentration of the atmosphere. *AMBIO 19, 204-209.*

Houghton, R., J. Hobbie & J.M. Melillo etc. 1983. Changes in the carbon content of terrestrial biota between 1860-1980: A net release of CO2 to the atmosphere. *Ecol. Monogr. 53,235-262.*

Houghton, R.A., R.D. Boone, J.M. Melillo, C.A. Palm, G.M. Woodwell, N. Meyers, B. Moore & L. Skole 1985. Net flux of carbon dioxide from tropical forests in 1980. *Nature 316, 617-620.*

Houghton, R.A. & G.M. Woodwell 1989. Global climatic change. *Sci. American 260, 36-44.*

Houot, S., R. Chaussod, C. Hounemenou, E. Barriusos & S. Bourgeoius 1991. Differences induced in the soil in the soil organic matter characteristics and microbial activity by various management practices in long term field experiments. In: *Diversity of environmental biogeochemistry* (ed. J. Berthelin). Elsevier, Amsterdam. p. 435-443.

Hsieh, Y.P. & O.J. Weber 1984. Net aerial primary production and dynamics of soil organic matter formation in a tidal marsh ecosystem. *Soil. Sci. Soc. Am. J. 486, 65-72.*

Hume, C.J. & H. Cattle 1990. The greenhouse effect - Meteorological mechanisms and models. *Outlook on Agriculture 19, 17-23.*

Humphrey, G.S., P.A. Hunt & Buchanan 1987. Wood-ash stone near Sydney, N.S.W.; A carbonate pedological feature in an acidic soil. *Austr. J. of Soil Research 25, 115-124*

Huntington,T.G. & D.F. Ryan 1990. Whole-tree harvesting effects on soil nitrogen and carbon. *Forest Ecology and Management 31, 193-204.*

Huntington, T.G., D.F. Ryan & S.P. Hamburg 1988. Estimating soil nitrogen and carbon pools in a northern hardwood forest ecosystem. *Soil Sci. Soc. Am. J. 52, 1162-1167.*

Huntington, T.G., C.E. Johnson, A.H. Johnson, T.C. Siccama & D.F. Ryan 1989. Carbon, organic matter and bulk density relationships in a forested spodosol. *Soil Science 148, 380-386.*

Idso, S.B. 1989. Carbon dioxide, soil moisture, and future crop production. *Soil Science 147, 305-307.*

Idso, S.B. 1991. Carbon dioxide and the fate of the Earth. *Global Env. Change 1, 178-182.*

Insam, H. 1990. Are the soil microbial biomass and basal respiration governed by the climatic regime? *Soil Biology & Biochemistry 22, 525-532.*

IPCC 1990. *Climate change: The IPCC scientific assessment.* Edited by J.T. Houghton, G.J. Jenkins & J.J. Ephraums. WMO/UNEP, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge.

Isomaki, R. 1991. Paper, pollution and global warming: unsustainable forestry in Finland. *The Ecologist 21, 14-17.*

Janssen, B.H. 1984. A simple method for calculating decomposition and accumulation of "young" soil organic matter. *Plant and Soil 76, 297-304.*

Jenkinson, D.S. 1977. Studies on the decomposition of plant material in soil. V. The effects of plant cover and soil type on the loss of carbon from 14C-labelled ryegrass decomposing under field conditions. *J. Soil Sci. 28, 417-423*

Jenkinson, D.S. 1990. The turnover of organic carbon and nitrogen in soil. *Phil. Trans. R. Soc. Lond. B 329, 361-368.*

Jenkinson, D.S. & D.S. Powlson 1976. The effect of biocidal treatments on metabolism in soil. V. A method for measuring soil biomass. *Soil Biol. Biochem. 8, 209-213.*

Jenkinson, D.S. & A. Ayanaba 1977. Decomposition of carbon-14 labelled plant material under tropical conditions. *Soil Sci. Soc. Am. J. 41, 912-915.*

Jenkinson, D.S. & J.H. Rainer 1977. The turnover of soil organic matter in some of the Rothamsted classical experiments. *Soil Science 123,298-305.*

Jenkinson, D.S., D.E. Adams & A. Wild 1991. Model estimates of CO2 emissions from soil in response to global warming. *Nature 351, 304-306.*

Jenny, H. 1941. *Factors of soil formation.* McGraw-Hill Book Co., New York.

Johnson, C.E., A.H. Johnson, T.G. Huntington & T.G. Siccama 1991. Whole-tree clear-cutting effects on soil horizons and organic matter pools. *Soil Sci. Soc. Am. J. 55, 497-502.*

Johnston, A.E. 1991. Soil fertility and soil organic matter. In: *Advances in soil organic matter research* (ed. W.S. Wilson). Special Publication No. 90, The Royal Society of Chemistry, Cambridge. p. 299-314.

Jones, C.L., N.L. Smoithers, M.C. Scholes & R.J. Scholes 1990. The effect of fire frequency on the organic components of a basaltic soil in the Kruger National Park. *S. Afr. J. Plant Soil 7, 236-238.*

Jones, T.P. & W.G. Chaloner 1991. Fossil charcoal, its recognition and paleoatmospheric significance. *Global and Planetary Change 97, 39-50.*

Kadeba, O. 1978. Organic matter status of some savanna soils of northern Nigeria. *Soil Sci. 125, 122-127.*

Kaul, O.N. 1991. Forest biomass burning in India. *TISGLOW 2, 2-17.*

Keeling, C.D., R.B. Bacastow, A.F. Carter, S.C. Piper, T.P. Whorf, M. Heimann, W.G. Mook & H. Roeloffzen 1989. A three-dimensional model of atmospheric CO2 transport based on observed winds: 1. Analysis and observational data. In: Aspects of climate variability in the Pacific and Western Americas (ed. D.H. Peterson). *Geophysical Monograph 55, 165-235.*

Keepin, W., I. Mintzer & L. Kristoferson 1986. Emission of CO2 into the atmosphere. In: *The greenhouse effect, climatic change and ecosystems* (eds Bolin, B., B.R. Böös, J. Jäger & R.A. Warrick). SCOPE 29, John Wiley and Sons, Chichester. p. 35-91.

King, A.W., R.V. O'Neill & D.L. deAngelis 1989. Using ecosystem models to predict regional CO2 exchange between the atmosphere and the terrestrial biosphere. *Global Biochem. Cycles 3, 337-361.*

Kimball, B.A., N.J. Rosenberg & L.H. Allen Jr. 1990. *Impact of carbon dioxide, trace gases, and climate change on global agriculture.* ASA Special Publication No. 53. ASA/CSSA/SSSA, Madison.

Kimble, J.M., H. Eswaran & T. Cook 1990. Organic carbon on a volume basis in tropical and temperate soils. In: *Transactions of the 14th International Congress of Soil Science, Kyoto V, 248-253.*

Kinsey, D.W. & D. Hopley 1991. The significance of coral reefs as global carbon sinks - response to Greenhouse. *Global and Planetary Change 89, 363-377.*

Kling, G.W., G.W. Kipphut & M.C. Miller 1991. Arctic lakes and streams as gas conduits to the atmosphere: Implications for tundra carbon budgets. Science 251, 298-301.

Kohlmaier, G.H., A. Janecek & J. Kindermann 1990. Positive and negative feedback loops within the vegetation/soil system in response to a CO2 greenhouse warming. In: *Soils and the greenhouse effect* (ed. Bouwman, A.F. 1990), John Wiley & Sons, Chichester. p. 415-422.

Kononova, V. 1966. *Soil organic matter: Its nature, its role in soil formation and in soil fertility.* 2nd English Edition, Pergammon Press Ltd., London.

Korteleven, J. 1963. *Quantitative aspects of humus buildup and humus degradation* (In Dutch). Verslagen Landbouwkundig Onderzoekingen 69/1, 109 pp.

Krosshavn, M., J.O. Bjorgum, J. Krane & E. Steinnes 1990. Chemical structure of terrestrial humus materials formed from different vegetation characterized by soil-state 13C NMR with CP-MAS technique. *J. of Soil Science 41, 371-377.*

Kuhlbusch, T.A., J.M. Lobert, P.J. Crutzen & P. Warneck 1991. Molecular nitrogen emissions form denitrification during biomass burning. *Nature 351, 135-137.*

Kuikman, P.J., L.J.A. Lekkerkerk & J.A. van Veen 1991. Carbon dynamics of a soil planted with wheat under an elevated CO2 concentration. In: *Advances in soil organic matter research* (ed. W.S. Wilson). Special Publication No. 90, The Royal Society of Chemistry, Cambridge. p. 267-274.

Kursar, T.A. 1989. Evaluation of soil respiration and soil CO2 concentrations in a lowland moist forest in Panama. *Plant and Soil 113, 21-29.*

Ladd, J.N. 1986. Techniques for following the turnover of organic matter in soil. In: *Transactions of the 13th ISSS Congress, Hamburg*. p. 599-608.

Lashof, D.A. & D.A. Tirpak (eds) 1990. *Policy options for stabilizing global climate*. Hemisphere Publ. Co., New York.

Leemans, R. & W.P. Cramer 1991. *The IIASA database for mean monthly values of temperature, precipitation, and cloudiness on a global terrestrial grid*. IIASA, Report RR-91-18, Laxenburg.

Lekkerkerk, L.J.A., S.C. van de Geijn & J.A. van Veen 1990. Effects of elevated atmospheric CO2 levels on the carbon economy of a soil planted with wheat. In: *Soils and the greenhouse effect* (ed. A.F. Bouwman), John Wiley & Sons, Chichester. p. 423-429.

Lepsch, I.F., J.R.F. Menk & J.B. de Oliveira 1991. A comparison of carbon storage and base status between cropped and native vegetation soils in Sao Paolo State, Brazil. *Journal of Soil Science (Submitted)*

Levine, J.S. 1989. Photochemistry of biogenic gases. In: *Global ecology: Towards a science of the biosphere* (eds M.B. Rambler, L. Margulis & R. Fester). Academic Press, Inc. p.51-74.

Lobert, J.M., D.H. Scharffe, W.M. Hao & P.J. Crutzen 1990. Importance of biomass burning in the atmospheric budgets of nitrogen containing gases. *Nature 346, 552-554.*

Lobo, P.F.S., D.S. Barrera, L.F. Silva & J.M. Flexor 1980. Carbon isotopes on the profile of characteristic soils of the south of the state of Bahia, Brazil (In Portuguese with English summary). *R. bras. Ci. Sol. 4, 79-82.*

Lowrance, R. & R.G. Williams 1988. Carbon movement in runoff and erosion under simulated rainfall conditions. *Soil Sci. Soc. Am. J. 52, 1445-1448.*

Lynch, J.M. 1990. *The rhizosphere*. Wiley Interscience Publ., Chichester.

MacCarthy, P., C.E. Clapp, R.L. Malcolm & P.R. Bloom (eds) 1990a. *Humic substances in soil and crop sciences*. Selected readings. SSSA/ASA, Madison.

MacCarthy, P., R.L. Malcolm, C.E. Clapp & P.R. Bloom 1990b. An introduction to soil humic substances. In: MacCathy et al. (eds) 1990a, p. 1-12.

MacCarthy, P., P.R. Bloom, C.E. Clapp & R.L. Malcolm 1990c. Humic substances in soil and crop sciences: An overview. In: MacCarthy et al. (eds) 1990a, p. 261-271.

MacCarthy, P., P.R. Bloom, C.E. Clapp & R.L. Malcolm 1990d. Humic substances in soil and crop sciences: An overview. In: MacCarthy et al. (eds) 1990a, p. 261-271.

Maini, J.S. 1988. Forest and atmospheric change. In: *The changing atmosphere*. WMO No. 710, Geneva. p. 193-209.

Malcolm, R.L. & P. MacCarthy 1991. The individuality of humic substances in diverse environments. In: *Advances in soil organic matter research* (ed. W.S. Wilson). Special Publication No. 90, The Royal Society of Chemistry, Cambridge. p. 22-34.

Mann, L.K. 1985. A regional comparison of carbon in cultivated and uncultivated Alfisols and Mollisols in the central United States. *Geoderma 36, 41-253.*

Mann, L.K. 1986. Changes in soil carbon storage after cultivation. *Soil Sci. 142, 279-288.*

Mannerma, J. & M. Karras 1989. Use of the Maximum Entropy Method to predict atmospheric CO2 content. *Geophysica 25, 37-46.*

Martikainen, P.J. & A. Palojarvi 1990. Evaluation of the fumigation extraction method for the determination of microbial C and N in a range of forest soils. *Soil Biol. Biochem. 22, 797-802.*

Martin, J.P. & K. Haider 1986. Influence of mineral colloids on turnover rates of soil organic carbon. In: *Interactions of soil minerals with natural organics and microbes* (eds P.M. Huang & M. Schnitzer). SSSA Special Publication 17, Soil Sci. Soc. Amer., Madison, Wisconsin.

Martin, A., A. Mariotti, J. Balesdent, P. Lavelle & R. Vuattoux 1990. Estimate of organic matter turnover rate in a savanna soil by 13C natural abundance measurements. *Soil Biol. Biochem. 4, 517-523.*

Matson, P.A. & D.S. Ojima 1990. *Terrestrial biosphere exchange with global atmospheric chemistry*. Global Change Report No. 13, International Geosphere-Biosphere Programme, Stockholm.

Mattson, K.G. & W.T. Swank 1989. Soil and detrital carbon dynamics following forest cutting in the southern Appalachians. *Biology and Fertility of Soils 7, 247-253.*

McDaniel, P.A. & L.C. Munn 1985. Effect of temperature on the relationship between organic carbon and texture in Mollisols and Aridisols. *Soil Sci. Soc. Am. J. 49, 1486-1489.*

Medina, E., G. Montes, E. Cuevas & Z. Rokzandic 1986. Profiles of CO2 concentration and D13Cvalues in tropical rain forests of the upper Rio Negro Basin, Venezuela. *Journal of Tropical Ecology 2, 207-217.*

Melillo, J.M., J.D. Aber, A.E. Linkins, A. Ricca, B. Fry & K.J. Nadelhoffer 1989. Carbon and nitrogen dynamics along the de decay continuum: Plant litter to soil organic matter. *Plant and Soil 115, 189-198.*

Mendonca, E. deS., W. Moura Filho & L.M. Costa 1991. Organic matter and chemical characteristics of aggregates from a Red-Yellow Latosol under natural forest, Rubber plant, and grass in Brazil. In: *Advances in soil organic matter research* (ed. W.S. Wilson). Special Publication No. 90, The Royal Society of Chemistry, Cambridge. p. 185-195.

Miller, P.C. (ed.) 1981. Carbon balance in northern ecosystems and potential effect of carbon dioxide induced climate change. *Report of a workshop held at San Diego (March 7-9, 1980). CONF-8003118*, US Department of Energy, Washington D.C.

Mintzer, I. 1985. Our changing atmosphere: Energy policies, air pollution and global warming. In: *The changing Atmosphere*. WMO No. 710, Geneva. p. 117-138.

Mitchell, J.F.B. 1989. The "greenhouse" effect and climatic change. *Rev. Geophys. 27, 115-139.*

Mooney, H.A., P.M. Vitousek & P.A. Matson 1987. Exchange of materials between terrestrial ecosystems and the atmosphere. *Science 238, 928-932.*

Moore III, B., M. P. Gildea, L.J. Vorosmarty & 5 others. Biogeochemical cycles. In: *Global ecology: Towards a science of the biosphere* (eds M.B. Rambler, L. Margulis & R. Fester). Acad. Press, Boston. p. 113-141.

Moran, M.A.,R. Benner & R.E. Hodson 1989. Kinetics of microbial degradation of vascular plant material in two wetland ecosystems. *Oecologia 79, 158-167.*

Mortvedt, J.J. & D.R. Buxton (eds) 1987. *Soil fertility and organic matter as critical components of production systems*. SSSA Special Publication No. 19, SSSA/ASA, Madison.

Mosier, A.R. 1990. Gas flux measurement techniques with special reference to techniques suitable for measurements over large ecologically uniform areas. In: *Soils and the Greenhouse Effect* (ed. A.F. Bouwman). John Wiley & Sons, London. p. 289-301.

Myers, N. 1989. Tropical deforestation and climatic change. *Climate and Geo-Sciences* (A. Berger et al.), Kluwer Academic Publishers. p. 341-353.

Msanya, B.M. 1987. *Soil resources inventories: Characterization, quality and evaluation*. PhD. thesis, Faculty of Sciences, State University of Ghent.

Naganawa, T., K. Kyuma, H. Yamamoto, Y. Yamamoto, H. Yokoi & K. Tatsuyama 1989. Measurement of soil respiration in the field: Influence of temperature, moisture levels, and application of sewage sludge compost and agro-chemicals. *Soil Science and Plant Nutrition 35, 509-516* (Quoted in Soils and Fertilizers 119, 54 p. 161).

Natelhoffer, K.J. & B. Fry 1988. Controls on natural nitrogen-15 and carbon-13 abundances in forest soil organic matter. *Soil Sci. Soc. of America J. 52, 1633-1640.*

Nayak, D.C., Varadachari & K. Gosh 1990. Influence of organic acidic functional groups of humic substances in complexation with clay minerals. *Soil Science 149, 268=271.*

Neftel, A., E. Moor, H. Oeschger & B. Stauffer 1985. Evidence from polar ice cores for the increase in atmospheric CO2 in the past two centuries. *Nature 313, 45-47.*

Nelson, D.L. & L.E. Sommers 1982. Total carbon, organic carbon, and organic matter. In: *Methods of soil analysis* (ed. A.L. Page). Agronomy 9, 539-579.

Nelson, P.N., J.M. Oades & E. Cotsaris 1991. The influence of soils on organic matter in water. In: *Advances in soil organic matter research* (ed. W.S. Wilson). Special Publication No. 90, The Royal Society of Chemistry, Cambridge. p. 115-120.

Nettleton, W.D. (ed.) 1991. *Occurrence, characteristics, and genesis of carbonate, gypsum and silica accumulation in soils.* SSSA Special Publication No. 26, SSSA/ASA, Madison.

Neue, H.U. & W.W. Scharpenseel 1984. Gaseous products of decomposition of organic matter in submerged soils. In: *Organic matter and rice.* International Rice Research Institute, Los Banos. p. 311-328.

Oades, J.M. 1988. The retention of organic matter in soils. *Biogeochemistry 5, 37-70.*

Oades, J.M., A.G. Waters, A.M. Vasallo, M.A. Wilson & P.G. Jones 1988. Influence of management on the composition of organic matter in a red-brown earth as shown by 13C Nuclear Magnetic Resonance. *Aust. J. Soil Res. 26, 289-299.*

Olson, J.S. 1981. Carbon balance in relation to fire regimes. In: *Fire regimes and ecosystem properties* (eds. H.A. Mooney, T.M. Bonnickson, N.L. Christensen, J.E. Lotan & W.E. Reiners). GTR WO-26, Forest Service, US Department of Agriculture, Washington D.C.

Olson, J.S., J.A. Watts & L.J. Allison 1983. *Carbon in live vegetation of major world ecosystems*. DOE/NBB-0037. Carbon Dioxide Research Division, Washington DC.

ORNL 1990. *Trends '90: A compendium of data on global change* (eds T.A. Boden, K. Kanciruk & M.P. Farell). Carbon Dioxide Information Analysis Centre, Env. Sciences Div., Oak Ridge National Laboratory, Oak Ridge, Tennessee.

Paul, E.A., C.A. Campbell, D.A. Rennie & M.D. McCullum 1964. Investigations of the dynamics of soil humus using carbon dating techniques. *Trans. 8th Int. Congress of Soil Science 3, 201-208.*

Pastor, J. & W.M. Post 1986. Influence of climate, soil moisture, and succession on forest carbon and nitrogen cycles. *Biogeochemistry 2, 3-27.*

Parry, M. 1990. *Climate change and world agriculture.* Earthscan Publications Limited (in association with IIASA/UNEP), London.

Parry, M.L., J.H. Porter & T.R. Carter 1990. Climatic change and its implications for agriculture. *Outlook on Agriculture 19, 9-15.*

Parton, W.J., D.S. Schimel., C.V. Cole and D.S. Ojima 1987. Analysis of factors controlling soil organic matter levels in Great Plains grasslands. *Soil Sci. Soc. Amer. Journal 51, 1173-1179.*

Parton, W.J., R.L. Sanford, P.A. Sanchez & J.W.B. Stewart 1989. Modelling soil organic matter dynamics in tropical soils. In: Dynamics of soil organic matter in tropical ecosystems. In: *Dynamics of soil organic matter in tropical ecosystems (eds Coleman, D.C., J.M. Oades & G. Uehara).* NifTAL Project, University of Hawaii Press, Honolulu.

Patterson, D.T. & E.P. Flint 1990. Implications of increasing carbon dioxide and climate change for plant communities and competition in natural and managed ecosystems. In: Kimball et al. (1990), p. 83-110.

Piccolo, A. & J.S.C. Mbagwu 1990. Effects of different organic waste amendments on soil microaggregate stability and molecular size of humic substances. *Plant and Soil 123, 27-37.*

Post, W.M. 1990. Report of a workshop on climate feedbacks and the role of peatlands, tundras and boreal ecosystems in the global carbon cycle. *Environmental Sciences Division Publ. No. 3289,* Oak Ridge National Laboratory, Tennessee.

Post, W.M., W.R. Emanuel, P.J. Zinke & A.G. Stangenberger 1982. Soil carbon pools and world life zones. *Nature 298, 156-159.*

Post, W.M., J. Pastor, P.J. Zinke & A.G. Stangenberger 1985. Global patterns of soil nitrogen storage. *Nature 317, 613-616.*

Post, W.M., T.-H. Peng, W.R. Emmanuel, A.W. King, V.H. Dale & D.L. De Angelis 1990. The global carbon cycle. *Amer. Sci. 78, 310-326.*

Prentice, K.C. & I.Y. Fung 1990. The sensitivity of terrestrial carbon storage to climate change. *Nature 346, 48-51.*

Raich, J.W., R.D. Bowden & P.A. Steudler 1990. Comparison of two static chamber techniques for determining carbon dioxide efflux from forest soils. *Soil Sci. Soc. Am. J. 54, 1754-1757.*

Raich, J.W. & W.H. Schlesinger 1992. The global carbon dioxide flux in soil respiration and its relationship to vegetation. *Tellus (accepted)*

Richter, D.D., L.I. Babbar, M.A. Huston & M. Jaeger 1990. Effects of annual tillage on organic carbon in a fine-textured Udalfs: The importance of root dynamics to soil carbon storage. *Soil Science 149, 78-83.*

Rochette, P., R.L. Desjardins & E. Pattey 1991. Spatial and temporal variability of soil respiration in agricultural fields. *Canadian Journal of Soil Science 71, 189-196.*

Russell, E.W. 1980. *Soil conditions and plant growth (10th edition).* Longman, London. (Revised by A. Wild (ed.) 1988. *Russell's soil conditions and plant growth (11th edition).* Longman, London).

Sakai, M. 1990. Carbon cycles of the soil-root system in two types of forest soil in Japan. In: *Transactions 14th ISSS Congress, Kyoto.* p. II-413.

Sakamoto, K. & T. Yoshida 1988. In situ measurement of soil respiration rate by a dynamic method. *Soil Science and Plant Nutrition 34, 195-202.*

Sanchez, P.A., C.A. Palm & T.J. Smyth 1990. Approaches to mitigate tropical deforestation by sustainable soil management practices. *Soils on a warmer Earth (effects of expected climate change on soil processes, with emphasis on the tropics and sub-tropics).* Developments in Soil Science 20, Elsevier, Amsterdam. p. 211-220.

Sanchez, P.A., J.H. Villachica & D.E. Bandy 1983. Soil fertility after clearing a tropical rainforest in Peru. *Soil Sci. Soc. Am. J. 47, 1171-1178.*

Sanford, R.L., J. Saldarriaga, K.E. Clark, C. Uhe & R. Herrera 1985. Amazon rainforest fires. *Science 227, 53-55.*

Santos, O.M. & B.M. Grisi 1979. Cellulose and leaf litter decomposition in a tropical rain forest in southern Bahia, Brazil: Comparative study in undisturbed and burned areas (In Portuguese with English summary). *R. bras. C. Solo 3, 149-153.*

Santos, M.C.D., A.R. Mermut & M.R. Ribeiro 1989. Submicroscopy of clay microaggregates in an Oxisol from Pernambuco, Brazil. *Soil Sci. Soc. Am. J. 53, 1895-1901.*

Sarmiento, J.L. & E.T. Sundquist 1992. Revised budget for the oceanic uptake of anthropogenic carbon dioxide. *Nature 356, 589-592.*

Schaefer, M. & J. Schauermann 1990. The soil fauna of beech forests: comparison between a mull and moder soil. *Pedobiologia 34, 299-314.*

Scharpenseel, H.W., M. Schomaker & A. Ayoub (eds) 1990. *Soils on a warmer Earth (effects of expected climate change on soil processes, with emphasis on the tropics and sub-tropics).* Developments in Soil Science 20, Elsevier, Amsterdam.

Scharpenseel, H.W. & P. Becker-Heidmann 1990. Overview of the greenhouse effect: Global change syndrome; general outlook. In: *Soils on a warmer Earth (effects of expected climate change on soil processes, with emphasis on the tropics and sub-tropics).* Developments in Soil Science 20, Elsevier, Amsterdam. p. 1-14.

Schiffman, P.M. & W.C. Johnson 1989. Phytomass and detrital carbon storage during forest regrowth in the southeastern U.S. Piedmont. *Can. J. of Forest Research 19, 97-98.*

Schimel, D.S. 1986. Carbon and nitrogen turnover in adjacent grassland and cropland ecosystems. *Biogeochemistry 2, 345-357.*

Schimel, W.H., D.C. Coleman & K.A. Horton 1985a. Soil organic matter dynamics in paired rangeland and cropland toposequences in North Dakota. *Geoderma 36, 201-214.*

Schimel, W.H., M.A. Stilwell & R.G. Woodmanse 1985b. Biogeochemistry of C, N, and P in a soil catena of the short grass steppe. *Ecology 66, 276-288.*

Schimel, D.S., W.J. Parton, T.G.F. Kittel, D.S. Ojima & C.V. Cole 1990. Grassland biogeochemistry: Links to atmospheric processes. *Climatic Change 16, 13-25.*

Schlesinger, W.H. 1977. Carbon balance in terrestrial detritus. *Annual Review of Ecology and Systematics 8, 51-81.*

Schlesinger, W.H. 1985. The formation of caliche in soils of Mojave desert, California. *Geochemica et Cosmochemica Acta 49, 57-66.*

Schlesinger, W.H. 1986. Changes in soil carbon storage and associated properties with disturbance and recovery. In: *The changing carbon cycle: A global analysis* (eds J.R. Trabalka & D.E. Reichle), Springer-Verlag, New York. p. 175-193.

Schlesinger, W.H. 1990a. Vegetation an unlikely answer. *Nature 348, 679*

Schlesinger, W.H. 1990b. Evidence from chronosequence studies for a low carbon-storage potential of soils. *Nature 348, 232-234.*

Schlesinger, W.H. & J.M. Melack 1983. *Tellus 33, 172-187.* (Cited by Schlesinger 1990b)

Schnitzer, M. 1991. Soil organic matter - the next 75 years. *Soil Science 151, 41-58.*

Schnitzer M., J.A. Ripmeester & H. Kodama 1988. Characterization of the organic matter associated with a soil clay. *Soil Science 145, 488-.*

Seiler, W. & P.J. Crutzen 1980. Estimates of gross and net fluxes of carbon between the biosphere and the atmosphere from biomass burning. *Climatic change 2, 207-247.*

Setzer, A.W. & M.C. Pereira 1991. Amazonia biomass burnings in 1987 and an estimate of their tropospheric emissions. *AMBIO 20, 19-22.*

Shawney, B.L. & K. Brown (ed.) 1989. *Reactions and movement of organic chemicals in soils.* SSSA special publication no. 22. SSSA/ASA, Madison.

Shelton, D.R. & T.B. Parkin 1989. A semi-automated instrument for measuring total and radio-labelled carbon dioxide evolution from soil. *J. Env. Quality 18, 550-554.*

Shugart, H.H., M. Ya. Antonovsky, P.G. Jarvis & A.P. Sandford 1986. CO2, climatic change and forest ecosystems. Assessing the response of global forests to the direct effects of increasing CO2 and climatic change. In: *The greenhouse effect, climatic change and ecosystems* (eds Bolin, B., B.R. Böös, J. Jäger & R.A. Warrick). SCOPE 29, John Wiley and Sons, Chichester. p. 475-521.

Shukla, J., C. Nobre & P. Sellers 1990. Amazon deforestation and climate change. *Science 247, 1322-1325.*

Simonson, R.W. 1959. Outline of generalized theory of soil genesis. *Soil Sci. Soc. Am. Proc. 23, 152-156*

Sims, Z.R. & G.A. Nielsen 1986. Organic carbon in Montanna soils as related to clay content and climate. *Soil Sci. Soc. Am. J. 50. 1269-1271.*

Sinha, S.K., N.H. Rao & M.S. Swaminathan 1988. Food security in the changing global climate. In: *The changing atmosphere.* WMO No. 710, Geneva. p.167-192.

Skjemstad, J.O., R.P. LeFeuvre & R.E. Prebble 1990. Turnover of soil organic matter under pasture determined by C natural abundance. *Austr. J. of Soil Research 28, 267-276.*

Smith, B.N. & S. Epstein 1971. Two categories of 13C/12C ratios for higher plants. *Plant Physiol. 47, 380-384.*

Smith, R.E.& K.B. Higgins 1990. The root systems of three species of *Protea* shrubs in the Jonkershoek Valley, Cape Province. *S. Afr. J. Plant Soil 7, 238-240.*

Smucker, A.J.M. & G.R. Safir 1986. Root and soil microbial interactions which influence the availability of photoassimilate carbon in the rhizosphere. In: *Microfloral and faunal interactions in natural and agro-ecosystems* (eds. M.J. Mittchell & J.P. Nakas). Nijhoff and Junk Publ., Dordrecht. p. 203-244.

Sombroek, W.G. 1966. *Amazon soils*. PhD thesis, Agric. Univ. Wageningen., Pudoc, Wageningen.

Sombroek, W.G. 1990. Soils on a warmer earth: The tropical regions. In: *Soils on a warmer earth* (eds H.W. Scharpenseel, M. Schomaker & A. Ayoub). Elsevier, Amsterdam. p. 157-174.s

Sorensen, L.H. 1975. The influence of clay on the rate of decay of amino acid metabolites synthesised in soils during decomposition of cellulose. *Soil Biology and Biochemistry 7, 171-177.*

Spaans, E.J.A., G.A.M. Baltissen, J. Bouma, R. Miedema, A.L.E. Lansu, D. Schoonderbeek & W.G. Wielemaker 1989. Changes in physical properties of young and old volcanic surface soils in Costa Rica after clearing of tropical rain forest. *Hydrological processes 3, 383-392.*

Spaans, E.J.A., J. Bouma, A. Lansu & W.G. Wielemaker 1990. Measuring soil hydraulic properties after clearing of tropical rain forest in a Costa Rican soil. *Trop. Agric. (Trinidad) 67, 61-65.*

Spain, A.V., R.F. Isbell & M.E. Probert 1983. Soil organic matter. In: *Soils: An Australian viewpoint*, CSIRO, Melbourne/Academic Press, London. Cp. 552-563.

Sparling, G.P. & A.W. West 1990. A comparison of gas chromatography and differential respirometer methods to measure soil respiration and to estimate the soil microbial biomass. *Pedobiologia 34, 103-112.*

Stainer, R.Y. , E.A. Adelberg & J.L. Ingraham 1976. *General microbiology* (4th edition). MacMillan Press Ltd, London.

Stevenson, F.J. 1982. *Humus chemistry: Genesis, compositions, reactions*. Wiley Interscience, New York.

Stott, D.E. & J.P. Martin 1990. Synthesis and degradation of natural and synthetic humic materials in soils. In: MacCarthy et al. 1990a, p. 37-63.

Swift, R.S. 1991. Effects of humic substances and polysaccharides on soil aggregation. In: *Advances in soil organic matter research* (ed. W.S. Wilson). Special Publication No. 90, The Royal Society of Chemistry, Cambridge. p. 153-162.

Tans, P.P., I.Y. Fung & T. Takahashi 1990. Observational constraints on the global atmospheric CO2 budget. *Science 247, 1431-1438.*

Terhune, C.L. & J.W. Hardin 1991. Seasonal variations of carbon dioxide concentrations in the stony, coarse textured desert soils of southern Nevada, USA. *Soil Science 151, 417-429.*

Theng, B.K.G., G.J. Churchman & R.H. Newman 1986. The occurrence of inter-layer clay-organic complexes in two New Zealand soils. *Soil Science 142, 262-*

Theng, B.G., K.R. Tate & P. Sollins 1989. Constituents of organic matter in temperate and tropical soils. In: *Dynamics of organic matter in tropical soils* (eds. D.C. Coleman, J.M. Oades & G. Uehara). NifTAL Project, University of Hawaii. p. 5-32.

Tiessen, H. & J.W.B. Stewart 1983. Particle size fractions and their use in studies of soil organic matter. II. Cultivation effects on organic matter composition in size fractions. *Soil Sci. Soc. Am. J. 47, 509-514.*

Tiessen, H., J.W.B. Stewart and J.R. Bettany 1982. Cultivation effects on the amounts and concentration of carbon nitrogen, and phosphorus in grassland soils. *Agron. J. 74, 831-834.*

Tinker, P.B. and P. Ineson, 1990. Soil organic matter and biology in relation to climatic change. In: *Soils on a warmer Earth* (eds H.W. Scharpenseel, H.W., M. Schomaker & A. Ayoub). Developments in Soil Science 20, Elsevier, Amsterdam. p. 71-87

Tisdall, J.M. & J.M. Oades 1980. The effect of crop rotation on aggregation in red-brown earth. *Aust. J. Soil Res. 18, 423-433.*

Trabalka, J.R. & D.E. Reichle (eds) 1986. *The changing carbon cycle: A global analysis*. Springer-Verlag, New York.

USDA 1975. *Soil Taxonomy*. Agric. Handbook 436. Soil Conservation Service, USDA, Washington.

USDA 1987. *Keys to Soil Taxonomy*. SMSS Tech. Monograph No. 6, Ithaca, New York.

Vaidyanathan, L.V. & D.J. Eagel 1991. The influence of organic matter and clay on adsorption of atrazine by top soils. In: *Advances in soil organic matter research* (ed. W.S. Wilson). Special Publication No. 90, The Royal Society of Chemistry, Cambridge. p. 381-391.

Van Breemen, N. & T.C.J. Feijtel 1990. Soil processes and properties involved in the production of greenhouse gases, with special relevance to soil taxonomic systems. In: *Soils and the greenhouse effect* (ed. A.F. Bouwman). John Wiley & Sons, Chichester. p. 195-223.

Van Engelen, V.W.P. & J.H.M. Pulles 1991. *The SOTER Manual: Procedures for small scale digital map and database compilation of soil and terrain conditions*. Working paper and Preprint 91/3, International Soil Reference and information Centre, Wageningen.

Van Keulen, H. & J. Wolf 1986. *Modelling of agricultural production: Weather, soils and crops*. Simulation Monograph. Pudoc, Wageningen.

Van Veen, J.A. 1986. The use of simulation models of the turnover of soil organic matter: An intermediate report. *Transactions of the 13th ISSS Congress, Hamburg*. p. 626-635.

Van Veen, J.A. & E.A. Paul 1981. Organic carbon dynamics in grassland soils. I. Background information and computer simulation. *Canadian Journal of Soil Science 61, 185-201.*

Van Veen, J.A. & P.J. Kuikman 1990. Soil structural aspects of decomposition of organic matter by micro-organisms. *Biogeochemistry 11, 213-233.*

Van Veen, J.A., J.N. Ladd & M. Amato 1985. The turnover of carbon and nitrogen through he microbial biomass in a sandy-loam and a clay soil incubated with [14C(U)]-glucose and [15N]-(NH4)2SO4 under different moisture regimes. *Soil. Biol. Biochem. 17, 747-756.*

Verberne, E.L.J., J. Hassink, P. de Willigen, J.J.R. Groot & J.A. van Veen 1990. Modelling organic matter dynamics in different soils. *Netherlands Journal of Agricultural Science 38, 221-238.*

Volkoff, B. & C.C. Cerri 1980. Humus comparison of a Solonchak, a Rendzina and a Litholic soil from semi-arid region of Rio Grande do Norte. *R. bras. Ci. Sol. 4, 49-56.*

Volkoff, B. & C.C. Cerri 1987. Carbon isotopic fractionation in subtropical Brazilian grassland soils. Comparison with tropical forest soils. *Plant and Soil 102, 27-31.*

Volkoff, B. & C.C. Cerri 1988. L'humus des sols du Brésil. Nature et relations avec l'environment. *Cah. ORSTOM, sér. Pédol. XXIV, 83-95.*

Volkoff, B., C.C. Cerri & A.J. Melfi 1984. Humus and mineralogy of superficial horizons of three soils from upland grass fields of Minas Gerais, Parana and Santa Catarina States, Brazil. *R. bras. Ci. Solo 8, 277-283.*

Volkoff, B., J.M. Flexor, L. Santa Isabel & M. Santa Isabel 1978. Characterization of the humus of Dystric Latosols of Bahia (In Portuguese with English summary). *Rev. bras. do Ci. do Solo 2, 59-63.*

Voroney, R.P. 1988. Loss of organic matter in Ontario: Highlights of *Agricultural research in Ontario 11, 25-29* (As quoted in Soils and Fertilizers 1991, 55 p. 135).

Voroney, R.P., J.A. Van Veen & E.A. Paul 1981. Organic C dynamics in grassland soils. 2. Model validation and simulation of the long term effects of cultivation and rainfall erosion. *Can. J. Soil Sci. 61, 211-224.*

Wada, K. & S. Aomine 1975. Soil development during the quaternary. *Soil Sci. 116, 170-177.*

Walker, J.C.G. & J.F. Kasting 1992. Effects of fuel and forest conservation on future levels of atmospheric carbon dioxide. *Paleogeography, Paleoclimatology, Paleoecology (Global Planetary Change Section) 97, 151-189.*

Walker, B.H. & R.D. Graetz (eds) 1988. *Effects of atmospheric and climate change on terrestrial ecosystems*. Global Change Report No. 5, IGBP, Stockholm.

Walker, T.W. & J.K. Syers 1976. The fate of phosphorus during pedogenesis. *Geroderma 15, 1-19.*

Walkley, A. & I.A. Black 1934. An examination of the Degtjareff method for determining soil organic matter, and a proposed modification of the chromic acid titration method. *Soil Science 34, 29-38.*

Warrick, R.A. & E.M. Barrow 1990. Climate and sea level change: A perspective. *Outlook on agriculture 19, 5-8.*

Warrick, R.A. & R. Gifford with M.L. Parry 1986a. CO2, climatic change and agriculture. In: *The greenhouse effect climatic change and ecosystems* (eds B. Bolin, B.R. Döos, R.A. Warrick and J. Jager). SCOPE 29, John Wiley & Sons, New York. p. 393-473.

Warrick, R.A., H.H. Shugart, M. Ja. Antonovsky, J.R. Tarrant & C.J. Tucker 1986b. The effects of increased CO2 and climatic change on terrestrial ecosystems. Global perspectives, aims and issues. In: *The greenhouse effect, climatic change and ecosystems* (eds Bolin, B., B.R. Böös, J. Jäger & R.A. Warrick). SCOPE 29, John Wiley and Sons, Chichester. p. 363-392.

Waters, A.G. & J.M. Oades 1991. Organic matter in water-stable aggregates. In: *Advances in soil organic matter research* (ed. W.S. Wilson). Special Publication No. 90, The Royal Society of Chemistry, Cambridge. p. 163-174.

Watson, A. 1992. Conveying that sinking feeling. *Nature 356, 561-562.*

Weber, M.G. 1990. Forest soil respiration and burning in immature aspen ecosystems. *Forest Ecology and Management 31, 1-14.*

Wielemaker, W.G.& A.L.E. Lansu 1991. Land use changes affecting classification of a Costa Rican soil. *Soil Sci. Soc. Am. J. 55, 1621-1624.*

Wilhelmi, V. & G.M. Rothe 1990.The effects of acid rain, soil temperature and humidity on C-mineralisation rates in organic soil layers under spruce. *Plant and Soil 121, 197-202.*

Wilson, W.S. (ed.) 1991. Advances on soil organic matter research: The impact on agriculture and the environment. Special Publication No. 90, The Royal Society of Chemistry, Cambridge.

Wolf, J. & L.H.J.M. Janssen 1991. Effects of changing land use in the Netherlands on net carbon fixation. *Neth. J. Agr. Sci. 39, 237-246.*

Woodwell, G.M. 1984a. *The role of terrestrial vegetation in the global carbon cycle.: Measurement by remote sensing.* SCOPE 23, John Wiley & Sons, Chichester.

Woodwell, G.M. 1984b. The carbon dioxide problem. In: *The role of terrestrial of terrestrial vegetation in the global carbon cycle: Measurement by remote sensing* (ed. G.M. Woodwell). SCOP 23, John Wiley & Sons, Chichester. p. 3-17.

Woodwell, G.M., R.A. Houghton, T.A. Stone, A.B. Park 1986. Changes in the area of forests in Rondonia, Amazon Basin, measured by satellite imagery. In: *The changing carbon cycle: a global analysis* (eds. J.R. Trabalka & D.E. Reichle). Springer Verlag, New York etc. P. 242-257.

Woodwell, G.M. and 6 other authors, 1983. Global deforestation: Contribution to atmospheric carbon dioxide. *Science 222, 1081-1086.*

Wookey, P.A. & P. Ineson 1991. Chemical changes in decomposing forest litter in response to atmospheric sulphur dioxide. *Journal of Soil Science 42, 615-628.*

Yang, T., W.B. Jiang, X-C. Sun, Y.G. Du & Y.Y. Li 1989. Studies on respiration of soils under different vegetation types in alpine meadows. *Acta Pedologica Sinica 26, 188-192.* (Quoted in Soils and Fertilizers 1990, 53 p. 758).

Zech, W., L. Haumaier & R. Hempfling 1990. Ecological aspects of soil organic matter in tropical soils. In: MacCarthy et al. 1990a, p. 187-202.

Zehnder, A.J.B. 1982. The carbon cycle. In: *The handbook of environmental chemistry*, Vol. 1B (ed. O. Hutzinger). Springer Verlag, Berlin. p. 83-110.

Zhang, H., M.L. Thompson & J.A. Sandor 1988. Compositional differences in organic matter among cultivated and uncultivated Argiudolls and Hapludalfs derived from loess. *Soil Sci. Soc. Am. J. 52, 216-222.*

Zinke, P.J., A.G. Stangenberger, W.M. Post, W.R. Emmanuel & J.S. Olson 1984. *Worldwide organic soil carbon and nitrogen data.* ORNL/TM-8857, Oak Ridge National Laboratory. Oak Ridge, Tennessee.

Chapter 5 Soil heat and moisture balance

E.M. Bridges

5.1 Introduction

5.1.1 Background

The current situation concerning the study of interface between the atmospheric and earth sciences is a challenging one. It is an area of study where considerable co-operation is necessary between disciplines to make progress. This will not necessarily be achieved easily, as within the broad generalisations of earth or atmospheric sciences, detailed chemical and physical studies are necessary to fully comprehend the factors and processes involved.

The role of soils in the total problem of the "greenhouse gases" has tended to be regarded as a minor problem and overlooked by atmospheric scientists, but publication of numerous papers, together with the conference proceedings *Soils and the Greenhouse Effect* (Bouwman, 1990) has drawn the attention of a wider audience to the significance of gaseous emissions from soils. The significance of emissions of gases from soils has now been recognised in the reports of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC, 1990 & 1992). Reasonable estimates of the global budgets of CO_2, CH_4 and N_2O are available, but the magnitude of the sources and sinks of these gases, especially with respect to soils, are less well known.

Similarly, the budget of heat received from the sun and that radiated from the earth's surface is well known at a global scale. Recent remote sensing studies have highlighted the significance of emissions of different wavelengths of energy associated with different surfaces, including bare soils and various vegetation covers. Inseparable from the energy budget is the role of water and water vapour. Changes in physical state of water result in the release or absorption of heat into the soil and lower atmosphere.

Soils, with their specific chemical, physical and biological properties, are able to act both as sources and sinks for the major greenhouse gases. It is imperative, therefore, that an awareness is achieved of how the factors and processes which operate within soils influence gaseous emission and absorption in order to fully comprehend the way these processes operate. With this knowledge, it may be possible to influence or even control them should the need arise.

Any understanding of the role of soils in the greenhouse problem must be seen in a dynamic situation. In the long term, changes of climate are significant for soils, but in the short term changes in land use have a much greater impact. Drainage of wetlands and oxidation of their accumulated carbon content has been proceeding for many years, so has forest clearance with extensive burning of the residues. There is evidence that both these common practices have increased in the past decade.

Global warming also influences the level of the sea through glacial ice melting and thermal expansion. This may result in flooding of lowlands and an increased area of wetland subject to poor drainage, in which organic accumulation could take place and methanogenesis occur. In other circumstances, increased rainfall in some areas is another "greenhouse" effect which could result in higher levels of the water table and more extensive gley soils. Elsewhere, higher temperatures may result in increased oxidation of currently stable organic matter, but conversely could also lead to increased plant growth, provided water and nutrients are not limiting.

This review attempts to draw attention to the broad implications of the energy exchanges which occur at the surface of the earth and the movement of moisture which takes place between the soil and the atmosphere. Similar physical constraints must be considered when the potential of soils to absorb and emit gases is assessed. This account does not set out to be a comprehensive discussion of the physics of the soil-atmosphere interface, that is beyond the scope of the present context. However, most textbooks of soil physics contain background material about the physical relationships of heat and moisture exchange (e.g. Baver *et al.*, 1972; Hillel, 1980; Van Keulen & Wolf, 1986; Koorevaar *et al.*, 1983; Marshall & Holmes, 1988).

The objective of the WISE programme is to arrive at a geographical quantification of the soil conditions which lead to emissions or absorption of radiatively active soil gases. The way in which these transfers are encouraged or prevented by specific soil conditions or characteristics needs to be identified so that these features can be associated with particular soils or areas of the earth's surface. Only then can an adequate database be constructed and a more accurate estimate of the significance of these gases be obtained.

In the longer term, many advantages are foreseen in the construction of a global soil database. Global modellers in agriculture, soil science, and climatology all require more accurate knowledge about the soils of the World. A soil database which will interface with modern systems of data management, such as SOTER (see Van Engelen & Pulles, 1991) and Geographical Information Systems offers a new and exciting perspective in the study and management of the World's soils.

5.1.2 Structure of chapter

Information in this chapter is brought together by first considering the simple physical properties of soils in Section 5.2. This is followed by a discussion of the energy balance of soils in Section 5.3 and the influence this has upon the movement of soil moisture and gases. The basic relationships of rainfall infiltration, percolation and evapotranspiration are given in Section 5.4, and finally a brief discussion of the diffusion of gases into and out of the soil is considered in Section 5.5. The significant factors which should be included in any database concerning the movement of gases into and out of the soil are listed in Chapter 6.

5.2 Physical properties of soils

5.2.1 Soil composition and formation

Soil is composed of four main constituents: mineral and organic matter which together form the solid aggregates, and the pore spaces which are either filled with air or water. The combination of these four constituents, together with a wide range of living organisms, makes soils very varied entities. As is shown in Figure 5.1, the mineral matter of an average fertile topsoil comprises some 45 per cent of the volume of soil, organic matter up to about 5 per cent (except for organic soils) with the soil air and water occupying the other 50 per cent. The components of the soil solid phase, mineral and organic, the gaseous phase and the liquid phase, the soil solution (water), are convenient starting points for a discussion of the physical properties of soils.

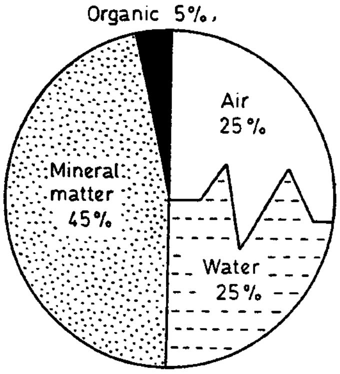


Figure 5.1 Volume composition of a typical topsoil.

This may be expressed empirically as:

$$V = S + M + G$$

where:

V = volume of total sample volume (cm^3)
S = volume of soil solids (cm^3)
M = volume of soil moisture (cm^3)
G = volume soil air (cm^3)

The soil was described many years ago as the "excited skin of the earth" and in the present context this is a very apt description because soils result from interactions of energy and matter which take place at the earth's surface. Soils lie at the interface between the lithosphere and the atmosphere and are subject to the influences of the factors of the climate and the biosphere, including mankind.

The soil forming factors of climate and organisms are the broad controls over the various processes which take place in soils and contribute to the development of soil profiles. The factors of soil formation were described by Jenny (1941) in his empirical formula:

$$S = f\,(c, o, r, p, t, \ldots) \qquad (1)$$

where:

S = any soil feature
f = function of specified factors
c = climate
o = organisms

r = relief
p = parent material
t = time
..= other factors as yet unidentified.

Many soil scientists have long recognised a latitudinal element in the geographical pattern of soils and this is the result of the distribution of solar energy received from the sun. Temperature and rainfall are both included in the climate factor of Jenny's equation. In recent years the effects of mankind have had such an overwhelming influence that an anthropic factor has been separated from the plant and animal organisms by some authors (Bidwell & Hole, 1965). Regionally, relief plays a part in soil formation in the range of altitude found in high mountain ranges, but it is also particularly important at the local level. Surface relief and the ground-water table interact in the development of many poorly drained soils. The parent material is very significant for it provides the mineral matter of which soils are formed and the time factor has to be taken into account for the degree of development and maturity of soils. Jenny's approach forms a useful qualitative assessment of soil formation and draws attention to the broad principles which control it. However, the approach has a number of difficulties in its application as the factors, supposedly independent variables, are not as independent as they might seem.

Soils have been described as an open system (Buol *et al.*, 1973) as they exist in a state of dynamic equilibrium (steady state) with flows of energy and matter entering and leaving the system. The gains and losses of the soil system are shown diagrammatically in Figure 5.2.

Seen from above, soils may look uniform and solid, but when a section is visible in a roadside cutting or in a soil inspection pit, the soil can be seen to have a sequence of layers of different colour, texture, structure and further investigation reveals other physical, chemical and biological characteristics as well. These layers of the soil are known as soil horizons and the complete sequence of horizons makes a soil profile.

Soils are identified by their profiles which have a variable number of horizons; these lie approximately parallel to the surface of the earth. Systems of soil classification utilise the different attributes of the horizons to characterize the profiles of soils and place them in logical groupings. This subject is relevant to the present study only in so far as certain chemical and physical attributes of soils may influence the processes which facilitate and control gaseous emissions from soils to the atmosphere. As some of the attributes of soils are utilised for the purposes of classification, in some cases, it is possible to use the classified soils to retrieve features which may be of help for identifying sources and sinks of radiatively active gases. Their distribution can then be represented cartographically.

Soil horizons with their characteristic features owe their existence to a number of recognised processes of soil formation. These processes operate within the broad parameters set by the factors of soil formation. Soil forming processes may be described as complex "bundles" of chemical, physical and biological reactions which take place, changing the geological parent material into a recognisable soil. As examples, some of the more common soil forming processes of the cool humid climates are:

- leaching which removes soluble constituents and cations of Ca, Mg, Na and K and acidifies soils;

- podzolization in which clay minerals are broken down and iron, aluminium and organic matter are translocated into the lower horizons of the soil;
- gleying the development of soil under water-saturated, anaerobic conditions which may be temporary or permanent;
- organic accumulation including humus incorporation in mineral soils and peat formation in upland and lowland bogs.

The impact and intensity of these processes vary both in space and time, so the resultant pattern of soils on the earth's surface has great geographical variation.

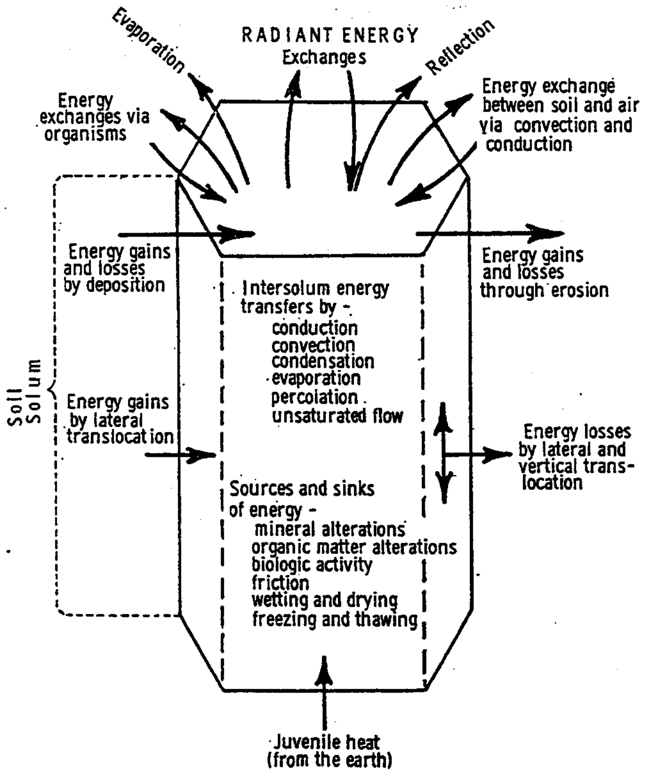


Figure 5.2 Representation of a soil as an open system (After Buol *et al.*, 1973).

5.2.2 The solid phase of soils

The solid matter of which soils are composed is either mineral or organic material which is present in a wide variety of forms. The processes of soil formation gradually change these mineral and organic constituents into new materials with recognisable soil characteristics. Some new minerals are produced, and organic materials are humified, storing carbon which is eventually decomposed, releasing carbon dioxide and methane into the atmosphere.

The inorganic fraction of soils is composed of a wide range of mineral particles which are derived from the underlying parent material together with any aeolian additions which may have been blown in. The most characteristic feature of the mineral matter is its particle-size distribution, commonly referred to as the texture of the soil. Particle-size is not easily changed and so has been used by many soil scientists as a stable attribute of soils; it is also a good surrogate for many other physical characteristics of soils. Soil texture is assessed from the "fine earth" which refers to the sand, silt and clay which passes a 2 mm round-hole sieve. Coarser materials, stones, are regarded as "mineral skeleton" and although physically important for their bulk, do not play a significant chemical role. Experienced soil surveyors can recognize at least 12 different textures from the various admixtures of sand silt and clay which occur (Figure 5.3).

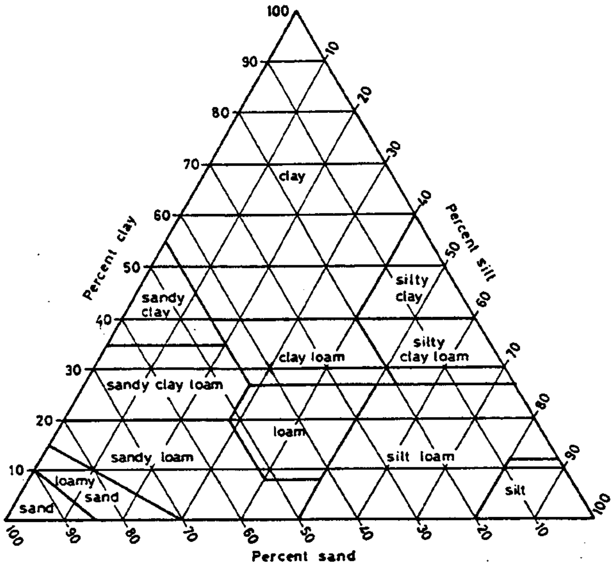


Figure 5.3 Soil textural classes determined by percentages of sand, silt and clay present. (Source: Hodgson, 1978).

Mineral constituents

The mineralogical composition of the particle-size groupings is also different. Unusually, sands (2.00 mm - 0.02 μm) are composed of 95 or more per cent of quartz with subsidiary amounts of feldspars, micas, ferromagnesian minerals, iron oxides and other accessory minerals such as zircon, garnet and apatite. Silts (0.02 - 0.002 μm) also are dominated by quartz particles, but the accessory minerals tend to be present in greater quantities. The arbitrary lower limit of silt is taken as 0.002 μm and particles smaller than this are clays. The mineralogy of the clays is in marked contrast to that of the sands and silts, being composed mainly of secondary alumino-silicates, many of which have been formed within the soil. Below 0.001 μm clays assume colloidal properties which introduces further complexity into their behaviour both in physical and chemical terms.

Organic materials

Soil organic matter is a minor but significant component in most soils, normally amounting to less than about 5 per cent, but in the Histosols (organic soils) can be between 30 and 100 per cent of the total composition. Organic matter in freely drained mineral soils is derived from the oxidative breakdown products of plant material which are gradually humified and then subsequently mineralized; only in the saturated conditions typical of the organic soils is the process of breakdown inhibited by the lack of oxygen and so accumulation of undecomposed, or partly decomposed, plant remains takes place.

The main source of organic matter within soils is the vegetation growing upon them. Leaf litter falls to the ground surface and begins to decay, roots die within the soil and as they decay further organic matter is added. The processes of breakdown are complex involving a succession of soil microfauna and fungi, each of which takes the process of decomposition a stage further. The final result is the production of humus, a dark-coloured, amorphous material containing a variety of organic components. Mixing of this material into the surface horizon is mainly the result of the activity of soil fauna, especially the earthworms.

Soil structure

The term soil structure is used by pedologists for the aggregation of the individual soil particles into larger aggregates, commonly referred to as peds. Peds are soil aggregates bounded by natural surfaces which become apparent when the soil is exposed in a soil pit or exposure. As the face of the soil dries, their clarity is usually enhanced. In the surface layer of agricultural soils, structures would normally result from cultivation practices and are therefore artifacts bounded by fractures, rather than with natural surfaces.

Soil structures are created by the succession of cycles of wetting and drying, the activity of plant roots and soil fauna. As soils dry, desiccation cracks develop, and once formed tend to perpetuate themselves as their surfaces become coated with organic breakdown products (mucilages and gums), as well as clay particles oriented parallel to the structure face.

Soil structures are usually described according to the type, which gives the shape and arrangement of peds; the class, which describes the size and the grade, which expresses the degree of cohesion of the aggregates (Figure 5.4). The degree of aggregation of soils is significant in terms of the soil's ability to transmit liquids and gases through the pore systems (e.g. Youngs & Leeds-Harrison, 1990; Ball *et al.*, 1988).

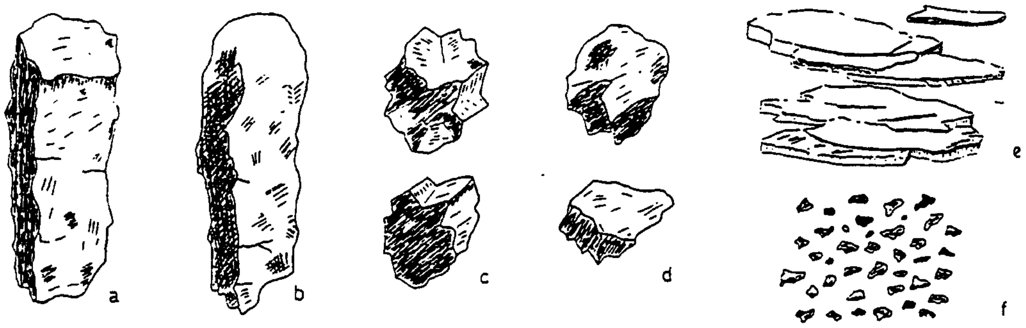


Figure 5.4 Typical forms of soil structure (Soil structure formed by the aggregation of the sand, silt and clay particles: (a) prismatic; (b) columnar; (c) angular blocky; (e) platy; (f) crumb or granular).

5.2.3 The gaseous and liquid phases of soils

One soil feature which has often been neglected in the past has been the spaces between the structures, normally referred to as pores or voids. These are very important features of soils in the context of the present study as they provide preferential paths for the movement of liquids into soils, and gases between the soil and the atmosphere. Johnson *et al.* (1960), proposed classes of abundance, size, continuity, orientation, distribution and morphology for their description which have been adopted in some form by the soil surveys of many countries. The soil pores are either filled with the soil atmosphere or, if saturated, with the soil solution. However, when the soil is moistened the clays expand and pores become restricted and even closed.

The total pore space (TPS) of soil is the volume not occupied by soil solids; it may be obtained from the following equation:

$$TPS = (V_t - V_s) / V_t \qquad (2)$$

where:

V_t = total sample volume (cm^3)
V_s = volume of solids (cm^3)

The value of the TPS of a soil is largely determined by the bulk density of the sample, the weight per unit volume. The content of organic matter has a significant influence upon the specific density of a soil (mineral matter 2.60 g cm^{-3}, organic matter 1.43 g cm^{-3}) and according to Driessen (1986 p. 219) may be determined by:

$$SD = 1 / (0.38 + 0.57 \times C_m) \qquad (3)$$

where:

Cm = carbon content of the matrix material (g g^{-1}).

The soil voids, the pores and fissures between the solid materials, contain the soil atmosphere and the soil solution. The soil atmosphere differs from the air above in two major respects; normally it is saturated with water vapour and the average content of carbon dioxide may be 10 to 100 times that of the air; it also may contain smaller quantities of other gases such as methane and nitrous oxides (see appropriate chapters). The continuity and width of soil pores is important for the diffusion of gases from the soil into the atmosphere.

In freely drained soils, the amount of the soil solution present depends upon the rainfall or irrigation the soil receives, and so it changes with wetting and drying cycles. The amount of water available for plants, the "plant available" moisture is that moisture which lies between the field capacity and wilting point for any particular soil. With poorly drained soils, there may be continual saturation of the soil with pores filled with water to the exclusion of air. The soil solution contains dissolved electrolytes, small quantities of dissolved gases and other water-soluble or water-dispersed compounds. Because the soil solution is the medium from which plants obtain their nutrients, the content and concentration of dissolved substances changes with the time of year, with microbial activity and the amount of rainfall received. When soil pores are filled or partly filled with water the rate of diffusion of gases may be greatly reduced.

5.2.4 Drainage

The drainage of the soil profile is described by the field scientist under the headings of excessively, freely, moderately, imperfectly, poorly and very poorly drained. Allocation of a soil to one or other of these categories is usually done on the basis of colour, particularly the intensity of the mottling and its distribution within the profile. It is assumed that these colour patterns are related to the average drainage conditions over a long period of time. However, the correlation of colours with poor drainage is only partially correct (Hodgson, 1978).

More often than not, these conditions of drainage may be related to the position of a soil on the landscape as Figure 5.5 demonstrates. It is in relief relationships such as these that the soils with poor and very poor drainage lie at the bottom of slopes whereas freely and excessively drained soils occur on the slope or the crest. Soils on the crest and slope will drain rapidly whereas those on the footslopes will receive water from upslope and will remain wet for much longer periods. In such conditions, the period of anaerobic conditions may be prolonged and lead to the possibility of methane production.

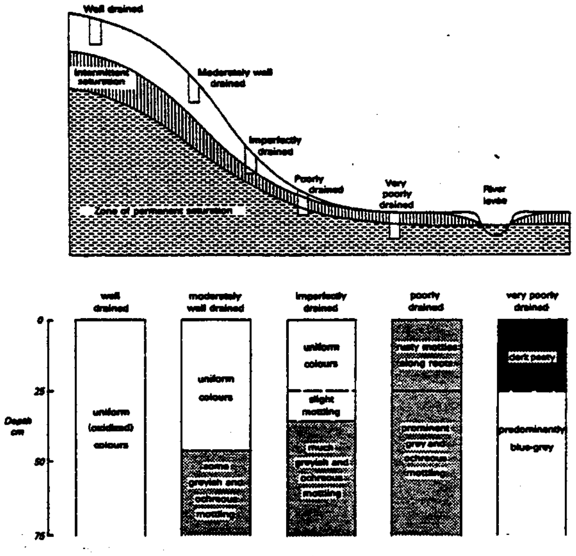


Figure 5.5 A hydrological sequence of soils in a permeable parent material.

A widespread case of human-induced poor soil drainage conditions is in paddy rice fields. Although paddy fields on some alluvial parent materials may be naturally poorly drained, many paddy fields are only puddled in the surface layers to reduce permeability during the period of growth of the rice plants. After growth of the crop has occurred, the fields are allowed to dry out and aerobic conditions return. Thus, the soils are under a constant cycle of aerobic and anaerobic conditions.

In addition, the paddy field usually has a green crop or weeds ploughed in before the field is flooded and the rice is planted, so microbial activity is encouraged during the period before planting. It is preferable to plant the rice after the first flush of decomposition has occurred when it can grow in a more favourable environment. During the flooded period the more important processes taking place include generation of carbon dioxide, methane, hydrogen and ammonia, as well as the reduction of nitrate, iron and manganese oxides, and sulphates (Ponnamperuma, 1964).

5.3 Factors controlling the energy balance of soils

5.3.1 Introduction

Virtually all of the heat energy utilised in the soil is acquired from the radiant energy of the sun. Theoretically, there is a small outflow of energy from the deeper layers of the earth, but in practice this may be discounted. Energy arrives at the outer part of the atmosphere as short-wave solar radiation centered on a waveband of 0.5 μm, and it has been estimated that only 0.002 % of the total radiation emitted by the sun is received by the earth. The amount of energy which is received at the outer reaches of the atmosphere, the solar constant, is 8.36 J m^{-2} $year^{-1}$ (2.0 cal cm^{-2} minute or Langleys/minute) (Hillel, 1980). Reflection, scattering and absorption greatly reduces the amount of radiation which penetrates the atmosphere and eventually reaches the earth's surface. According to Phillipson (1966), in mid-latitudes this amounts to 1.96×10^9 kJ (4.7×10^8 kcal m^{-2} $year^{-1}$).

A clear atmosphere is fairly transparent to incoming short-wave radiation and on a global scale this accounts for some 48% of which 9% is absorbed in passing through the atmosphere, 9% is reflected back into space, and 6% is down-scattered, leaving 24% to reach the surface (Fig. 5.6). Fifty-two per cent encounters clouds which absorb 10%, another 25% are reflected back into space leaving 17% to pass through to the ground surface. On the average, 34% is reflected back into space, 19% is absorbed into the atmosphere and only 47%, (24 + 17 + 6) is received at the earth's surface.

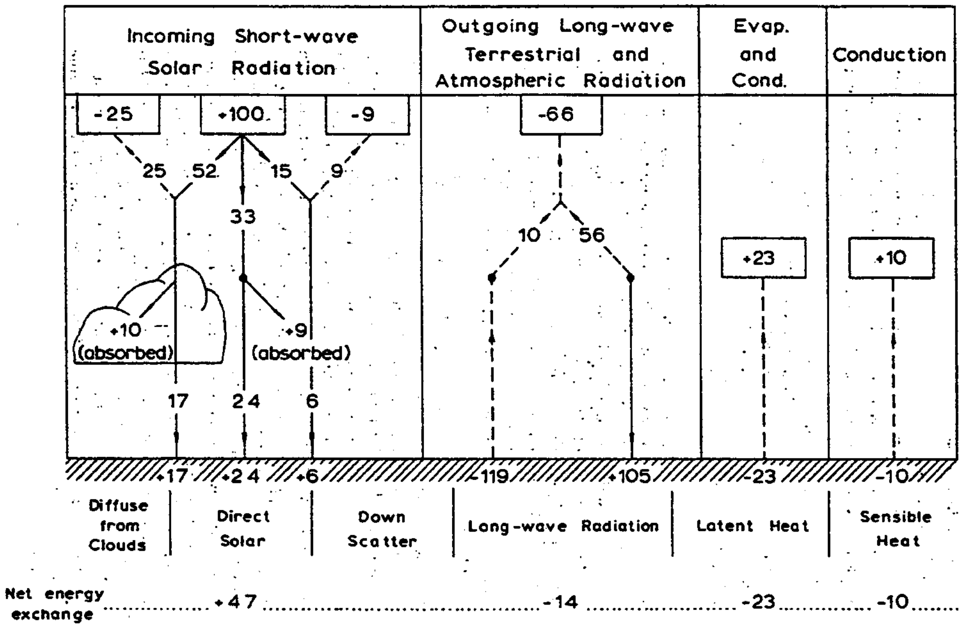


Figure 5.6 The mean energy exchange between earth and atmosphere (after Watts, 1971).

In order to conform to the First Law of Thermodynamics, this receipt of energy must be balanced by losses otherwise the surface of the earth and the atmosphere would steadily increase in temperature. The balance of energy received and lost is completed by a net loss of 14% from the energy circulating between the atmosphere and the earth, 23% are lost through latent heat as water vapour is evaporated and condensed and conduction results in a loss of another 10% (14 + 23 + 10), equalling those gained.

The net radiation received by the soil surface may be determined by a radiometer or, in theory, it can be estimated simply from meteorological data using the equation:

$$H = E + (Q_a + Q_s) \tag{1}$$

in which:

E = heat used for evaporation of water from soil and crop

Q = heat lost to surroundings (Q_a to the air and Q_s to the soil).

The net effect of the greenhouse gases on the energy balance is that they absorb some of the incoming short-wave radiation and outgoing radiation. Of the outgoing emission of 390 W m^{-2}, only 8 per cent is lost to space, the rest being retained in the atmosphere. Without the presence of the greenhouse gases, the amount of outgoing radiation would be 236 W m^{-2}. Most of the retention, 154 W m^{-2}, is caused by water vapour (100 W m^{-2}) and carbon dioxide (50 W m^{-2}), which leaves only a small contribution from the remaining gases.

5.3.2 Radiant energy at the earth's surface

Energy is lost from the atmosphere and the soil surface in the form of longwave radiation, centered upon 10 μm, with a range of 4-40 μm. At this wavelength the energy is less penetrating and is reflected and absorbed by clouds, water vapour and other greenhouse gases in the atmosphere. Losses and gains of heat energy occur through evaporation, an endothermic process, and condensation, a exothermic process. In appropriate situations, changes of state between freezing and thawing also take up and release latent heat. Evaporation may take place from the bare soil surface alone, or from both soil and vegetation surfaces. This process requires energy, and so the flux of water vapour from either soil or vegetation surfaces is closely associated with transfers of latent heat. There is also a transfer downwards of sensible heat into the soil. In dry soils this is a slow and inefficient process as the points of contact between soil particles are small, but as the moisture content of the soil increases, the water is a better conductor of heat than the soil materials, and a maximum conduction value is reached when water saturates the soil. The lowest layers of the atmosphere are also warmed by contact with a warm soil. The amount of heat stored in the vegetation is negligible compared with storage in the soil (Tanner, 1960).

The balance between incoming and outgoing energy at the soil surface is described by Marshall & Holmes (1988) using the equation:

$$(1-\alpha)R_s = R_l + G + H + \lambda E \qquad (2)$$

where:

Rs = shortwave radiation
α = reflection of surface
R_l = longwave radiation
G = flux of heat to the ground
H = flux of heat to the air
λE = latent heat consumed by evaporation

This equation may be re-written:

$$R_n = S(1-\alpha) + L_n \qquad (3)$$

where:

R_n = net radiation

α = reflection co-efficient
$S(1-\alpha)$ is the short wave radiation energy absorbed
L_n = net longwave radiation (L_i - L_o; L_i is inward, and L_o is outward longwave radiation)

The net radiation is an important parameter as it is the amount of energy available at the ground surface to drive the processes of soil formation, photosynthesis and crop growth, air heating and evapotranspiration. Figures for Rothamsted, England, indicate that 80 per cent of the incoming radiation is absorbed and 30 per cent re-radiated as long wave radiation (Gregory, 1988).

5.3.3 Albedo

Critical factors in the energy balance are the physical characteristics of the soil surface, for these influence the amount of solar energy which is available for conversion into heat. These factors are combined into the albedo, which may be defined as the ratio of the outgoing to incoming radiative flux (Bolle, 1990). The value of the albedo varies according to the angle of incidence, the higher the sun in the sky, the lower the albedo. Thus, as latitude increases towards the poles, the albedo becomes more significant as the angle of incidence becomes more acute. However, individual sites may offset this effect to some extent if the slope is sun-facing.

Where bare soils are concerned, 10-30 % of incident solar radiation is reflected; the albedo of some different soil materials in comparison with snow are:

dry soil	0.25 - 0.45
dry sand	0.30 - 0.40
moist soil	0.10 - 0.15
peat	0.05 - 0.15
snow	0.80 - 0.95

The structure of the vegetation also is a significant complicating factor as the angle of disposition of the leaves to incoming light influences the direction of reflection which occurs. A change in land use or deforestation would significantly change the albedo (Henderson-Sellers *et al.*, 1988).

Previously, it was stated that it was possible to determine the amount of net radiation (Penman, 1948). In practice, this is not a simple problem as it is difficult to partition λE, which is involved in both energy and water movement. Penman also showed that the radiation R_n and L_n can be calculated with sufficient accuracy from standard meteorological data. This he accomplished using the relationships:

$$R = R_T(a_1 + 0.62n/N) \qquad (4)$$

and

$$Ln = \sigma T^4(0.47 - 0.065\sqrt{e_d})(0.17 + 0.83n/N) \qquad (5)$$

in which R is the incident short wave radiation and R_T is the incoming solar radiation if the atmosphere was completely transparent. This can be calculated from the solar constant, latitude and the time of the year. σ represents the Stefan-Boltzman constant (5.67×10^{-8} W m^{-2} K^{-4}) and T is the temperature of the absorbing surface and e_d the vapour pressure of water in air in mbar and a_1 a constant dependant upon latitude (Gregory, 1988).

5.3.4 Soil temperature change

The rate at which soil temperature changes occur will depend upon the heat flux into and out of the soil. In turn, the flux of heat depends upon the temperature gradient and the soil's thermal capacity and conductivity. The position is complicated by the diurnal and annual rhythm and by the lack of homogeneity of soils. Heat energy received during the day is released during the night into the lower atmosphere. Seasonally, the shortwave energy provides a surplus during the spring and summer, a situation which is balanced by losses in autumn and winter.

The flux of sensible heat at the earth's surface may be described by the equation:

$$H = -K_H d(\rho C_p T)/dz, \tag{6}$$

where:

T = temperature at height z

KH = a transfer coefficient dependent upon the horizontal wind velocity, aerodynamic roughness of the land surface, height of measurement and stability of the atmosphere

ρ = density of the air

C_p = heat capacity at constant pressure.

As the density of the air and the heat capacity at constant pressure are substantially constant (Marshall and Holmes, 1988), the equation becomes:

$$H = -K_H \rho C_p dT/dz. \tag{7}$$

Heat flux into the soil is conductive, and the rate which a soil warms depends upon its heat capacity (specific heat × mass). As the specific heat (the calories required to raise one gram of a substance 1° C) is known for soil constituents (see Table 5.1), the heat capacity of soils may be calculated, according to Baver *et al.* (1972), from:

$$Cs = 0.46x_m + 0.60x_o + x_w \tag{8}$$

where:

Cs is the heat capacity of the soil, and

x_m, x_o and x_w are the volume fractions of the mineral and organic matter and water, respectively.

Table 5.1 Specific Heat and Heat Capacity of soil materials (Kohnke, 1982).

Material	Specific heat $J\ g^{-1}$ (cal g^{-1})	Heat capacity $J\ cm^{-3}$ (cal cm^{-3})
Humus	1.67 (0.4)	2.34 (0.56)
Water	4.18 (1.0)	4.18 (1.00)
Ice	2.09 (0.5)	1.92 (0.46)
Air	1.04 (0.25)	1.25 (0.0003)
Clay	0.92 (0.22)	2.09 (0.50)
Quartz	0.79 (0.19)	2.09 (0.50)
$CaCO_3$	0.84 (0.20)	2.25 (0.54)

The thermal conductivity of a soil (its ability to transfer heat) is dependent upon its content of air and water, but also on its state of compaction. Thermal conductivity is greatest in wet compact soils (Moench & Evans, 1970). Thermal conductivities of common materials are: air 0.5×10^{-4}, dry soil $3\text{-}5 \times 10^{-4}$, snow 3.9×10^{-4}, moist soil $20\text{-}40 \times 10^{-4}$ and depending on temperature, water $13\text{-}14 \times 10^{-4}$ calories s cm^{-2} °C change in temperature.

The rate of change in temperature of a soil body at a given depth is the result of the flux of heat and the thermal capacity (the amount of heat required to change the temperature of a given mass of soil) by:

$$dT/dt = kd^2T/\rho c dz^2 \tag{9}$$

where:

ρ = soil density
c = specific heat capacity
k = thermal conductivity
k/pc = thermal diffusivity

Dampening of the daily and annual temperature fluctuations in soil is controlled by thermal diffusivity. The observed decrease in amplitude with depth is described by the expression:

$$e^{-z\sqrt{w/2D}} \tag{10}$$

where:

z = depth in cm
w = angular velocity of the daily/annual cycle (and equals $2\pi/t$ radians sec^{-1} where t is the number of seconds in a day or year)
D = the thermal diffusivity of the soil.

At a depth of $z = \sqrt{2D/W}$, the amplitude of the temperature wave is e^{-1} or 0.37 times the amplitude at the surface; this is referred to as the "dampening depth".

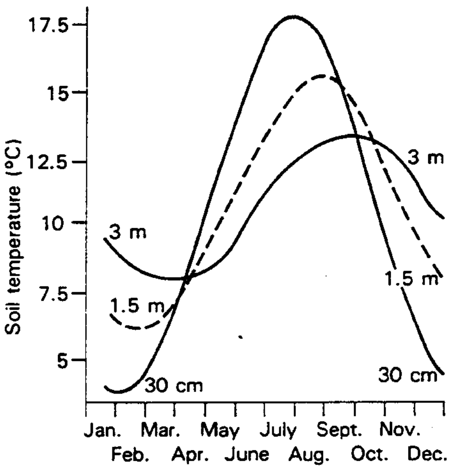


Figure 5.7 Annual variation of soil temperature with depth under short grass, Oxford (Payne & Gregory, 1988).

In an unsaturated soil with a temperature gradient, water evaporates in the warmer horizons and diffuses, as water vapour, to cooler horizons where condensation occurs. This transfer of water vapour also transfers heat as it is absorbed in the process of evaporation and released in condensation.

The soil temperature is influenced by the presence of moisture, but this is not a straight-forward relationship as the surface dries first and this influences the albedo and also the rate of evaporation of water vapour. The dampening effect referred to previously means that in most soils there is little temperature variation below 10 cm caused by moisture content. Camillo (1989) has attempted to estimate the surface temperature of soils for remote sensing purposes from subsurface temperature values using Fourier series and Wolf & Rogowski (1991), in studying the distribution of heat flux and growing degree days, comment on the influence soil heat flux has on the mineralisation of carbon and nitrogen and the potential for pollution caused by the latter.

On the soil surface, the presence of vegetation, plant debris or mulches reduces the diurnal range of temperature fluctuation by the insulating effect of a layer of trapped, still air. Under a canopy of trees all shortwave radiation will be intercepted, leaving only reflected longwave radiation to reach the soil surface. Emitted longwave radiation from the soil surface will be absorbed and reflected by the canopy. Thus, above a crop or forest canopy, the air temperature will be lower than the surface soil temperature on a clear night, whereas over a bare soil the air temperature will be the same as that of the soil. During the day, air temperatures may be higher than soil surface temperatures as sensible heat is dissipated into the atmosphere. In winter, different forms of vegetation cover influence the impact of frost and the depth to which it penetrates. In tropical regions, shade trees or mulches are necessary to maintain equable soil temperatures and moisture content for active root growth (Horton, 1989).

5.3.5 Sensible and latent heat

The flux of sensible and latent heat from the soil or plant foliage involves the transfer of warm humid air into the lower layers of the atmosphere as a result of gradients of temperature and vapour pressure. When the soil surface is moist most of the net radiation received is absorbed and used to evaporate water, but as the soil dries, an increasing amount of energy is dissipated as sensible heat to the air or to the deeper layers of the soil.

Values for these heat fluxes may be obtained by averaging values in the following equations:

$$C = -\rho c_p K_h \, \vartheta T/\vartheta z \tag{11}$$

and

$$\lambda E = \frac{-\rho c_p}{\gamma} K_v \vartheta e/\vartheta z \tag{12}$$

where:

ρ = density of air
c_p = specific heat capacity of air at constant pressure
λ = heat of vaporisation of water (2.453×10^6 J kg^{-1})
γ = psychromatic constant (ratio $\rho c_p / 0.6221$)
p = total air pressure.

The ratio of sensible heat to latent heat transfer is the Bowen ratio σ, (see equation 5), and after some simplification for still air conditions, it can be written:

$$\sigma = g(T_o - T_a) / (e_o - e_a) \tag{13}$$

where:

T_o = mean air temperature
T_a = mean air temperature at height z above the surface
e_o = vapour pressure
e_a = vapour pressure at height z above the surface.

Comparisons with measurements from lysimeters show that there is good accordance with calculations using the Bowen ratio.

Returning to the energy balance equation (2), it may be re-written, omitting the symbols for energy retained by the surface and energy stored during photosynthesis, which are unnecessary for a bare soil:

$$R_n - G = C - \lambda E \qquad (14)$$

where:

R_n = net radiation
G = heat energy conducted to warm materials below the surface
C = energy used to warm the air
λ = latent heat of vapourisation
E = evaporation

Present-day analysis of these problems utilises resistance nomenclature and in this format the two elements C and LE may be re-written as

$$C = \frac{\rho c_p \, (T_o - T_a)}{r_h} \qquad (15)$$

and

$$\lambda E = \frac{\rho c_p}{\lambda} \, \frac{(e_{so} - e_a)}{r_v} \qquad (16)$$

where:

ρc_p = volumetric specific heat capacity of air
T_o and e_{so} = surface temperature and vapour pressure
T_a and e_a = temperature and vapour pressure at a reference height in the air
r_h and r_v = resistances to sensible heat convection and vapour transfer respectively between the wet surface and the air at reference height.

5.3.6 Relationships of heat and evaporation

The process of evaporation may be represented quantitatively with reference to the radiant heat energy received and the amount of sensible heat lost to the atmosphere or as latent heat to the soil. Berkhout & Van Keulen (1986) show how these factors are related. First concerning the relationship of heat loss caused by evaporation:

$$R_N = H + LE \qquad (17)$$

where:

R_N = net radiation
H = sensible heat loss
E = rate of water loss from the surface
LE = evaporative heat loss

Secondly the loss of sensible heat to the surrounding atmosphere and soil can be represented by:

$$H = h_u(T_s - T_a) \tag{18}$$

where:

H = sensible heat loss
h_u = sensible heat transfer coefficient
T_s = temperature of the evaporating surface
T_a = temperature at standard screen height.

The sensible heat transfer coefficient h_u is dependent upon the turbulence of the atmosphere and may be expressed:

$$h_u = a_u(1 + b_u\bar{u}) \tag{19}$$

where:

$\bar{u}$ = mean wind velocity
a_u = empirical constant (circa 6.4×10^5 J m^{-2} d^{-1} °C^{-1})
b_u = empirical constant (circa 0.54 s m^{-1})

A water surface loses water vapour in proportion to the vapour pressure difference between the surface and the overlying air. This may be represented by:

$$E = k_u(e_s - e_a) \tag{20}$$

where:

E = rate of water vapour loss
k_u = the vapour transfer coefficient
e_s = surface vapour pressure
e_a = vapour at screen height

Both the exchange of sensible and evaporative heat are controlled by processes of diffusion and turbulence in the atmosphere. These may be related by Bowen's ratio in which the psychrometer constant:

$$y = h_u k_u^{-1} L^{-1} \tag{21}$$

the value of which is approximately 0.66.

A wet soil surface or a grass-covered surface having sufficient water supplied to it, gives a Bowen ratio (σ) = 0 to 0.2; as the surface dries, σ becomes larger because the proportion of sensible heat increases. In arid conditions, the ratio becomes negative as energy is extracted from the air to evaporate water. Henning (1989) provides maps showing the world distribution of the Bowen ratio. It is relevant to note that Penman (1948) developed an equation which described evaporation in terms of radiation, saturation deficit, temperature and diffusion resistances. He linearized the relationship between the saturated vapour pressure and the temperature of the air to estimate the vapour pressure difference between the saturated surface and the air (e_{so} - e_a) from temperature differences and saturation deficit (e_{sa} - e_a). This enabled him to propose the equation:

$$e_{so} - e_a = (e_{sa} - e_a) + \Delta(T_o - T_a) \tag{22}$$

where:

Δ is the slope of the vapour pressure curve at $(T_o - T_a)/2$

after which (e_{so} - e_a) is eliminated using equation 15 to give the Penman equation:

$$\lambda E = \frac{\Delta\ (R_n - G) + (\rho c_p\ (e_{sa} - e_a)/r_h)}{\Delta + \gamma\ (r_v\ /\ r_h)} \tag{23}$$

which can be re-written for crops as:

$$\lambda E = \frac{\Delta R_n + (\rho c_p (e_{sa} - e_a)/r_h)}{\Delta + \gamma\ (r_v + r_c)/r_h} \tag{24}$$

The canopy resistance, r_c, depends upon the amount of stomatal opening, except when the leaves are wet with dew, rain or irrigation water when it is close to zero. The value of r_c lies between 0.3 and 0.5 s cm^{-1} for many crops when well supplied with water and the leaves are dry (Gregory, 1988).

5.4 Factors controlling water in the soil system

5.4.1 Introduction

Brotherton (1990) referred to water vapour as the most significant greenhouse gas, but water droplets in the form of clouds also exert a great influence upon the absorption and reflectivity of the atmosphere. However, it must not be overlooked that changes in land use strongly influence the character of the land surface, and with it the albedo and physical characteristics controlling the movement of water between soil, vegetation and the atmosphere. For example, where tropical forests have been removed, evaporation is reduced, and a cloud cover does not form so readily.

It is clear that there is a continuum of movement of water through the soil-plant-atmosphere system. Within the soil, lateral movement of water is controlled by gravity and a gradient of matric potential, but in plants osmotic potential also strongly influences water movement. Analogies have been made of the flow being similar to that of an electric current so that the water flux equals the difference in water potential divided by the resistance to flow.

In unsaturated soils, water is held in thin films on soil particle or pore surfaces by forces which resist the downward pull of gravity. As the soil dries, it becomes held increasingly tightly by these forces. Thus to obtain water from the soil greater amounts of energy must be used to extract it; consequently, it is convenient to use energy relationships to describe the situation which prevails.

Most soil survey reports contain information upon soil moisture contents in the form of gravimetric measurements (W/W %), or if volume and bulk density were considered, upon a volumetric basis (V/V %). Another common method is to report soil moisture contents as a function of the pF, the negative pressure retaining water in the soil against the pull of a column of water, expressed on a logarithmic scale. Increasingly in recent years, soil moisture contents are being reported in terms of the energy differences resulting from the attractive forces between the soil solids and water in the soil, collectively referred to as matric potential (ψ). Undisturbed moisture contents may be determined using a neutron probe. Using the figures obtained by either method, the amount of available water capacity (AWC) for the profile may be calculated. Gregson *et al.* (1987), examine the relationship between the soil water content and the soil water potential, otherwise known as the soil moisture characteristic and indicate that it may be simply determined from one paired measurement of soil water content against matric potential.

5.4.2 Infiltration

Water enters the soil system as a result of rain, irrigation or seepage. Excluding the meteorological processes of raindrop formation and their fall through the atmosphere, entry of water into the soil is subject to two limiting factors; the infiltration capacity and the permeability of the soil. Both infiltration and permeability may vary in time because of the interaction of water with the soil, particularly the clay fraction.

Raindrops vary in size according to the intensity of a rainstorm. A light rain, the drops of which might typically be 1 mm in diameter has an impact velocity of 3.8 m s^{-1} but in a heavy rainstorm, drop size may increase to 4.5 mm diameter and have a terminal velocity of 9.0 m s^{-1}. The greater size and rate of fall provides approximately 500 times the kinetic energy and 200 times the momentum of the smaller drops. Davies & Payne (1988) quote an example of a storm of 5 cm h^{-1} which dissipates energy at the rate of 5.6 kW ha^{-1}. A small increase to 7.5 cm h^{-1} raises the energy dissipated by a factor of 100 to 520 kW ha^{-1} (Sharma *et al.*, 1991).

Impact of raindrops upon a bare soil surface may cause disruption of surface structures into their constituent sand, silt, clay and organic components. Subsequently, these individual particles are transported a short distance away from where they originated and are deposited, blocking pores and reducing the rate of infiltration. Very permeable soils have infiltration rates up to 0.1 mm s^{-1} but soils of low permeability have rates of 10^{-4} mm s^{-1} which approximates to a range between 10 m day^{-1} and 10 mm day^{-1} (Payne, 1988). The rate of infiltration as measured under field conditions usually shows a steep decline following the application of water to the soil surface, and eventually approaches the saturated hydraulic conductivity.

Clods produced by cultivation may also shatter on wetting as swelling of clays causes further disruption of an already fractured soil structure. Whether dispersed by impact or by disruption, the individual soil particles are then available for transport. This may be restricted to a few millimetres in which case redeposition may block pores and greatly reduce infiltration. This phenomenon is sometimes referred to as "capping". As this is most likely to occur during heavy rainstorms, the restriction of infiltration is serious as a greater proportion of the rainfall is diverted to overland flow and may cause erosion.

Below the surface horizon, wetting of the subsoil results in expansion of the clays which also restrict the size of pores. Closing of cracks is most marked in Vertisols with a large proportion of smectite-type clays. However, swelling also occurs to a lesser extent in other clays, reducing the permeability of saturated soils and leading to the formation of gley phenomena.

5.4.3 Water movement within soils

The concept of field capacity (water held in the soil after any excess has drained away following heavy rain or irrigation) represents an upper limit of plant available water in freely drained soils. The wilting point (the moisture content of the soil at which leaves of plants growing in the soil first reached a stage when they did not recover when placed in a saturated atmosphere without addition of water to the soil) represents the lower limit of available moisture. Unfortunately, all plants do not respond in the same way, so these figures can only give an approximation of the plant available water in soils. In more recent years, suction figures of 5 kPa (-0.05 bar) and 1.5 MPa (-15 bar) have been used to define these limits (Gregory 1988) but experimental work has shown wide variation of these limits in different soils.

Clay content accounts for most of the variation observed, but organic matter is also involved and is responsible for at least part of the water-holding capacity, particularly in coarse-textured soils. Loamy soils containing appreciable contents of silt can hold the greatest quantity of available water; however the concept of plant-available water is an equilibrium concept and cannot be an exact part of soil science (Gregory, 1988).

Water is present in the inter-connecting system of fissures and pores which surround and penetrate the peds of a soil. In the larger pores and fissures, water may flow freely under the influence of gravity, but in the finer pores the influence of capillarity is more significant. This led in the 1930s to a tripartite division of soil water into gravitational, capillary and structural components of soil water. Subsequently, these approximations of the soil water content have been superceded by moisture contents defined in terms of the matric suction.

Water moves through soils in response to differences in gravity, matric potential and temperature. In the case of gravity flow, it drains from the larger pores until the water films which remain become sufficiently thin for the tension holding the water to be greater than the pull of gravity. At this point, and particularly when the films of water become discontinuous, obvious flow of soil water ceases, but some movement still occurs in the finer pores. However, the pores of soils are not parallel-sided capillaries, so constrictions and bubbles of entrapped air may reduce the flow of water substantially before all the potentially available moisture has been moved.

Movement of water in response to a difference in matric potential implies that water is able to move in response to the tendency to equalise that potential. The rate of movement is proportional to the gradient of the potential and the hydraulic conductivity of the soil. The relationship is demonstrated by Darcy's Law:

$$\frac{dQ}{dt} = -K \frac{d\psi}{dl} \qquad (25)$$

where:

dQ/dt is the flow rate across an area perpendicular to the direction of flow.
$d\psi/dl$ is the gradient of the potential expressed as a head of water.
K is the hydraulic conductivity of the soil.

Previously, it has been stated that the maximum values of hydraulic conductivity occur in a saturated soil where all pores are transmitting water. In unsaturated conditions it has proved practically convenient (although not physically correct) to treat water movement in soils as a diffusion process down a concentration gradient. If water diffusibility is defined as the product of conductivity and the rate of change of suction with water content, c, then the flow equation may be re-written:

$$dQ/dt = -Ddc/dl$$

which expresses the movement of water as a diffusion coefficient (the product of water diffusivity and the gradient of water concentration).

Darcy's equation has to be modified for flow through unsaturated soils both for vertical as well as horizontal movements as is demonstrated by Marshall & Holmes (1988). Further complications are introduced by the (generally) isotropic nature of soil profiles. However, Vereecken *et al.* (1989) describe how it is possible to obtain a measure of the hydraulic conductivity from easily measured soil properties.

Thirdly water movement may occur in soils under the influence of a temperature gradient. A gradient in temperature will cause water to move through the soils in the vapour phase. It moves from hot regions to cold regions of the soil. Heating of the soil surface during daytime causes water to migrate as vapour into lower horizons as well as evaporate into the atmosphere. At night time the soil surface cools below that of the subsurface horizons and a reverse movement of water vapour can be observed in Australia (Rose 1968, quoted by Payne, 1988).

Vapour movement also occurs in soils subject to freezing. Water is effectively removed from circulation in the soil when it is converted to ice. As freezing occurs, water and water vapour are drawn from other areas of the soil and added to the ice body. Where temperatures fall slowly the tension which holds water to clays prevents it from freezing, but it is gradually overcome and so the water moves to the growing ice mass.

5.4.4 Subsoil water movement

The net movement of moisture in humid climates is downwards under gravity, but in arid or seasonally arid climates the matric suction (ψ) may be greater and water is drawn upwards from the groundwater. This movement is normally referred to as the capillary rise; the water being drawn upwards to the point where gravity and the soil matric suction are in balance. The upper limit of the capillary fringe is referred to as the piezometric surface, the level of which may be measured in dip wells, except for those situations when the piezometric surface is above soil level.

The vertical distance of capillary movement for different matric potentials and soil texture classes have been prepared by Rijtema and are reproduced by Driessen (1986). He presents equations for low- and high- suction ranges to calculate capillary rise:

$$CR = \frac{k_0 \cdot (e^{-\alpha \cdot \psi} - e^{-\alpha \cdot (z_t - RD)})}{e^{-\alpha . (z_t - RD)} - 1}, \; if \; \psi \leq \psi_{max} \tag{26}$$

and

$$CR = k\psi \cdot (\frac{\psi}{\Delta \; (z_t - RD)} - 1) \tag{27}$$

where

ψ is the mean suction in the increment $\Delta(z_t$ - RD), and

$k\psi$ is the hydraulic conductivity expressed in terms of a texture-specific suction limit and a texture-specific constant.

With the value of the matric suction lower than the value of the pull of gravity, soil water movement is downwards as percolation. This water, moving down in response to gravity is that water which has escaped evaporation, and absorption by roots. It may eventually reach the water table and eventually rejoin the wider circulation of water in the hydrological cycle.

5.5 Gaseous movement in soils

5.5.1 Introduction

The movement of oxygen, carbon dioxide, water vapour and other gases between soils and the atmosphere takes place through the continuous pore spaces extending from the deeper horizons to the soil surface. In a simple situation, diffusion occurs as a result of differences in specific gas concentrations, but when the movement of soil gases is considered there are several complicating factors. Pores are of variable width and water may be trapped by constrictions in otherwise broad pores. Changes in atmospheric pressure and temperature cause expansion and contraction in the volume of the soil atmosphere resulting in displacement to the atmosphere. Some ventilation may occur through the gustiness of the wind and rainwater seeping downwards can displace air below the wetting front (Grismer, 1988). However, since the earlier years of the 20th century, diffusion has been seen as the most significant process involved in soil gaseous movements and this position is still supported at the present day (van Bavel, 1952; Payne & Gregory, 1988).

5.5.2 Diffusion

The relationship between the rate of diffusion of a gas in soil (D) to that of a gas in the open atmosphere (D_o) can be represented, as a first approximation, by the expression D/D_o = 0.6S, where S is the proportion of the soil volume occupied by air. Currie (1960 & 1965) modified this statement to improve the representation of the soil structure and moisture content (a) to D/D_o = aS. By the introduction of a tortuosity and a shape factor into the equation the differences in rates of diffusion between well- and poorly-structured soils were more accurately quantified. The same author's experiences investigating within-crumb and between-crumb rates of diffusion came to the conclusion that the within-crumb diffusion rate is about one-fifth of that between the crumbs.

Different gases will diffuse at different rates through different media. Oxygen, for example, will diffuse more rapidly through a 1 m column of air than through a 1 mm water film. Although the physical fluxes can be measured, they are complicated by microbial activity, both for generating and absorbing gases. However, the significance of structure and an adequately drained soil for gaseous movement is evident. The position is further complicated in that there may be small areas of anaerobic conditions in an otherwise freely drained soil. This condition is often revealed by the presence of a mottled colour pattern, and the waters of which may contain virtually no oxygen, only carbon dioxide and nitrogen.

The oxygen demand of soils is stated by Payne & Gregory (1988) to be unusually large, compared with the amount of oxygen present in the soil. They claim that if a soil using 7 g m^{-2} day^{-1} was sealed, and all the use of oxygen took place in the upper 25 cm and the soil air contains 20 per cent by volume oxygen, the soil's oxygen supply would only last about 2 days. The same authors refer to the crusting phenomenon encountered in certain soils, commenting that research has shown that, even in these soils, there are sufficient cracks and holes, which together with air turbulence, are sufficient to maintain a satisfactory oxygen concentration gradient. However, if the surface horizon is saturated gaseous diffusion is effectively restricted (Rasmuson *et al.*, 1990).

The flux of carbon dioxide to the atmosphere was found by Monteith to be 1.5 g m^{-2} during winter and 6.7 g m^{-2} day^{-1} in summer (quoted by Payne & Gregory, 1988). Carbon dioxide is, of course, soluble in water (31 times greater than oxygen) an observation which Greenwood (1970) uses to predict that the CO_2 content of air in the soil should not rise above 1 per cent, other than in anaerobic pockets. Diffusion coefficients for oxygen and carbon dioxide in water and air at 25 °C are given by Marshall & Holmes (1988):

	oxygen (m^2 s^{-1})	carbon dioxide (m^2 s^{-1})
air	2.26×10^{-5}	1.81×10^{-5}
water	2.60×10^{-9}	2.04×10^{-9}

5.5.3 Quantitative relationships

Diffusion of gases occurs in response to a concentration gradient is demonstrated by Fick's law:

$$q = D_o dC/dx$$

where:

q = the gas flux per unit area of cross-section
C = its concentration
x = a space co-ordinate normal to the section

This may be simplified to:

$$q = D'_o dp/dx$$

as the partial pressure (p) of a gas in the mixture of gases is proportional to C.

In the soil the tortuosity of the pores reduces the effective cross-section of the pathways for diffusion and the following equation has been put forward to account for the movement of a gas through a soil:

$$q_s = D_o b e_a dC/dx$$

where:

q_s = gas flux
b = impedance factor
D_o = diffusion coefficient for specific gases
e_a = air filled porosity

If D is the diffusion coefficient for a gas diffusing through a soil, then:

$$D/D_o = be_a.$$

The value of 0.66 was adopted by Penman (1940) for the impedance factor b, but subsequently other investigators, including Currie & Rose (1984), have refined the approach to account for tortuosity and the presence of water in pores, partially closing the pathways (Bruchler *et al.*, 1989). For a moist soil Currie proposed:

$$D/D_o = (e_a/e)^4 e^m$$

in which m is approximately 1.5 in sands. Currie (1984) subsequently concluded that no single relationship between D/D_o and e_a would fit the results obtained.

Soil microbial activity and rooting systems are capable of absorbing free oxygen. Concentrations of oxygen in the soil solution are normally some 50 to 100-fold greater than in the cytoplasm of cells, so an adequate gradient exists to maintain diffusion into the living tissue. A feedback situation exists with carbon dioxide concentrations because oxygen demand decreases as the carbon dioxide concentration increases. The demand for oxygen from actively growing crop roots (and the microbial population) is between 7 and 35 g m^{-2} per day during the summer period of temperate climates, declining to one tenth of this rate during winter. Even though soil contains up to 3g m^{-3} of water, roots can suffer from anoxic conditions. When this occurs ethylene is generated, inhibiting many plants, but stimulating growth of rice plant roots.

Diffusion of oxygen into the soil is particularly significant for methane oxidation in freely drained soils. Tiedje *et al.* (1984) report that denitrification increases rapidly when oxygen concentration falls below 2 per cent and the water-filled pore space exceeds 60 per cent. Rates of gaseous diffusion from soil to atmosphere or vice versa, depends upon the difference between concentration in the free atmosphere and in the soil atmosphere, the length of the diffusion path and the diffusion co-efficient of the gases concerned. Collin & Rasmuson (1988) compare gas diffusion models for unsaturated porous media; Rasmuson (1990) extends this work into the transport of hydrolysable gases in soils. Payne & Gregory (1988) state that diffusion is much less dependant upon the shape of air-filled pores than is the hydraulic conductivity, and it is approximately proportional to the soil volume consisting of air. Hodgson & Macleod (1989) use the oxygen flux density to estimate the air-filled porosity of a vertisol.

5.6 Conclusions

The factors which contribute to the evolution and emission of greenhouse gases from soils result from the interaction of the traditional factors of soil formation advocated by Jenny some 50 years ago. Then, as now, these factors set the broad parameters of soil formation. However, it is recognised in this review, that underlying virtually all of the processes of soil formation are basic physical interactions which are critical not only for soil genesis, but also for the generation of gases by some soils and the absorption of gases by others. The flux of heat into and out of the soil and its effect on the flux of water vapour and gases between the soil and the atmosphere has been an area of particular scientific interest for soil physicists. The aim of this chapter has been to draw attention to the underlying physical relationships which control or influence the generation, movement and emission of gases from soils.

Essentially, the study of soil physics is concerned with the description, measurement and prediction (and possibly control) of the processes of transport of heat, gases and solutes through the soil (Koorevaar *et al.*, 1983). Soil is the zone of intimate interpenetration of the atmosphere and the geosphere; it is a most interesting area of environmental study, shared by ecologists, and both atmospheric and soil scientists. It is the zone in which soil-related greenhouse gases are generated, and must pass through before reaching the open atmosphere. It is important that a greater understanding should be acquired of the processes which control the production of soil gases, their absorption and emission.

The heat flux at the soil surface is one of the most fundamental processes. It influences the development of the soil profile and controls the speed of reactions which take place. This includes all the dynamic activity associated with life on the earth's surface, whether it is the physico- chemical process of weathering or the biological activity of seed germination, root and shoot growth or microbial activity - and gaseous emission and absorption.

Soils and vegetation are the reactive part of the earth's surface which is involved closely in the absorption and exchange of energy received from the sun. This energy is the driving force behind most of the physical, chemical and biological processes which occur on the earth's surface. Water, which can exist in solid, liquid and gaseous phases at the temperatures experienced on the earth's surface, requires energy when changing its state. Water is also necessary for many of the chemical and biological processes to operate, so its presence is of critical importance

Movement of heat in soils occurs by conduction in the solid and liquid phases and by convection in the gaseous and liquid phases. Conduction transmits thermal energy from particle to particle and is a relatively slow process, especially in dry soils. Convection in the soil air or soil solution within soil pores is a more rapid process of heat transport and is associated with gains and losses of heat through the latent heat of evaporation/condensation and freeze/thaw processes.

Throughout the last 100 years, there has been considerable emphasis on the study of water movement, and numerical models have been developed to account for its behaviour as it passes through the porous medium of the soil, either in a saturated or unsaturated state. As has been shown, water movement can be described by the hydraulic potential gradient, the volume and the rate of movement expressed as a flux density.

The gaseous phase in soils generally decreases in amount with depth in the soil profile, mainly as a result of the loosening effects of soil fauna and roots. In air-filled pores, the process of diffusion is dominant in the exchange of gases between the soil air and the atmosphere, but displacement by water also plays an important part.

The factors and processes involved in soil formation which regulate the conditions in which emissions and absorption of heat take place and greenhouse gases occur offer mankind points where some manipulation of the system can take place to limit or reduce the amount of these gases migrating into the atmosphere.

5.7 References

Ball, B.C., O'Sullivan, M.F. & Hunter, R., 1988. Gas diffusion, fluvial flow and derived pore continuity indices in relation to vehicle traffic and tillage. *Journal of Soil Science,* 39:327-339.

Baver, L.D., Gerdner, W.H. & Gardner, W.R. 1972. *Soil Physics* Fourth Edition, John Wiley, New York.

Berkhout, J.A.A. & van Keulen, H. 1986. Potential Evapotranspiration In: *Modelling of Agricultural Production: Weather, Soils and Crops*, Pudoc, Wageningen.

Bidwell, O.W. & Hole F.R., 1965. Man as a factor in soil formation. *Soil Science* 99:65-72.

Bolle, H-J. 1990. The effect of land use change on net radiation and its partitioning into heat fluxes. In: Bouwman A.F. (Editor), *Soils and the Greenhouse Effect*, John Wiley, Chichester.

Bouwman, A.F., (Ed.) 1990. *Soils and the Greenhouse Effect*. John Wiley, Chichester, England.

Brotherton, F.P. 1990. Concluding remarks. In: Bouwman, A.F. (Editor), *Soils and the Greenhouse Effect*, John Wiley, Chichester.

Bruchler, L., Ball, B.C. & Renault, P., 1989. Laboratory estimation of gas diffusion co-efficient and effective porosity in soils. *Soil Science* 147:1-10

Buol, S.W., Hole, F.D. & McCracken, R.J., 1973. *Soil Genesis and Classification*. Iowa State University Press, Ames, USA.

Camilo, P., 1989. Estimating soil surface temperatures from profile temperature and flux measurements. *Soil Science,* 148:233-249.

Colin, M. & Rasmuson, A., 1988. A comparison of gas diffusivity models for unsaturated porous media. *Soil Science Society of America Journal,* 52:1559-1565.

Currie, J.A., 1960. Gaseous diffusion in porous media. Part 1. A non-steady state method. *British Journal of Applied Physics,* 11:314-317.

Currie, J.A., 1965. Diffusion within microstructure: a structural parameter for soils. *Journal of Soil Science,* 16:279-289.

Currie, J.A., 1984. Gas diffusion through soil crumbs: the effects of wetting and swelling. *Journal of Soil Science,* 34:217-232.

Currie, J.A. & Rose, D.A., 1985. Gas diffusion in structured materials: the effect of tri-modal pore size distribution. *Journal of Soil Science,* 36:487-493.

Davies, D.B. & Payne, D., 1988. Management of soil physical properties. In: Wild, A. (Editor), *Russell's Soil Conditions and Plant Growth*, Longman Scientific & Technical, Harlow, England.

de Vries, D.A., 1950. Some remarks on gaseous diffusion in soils. *Transactions of the Fourth International Congress of Soil Science* Vol. II, pp. 41-43.

Driessen, P.M., 1986. Soil data. In: Van Keulen, A. & Wolf, J. (Editors), *Modelling of Agricultural Production: Weather, Soils and Crops*, Pudoc, Wageningen.

Greenwood, D.J., 1970. Distribution of carbon dioxide in the aqueous phase of aerobic soils. *Journal of Soil Science*, 21:314-329.

Gregory, P.J., 1988. Water and Crop Growth. In: Wild, A. (Editor) *Russell's Soil Conditions and Crop Growth*, Longman Scientific & Technical, Harlow, England.

Gregson, K., Hector, D.J. & McGowan, M., 1987. A one-parameter model for the soil-water characteristic. *Journal of Soil Science*, 38:483-486.

Grismer, M.E., 1988. Vapour transport during solution displacement in soils. *Soil Science* 146:215-220.

Henderson-Sellers, A., Dickinson, R.E. & Wilson, M.F., 1988. Tropical deforestation: important processes for climate models. *Climatic Change*, 13:43-67

Henning, D., 1989. *Atlas of the Surface Heat Balance of the Continents*. Gebruder Borntreager, Berlin.

Hillel, D., 1980. *Applications of Soil Physics*. Academic Press, New York.

Hodgson, A.S. & MacLeod, D.A., 1989. Use of oxygen flux density to estimate critical air-filled porosity of a vertisol. *Soil Science Society of America Journal*, 53:355-361

Hodgson, J.M., 1978. *Soil Sampling and Soil Description*. Clarendon Press, Oxford.

Horton, R., 1989. Canopy shading effects on soils heat and water flow. *Soil Science Society of America Journal* 53:699-679.

IPCC, 1990. *Climate Change* (Eds Houghton, J.T., Jenkins, G.J. & Ephraums, J.J.), Cambridge University Press, Cambridge.

IPCC, 1992. *Climate Change, 1992* (Eds Houghton, J.T., Callander, B.A. & Varney, S.K.) Supplementary Report, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge.

Jenny, H., 1941. *Factors of Soil Formation*. McGraw-Hill, New York.

Johnson, W.M., McClelland, J.E., McCaleb, S.B. Ulrich, R., Harper, W.G. & Hutchings, T.B., 1960. Classification and description of soil pores. *Soil Science*, 89:319-321.

Kohnke, H., 1982. *Soil Physics*. Tata McGraw-Hill, New Delhi.

Koorevaar, P., Menelik, G. & Dirksen, C., 1983. *Elements of Soil Physics*. Developments in Soil Science, 13. Elsevier, Amsterdam.

Marshall, T.J. & Holmes, J.W., 1988. *Soil Physics*. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge.

Moench, A.F. & Evans, D.D., 1970. Thermal conductivity and diffusivity of soil using a cylindrical heat source. *Soil Science Society of America Proceedings*, 34:377-381.

Payne, D., 1988. The behaviour of water in soil. In: Wild A. (Editor), *Russell's Soil Conditions and Plant Growth*, Longman Scientific and Technical, Harlow, England.

Payne, D. & Gregory, P.J., 1988. The soil atmosphere. In: Wild A. (Editor), *Russell's Soil Conditions and Plant Growth*, Longman Scientific and Technical, Harlow, England.

Penman, H.L., 1940. Gas and vapour movements in the soil. 1. The diffusion of vapours through porous solids. *Journal of Agricultural Science*, 30:437-62.

Penman, H.L., 1948. Natural evaporation from open water, bare soil and grass. *Proceedings of the Royal Society, London*, A 193:120-146.

Phillipson, J., 1966. *Ecological Energetics*. Arnold, London.

Ponnamperuma, F.N., 1981. Some aspects of the physical chemistry of paddy soils. In: *Proceedings of a Symposium on Paddy Soil*. Science Press, Beijing, Springer Verlag, Berlin.

Rasmuson, A. Gimmi, T. & Fluhler, H., 1990. Modelling reactive gas uptake transport and transformation in aggregated soils. *Soil Science Society of America Proceedings*, 54:1206-1213.

Sharma, P.P., Gupta, S.C. & Rawb, W.J., 1991. Soil detachment by single raindrops of varying kinetic energy. *Soil Science Society of America Proceedings*, 55:301-307.

Tanner, C.B., 1960. Energy balance approach to evapotranspiration from crops. *Soil Science Society of America Proceedings*, 24:1-9

Tiedje, J.M., Sexstone, A.J., Parkin, T.B., Revsbeck, N.P. & Shelton, D.R., 1984. Anaerobic processes in soil. *Plant and Soil*, 76:197-212.

Van Bavel, C.H.M., 1952, Gaseous diffusion and porosity in porous media. *Soil Science* 73:91-104.

Van Engelen, V.W.P. & Pulles, J.H.M., 1991. *The SOTER Manual: Procedures for small scale digital map and database compilation of soil and terrain conditions*. Working paper and Preprint 91/3, International Soil Reference and Information Centre, Wageningen.

Van Keulen, H. & Wolf, J., 1986. *Modelling of Agricultural Production: weather, soils and crops.* Pudoc, Wageningen.

Vereecken, H., Maes, J. & Feyen, J., 1989. Estimating unsaturated hydraulic conductivity from easily measured soil properties. *Soil Science,* 149:1-12.

Watts, D. 1971. *Principles of Biogeography.* McGraw-Hill, London.

Wolf, J.K. & Rogowski, 8.8., 1991. Spatial distribution of soil heat flux and growing degree days. *Soil Science Society of America Proceedings,* 55:747-657.

Youngs, E.G. & Leeds-Harrison, P.B. 1990. Aspects of transport processes in aggregated soils. *Journal of Soil Science,* 41:665-675.

Chapter 6 The WISE database: proposed structure and attribute data

N.H. Batjes

6.1 Introduction

6.1.1 Background

Since the early days of pedology numerous soil surveys have been carried out in the various countries of the world according to different field and laboratory methodologies, classification systems and mapping approaches (e.g., Brady 1984, Duchaufour 1982, FAO 1988, Fitzpatrick 1983, USDA 1975). Integration of this wealth of information on soil conditions into global soil maps is an intricate procedure, necessitating intensive correlation activities based on well described and uniform procedures (see Sombroek 1990 p. 230). Well known examples of "world soil maps" include those prepared by the Food and Agricultural Organization (FAO/Unesco 1971-1981; scale 1:5 M), the United States Department of Agriculture in collaboration with the Soil Conservation Service (USDA/SCS 1972; scale 1:50 M), and Glazovskaya & Friedland (1982; scale 1:15 M). Of these maps, the 1:5 M Soil Map of the World of FAO/Unesco (1971-1981) is most widely used internationally because it is the most "informative" for a wide range of "user-oriented" applications. The mapping units are associations of soil units consisting of a spatially dominant soil unit with associated and included soil units. The map units are further defined by the textural class(es) of the surface layer of the dominant soil and by its topography (slope class). Where relevant, phases are indicated on the map as overprints on the colour of the association (see Volume I, FAO/Unesco 1971-1981).

Quantified information on soil conditions is needed to study the role of terrestrial ecosystems in controlling the net emission (+ or -) of naturally occurring trace gases, such as carbon dioxide, methane and nitrous oxide, to the atmosphere, as well as their effects on the Earth's hydrological cycle and surface energy balance (e.g., Bouwman 1990, IGBP 1990). Many modelling studies of global greenhouse gas emissions from soils are based on the 1 x 1 degree resolution, "multi-parameter" soil data base of Zobler (1986); this map was digitized after the original Soil Map of the World of FAO/Unesco (1971-1981), and only retained information for the spatially dominant soil unit of a particular grid.

Since the time of production of the FAO/Unesco (1971-1981) maps much new information on soil conditions has been obtained for many areas of the world such as the Amazon basin of South America, large sections of Africa, China and the "Commonwealth of Independent Nations", as well as Europe (The map for the European Communities was updated by Tavernier, 1985). Incorporation of this new information in global soil data bases is required urgently. There is also a need for an update of the Soil Map of the World because the original topographical basis - a Millers bipolar oblique conformal projection produced in the early 1940s - is known to include substantial errors (see Velthuizen 1992). In realisation of especially the first aspect, Sombroek (1985) prepared a discussion paper on the possible establishment of an "International Soil and Land Resources Information Base". This led to a proposal for developing an attribute-oriented 1:1 M World Soil and Terrain Digital Database (SOTER) which was officially endorsed during the 1986 International Soil Congress at Hamburg (see ISSS 1986a & b). World coverage at a scale of 1:1 M in SOTER is scheduled to take from 10 to 20 years in view of the large scientific and logistic magnitude of the task. Meanwhile, updated information on soil conditions is needed immediately for a wide range of studies of global change (see Bliss 1990, Matthews 1990, Moore *et al.* 1989, Oldeman & Sombroek 1990). In this context there is much demand for an "updated" 1/2 x 1/2 degree grid database on soil conditions. Such a database would form an essential "data layer" of an environmental Geographical Information System (GIS) developed to study possible repercussions of processes of global change (e.g., Moore *et al.* 1989). Other critical data layers in this respect are climate, geology, hydrology and land use/cover.

The above considerations prompted the International Soil Reference and Information Centre (ISRIC) to implement a project on World Inventory of Soil Emissions (WISE), of which an important objective is to develop a 1/2 x 1/2 grid, attribute-oriented, global soil database to model global emissions of methane emanating from natural wetlands and rice paddies.

6.1.2 Structure of chapter

In this report, a possible structure for a soil-attribute oriented WISE database is proposed. Selection of the set of key-attribute data is based on the findings of the "preceding chapters" of the background document for the WISE workshop. These "chapters" are reviews of the soil factors and chemical, physical and biological processes that control the emission of methane, nitrous oxide and carbon dioxide in terrestrial ecosystems, as well as the surface energy balance and hydrological cycle. Considerations on the scale of mapping *versus* the set of attribute data that can be presented at a given scale are made in Section 6.2. The proposed structure and attribute data for the WISE database are presented in Section 6.3 for discussion. Possible "intricacies" associated with the linkage of soil attribute data with spatial information in a 1:5 M scale, 1/2 x 1/2 grid-based mapping approach are discussed in Section 6.4, the penultimate Section.

6.2 Scale of mapping versus attribute data

In any survey the scale of mapping determines the level of detail of the spatial information that can be depicted on a map. Van Diepen (1985), for instance, illustrated how the scale of mapping influences the estimated acreage of hydromorphic soils. For the 1:5 M (FAO/Unesco 1971-1981), 1:2 M, 1:0.5 M, 1:200,000 and 1:50,000 maps from a section of the Ivory Coast the proportion of hydromorphic soils obtained were 0, 3, 9, 11 and 17-29%, respectively. Inherently, this means that areas of spatially "minor" soils - minor from geographical point of view, yet not necessarily from a socio-economic or ecological perspective - cannot meaningfully be accommodated in a 1/2 x 1/2 degree grid at a scale of 1:5 M scale. Small scale mapping inherently necessitates a marked degree of data integration with respect to both the spatial and attribute data.

FAO has recently completed the vector-based digitization of a "cleaned up" version of the 1971-1981 Soil Map of the World (SMW; Brinkman *pers. comm.* to ISRIC). This "cleaned up" version does not include any regional updates of the original maps, but proposals in this direction have been formulated by FAO (see Velthuizen 1992). The "cleaned up" version of SMW presently forms the most suitable possible cartographic basis for developing the WISE data base. Like SMW, the spatial data for WISE will have a scale of 1:5 M but, unlike the SMW, they relate to 1/2 x 1/2 degree grid cells whereas the SMW is vector-based.

It is proposed that each 1/2 by 1/2 degree grid will be characterized by its first five (when relevant), so-called "spatially dominant" soil units (*sensu* soil units occupying ≥ 20% of the area of a particular grid). Of necessity, it is assumed that the summed acreages of these spatially dominant soil units is 100 % of a grid. Minor areas of "associated soils" and "included soils" are to be included, by default, in the areas of the spatially dominant soil units. Where relevant, large surfaces of open water, glaciers etc. will be treated conceptually as being equivalent to a spatially dominant soil unit; such areas are given unique labels yet have no attribute data. Like the spatially dominant soil units, the latter "miscellaneous" units cannot be georeferenced within a grid at the considered scale of 1:5 M. It should be noted that the area of the grid cells decreases according to a cosine function of latitude from the equator towards the poles, with an average size of about 55 by 55 km^2 at the equator.

The following attributes probably can be presented on a 1/2 x 1/2 grid version of the "cleaned" version of the Soil Map of the World: spatially dominant soil unit, percentage of occurrence in relevant grid, second spatially dominant soil unit, etc. up to the fifth soil unit where relevant. The orignal information on the texture of the topsoil, slope and phase(s) of the major soil units of the respective SMW map units becomes less-meaningful in the proposed "recombination" procedure. Although not ideal, this approach already forms a clear improvement on the previously existing 1/2 x 1/2 degree digitized versions of SMW. However, a global database for modelling processes of global change should be soil attribute oriented in so far this is feasible at the considered scale of mapping and associated necessary level of data integration. A promising approach in this respect is the methodology developed for the 1:1 M SOTER database by the International Soil Reference and Information Centre (Van Engelen & Pulles 1991). This procedure for small scale soil database compilation recently has been endorsed by the Food and Agricultural Organization (FAO), United Nations Environment Programme (UNEP), and the International Society of Soil Science (ISSS). In view of the smaller scale and grid-based approach for WISE, the 1:1 M vector-based approach of SOTER will require some modifications (simplifications). By implication, use of grid cells, for instance, means that physiography cannot be used for identifying map units at the highest level of differentiation, unlike the SOTER approach.

In the approach portrayed above, it is implicitly assumed that the attribute data of the major soil units within any particular grid cell will differ markedly in their attributes, while the respective constituents of "individual" major soil units of a grid of necessity are considered to be homogeneous. General information on the possible range of characteristics of these major soils can be derived from the diagnostic horizons and diagnostic properties that are "included" in the FAO (1988) nomenclature (e.g., Sombroek 1990; Van Breemen & Feijtel 1990). This type of information, however, is considered too "coarse" for modelling trace gas emissions at a global level. Modelling studies of global nitrous oxide emissions from soils (Bouwman *et al.* 1992) or revised calculations of global soil carbon pools, for instance, can be refined once an attribute-oriented small scale soil database, such as is proposed for WISE, becomes available.

Conceptually, each major soil unit can be linked logically with a so-called "representative pit" (see e.g., FAO/Unesco 1971-1981, Volume V p. 91). Though soils of major FAO soil units by definition have common diagnostic properties - which reflect the result of similar pedogenesis - they will, by nature, differ somewhat in their spatial and temporal properties at the regional level. A dark, cracking and swelling clay soil (Pellic Vertisol) from Spain, for instance, will be similar yet not identical to a Pellic Vertisol from Belize. Consequently, it is necessary that soil pits considered representative for the respective major soil units are presented on a regional basis. The WISE database therefore ideally should include a data file in which selected attributes, considered essential for a wide range of modelling exercises at a scale of 1:5 M, are characterized for the respective, spatially dominant soils units of a particular grid. The relevant "key attributes" must be of a "relatively permanent" nature; for instance, soil depth, stoniness, texture, structure and organic carbon content (see Section 6.3). Each representative profile will be selected from a range of similar "typical profiles" by regional soil correlators.

Several technical issues related to the development of global environmental databases, which as of yet have not been resolved by the scientific community, are discussed in Section 6.4. Besides the scientific requirements concerning data validity and accuracy, close attention must be paid also to the management problems of large databases.

6.3 The WISE database

6.3.1 Proposed format

The proposed database for WISE would include three data layers or files (Figure 6.1):

- File 1: Information on 1/2 x 1/2 degree grid cells and their spatially dominant FAO soil units (plus attached, a list of the included soil units (<20% of grid each).
- File 2: "Typical" soil profiles for the major soil units; regionally representative.
- File 3: A file presenting the main characteristics of the respective major soil units, with special reference to their "diagnostic horizons" and "diagnostic properties". A wealth of information for interpretative purposes already can be derived from these descriptive terms.

```
   File 1: Area data                    File 2: Point data
   ----------------------             -----------------------------

          -->   Major soil 1 ...                  --> First layer
   Grid # -->   Major soil 2 ----> Site chars --> Second layer
          -->   Major soil 3 ...                  --> etc. (up to max. 1 m?)
          -->   Major soil 4 ...
          -->   Major soil 5 ...
                |
                |
                |
                |     File 3: Common diagnostic features
                -->   ---------------------------------------------
                      To be specified for respective FAO soil units
```

Figure 6.1 Schematic representation of the proposed WISE database.

6.3.2 Attribute data

Very few soil survey reports present data on physical soil characteristics such as bulk density, water holding characteristics, and saturated conductivity according to a recent survey of soil resources inventories from a wide range of countries (Msanya 1987). Similarly, none of the 40 representative pits listed in the explanatory booklet to the 1:1 M soil map of the European Communities (EC) includes data on water holding capacity and bulk density. It may also prove difficult to obtain/derive data on the albedo and surface roughness, variables which play an important role in the surface heat balance, from routinely collected soil data. Albedo, for instance, is strongly influenced by slope direction, and altitude and land use practices/vegetation cover. An additional problem in estimating albedo is relating measurements made in limited segments of the spectrum to the complete band width that has to be considered (e.g., Townshend 1992 p. 18).

The soil attributes listed in this section can probably be specified in the 1:5 M WISE data base. This list was drafted with reference to Chapters 2 to 5, as well as the soil attribute data presented for "representative" pits in the 1:1 M Soil Map of the European Communities (Tavernier 1985). In compiling the list, reference was also made to the soil attributes proposed for inclusion in the 1:1 M SOTER-Shells, as derived from the "full-list" of attributes originally proposed by Van Engelen & Pulles (1991 p. 12). As such the proposed list should be seen as the "best" possible (most extensive) set of soil attribute data that probably could be presented in WISE.

Proposed list:

a) File 1:

Description: Georeferenced, individual 1/2 x 1/2 degree grids, characterized in terms of their spatially dominant FAO soil units (each of these accounting for ≥ 20% of the area of grid cell under consideration).

Attribute data: GRID-ID (Eastings and Northings of upper left hand corner of grid cell)
Probable reliability of data in grid (H, M, L)
Regional update in WISE (Y, N)
Date of update (month/year)
- First spatially dominant major soil unit or sea, glacier etc. where appropriate [SOIL-code]; identifier of representative profile (PROF-ID);
- Second spatially dominant major soil unit [SOIL-code]; percentage of grid area; No. of representative pit (PROF-ID);
- as above, up to
- Fifth spatially dominant major soil unit [SOIL-code]; percentage of grid area; No. of representative pit (PROF-ID);

b) File 2:

Description: Selected, readily available attribute data for a "regionally" representative profile (PROF-ID) of a particular soil unit (SOIL-code).

Attribute data: GRID-ID
SOIL-code
PROF-ID

a) "Site characteristics" file; ideally the data specified should be representative for the whole soil unit in so far this is possible at the considered scale of mapping with the available data sources; specified using SOTER coding conventions (see Van Engelen & Pulles 1991):

- Latitude (° ' ")
- Longitude (° ' ")
- Laboratory ID
- Date of sampling date (D/M/Y)
- Code for national database/source of data (references in extra data file).
- Code for FAO Agro-ecological zone (or indication for water regime?)
- Regional landform
- Slope class (e.g., flat, undulating, etc.)
- Parent material
- Drainage class
- Permeability class
- Surface stoniness class
- Surface rockiness class
- General depth class

b) "Soil layer" data file; listings of selected key soil characteristics per major horizon (ideally specified as numerical values):
- PROF-ID
- HORIZON-number
- Top of master horizon i, average depth (below surface)
- Bottom of master horizon i, average depth
- pH-water
- Cation exchange capacity (measured at pH 7 in NH_4OAc?)
- Exchangeable bases (measured at pH 7 in NH_4OAc?)
- Exchangeable acidity (measured at field pH; <u>O</u>ptional, i.e. to be stored only when actually measured data are available)
- Calcium carbonate content
- Total C content
- Total N content
- Coarse fragments (volume %)
- clay%
- sand%
- silt%
- FAO texture
- Stucture form
- Structure size
- Soil moisture content at field capacity (<u>O</u>)
- Soil moisture content at permanent wilting point (<u>O</u>)
- Bulk density (<u>O</u>)
- Diagnostic horizon, if relevant (e.g., mollic, umbric, natric)
- Diagnostic properties (e.g., gypsiferous, ferric properties).

c) File 3:

Description:	Common characteristics of major FAO (1988) soil units (e.g., for FLc, calcaric Fluvisols); gives an overall indication of range of characteristics.
Attributes:	SOIL-code Diagnostic horizons Diagnostic properties Other common attributes (?)

6.4 Discussion

In the conceptually ideal situation, all representative pits to be considered in WISE should have been collected at similar "moments in time" and correspond with pristine conditions so as to form a uniform basis for modelling possible changes, for instance in soil carbon pools. This objective may be termed "ambitious" in the context of a global soil data compilation exercise in that, of necessity, the available soil data must be used.

Each country has its own methods of soil analyses. The results of these analyses are not necessarily comparable without adequate correlation (e.g., FAO/Unesco 1971-1981, Volume V p. 91). To a large extent this "correlation" problem can be circumvented when the representative profiles are derived from ISIS, ISRIC's Soil Information System (Van Waveren & Bos 1988 a & b). This reference database on the major FAO soil units only contains soil profiles whose characteristics have been determined according to uniform and standardized analytical procedures in one laboratory (Van Reeuwijk 1992), with subsequent "quality control" based on a judicious scheme of cross-checks. As the ISIS database mainly focuses on soils from tropical regions, it may prove necessary to obtain additional representative profiles for other regions from national soil survey organizations (e.g., Soil Conservation Service at Lincoln, Nebraska; ORSTOM, France).

It is recognized that the use of "representative profiles" in a 1:5 M mapping exercise encompasses a simplification of real-life spatial and temporal variability in soil characteristics. However, there are no valid alternatives for developing an attribute-oriented small scale soil database (*cf* Van Engelen & Pulles 1991). The intricacies associated with spatial and temporal variability of soils at different scales (e.g., Bouma & Bregt 1989, Mausbach & Wilding 1991, Bregt 1992), and the development and parametrization of procedures for "scaling up" site gas flux data to the macro-level in a Geographical Information System are still inadequately understood (e.g., Burrough 1989, Roswall *et al.* 1988, Walker & Graetz 1988). Hence, the clear need for coordinated efforts to attain global estimates of trace gas fluxes into the atmosphere and of global atmospheric chemistry (Figure 6.2). To enhance the usefulness of site and trace gas flux measurement data, these should be measured according to standardized methods (e.g., Mosier 1990), and be supplemented with detailed information on so-called key site-attribute data (e.g., climate, land use, soils, land management practices).

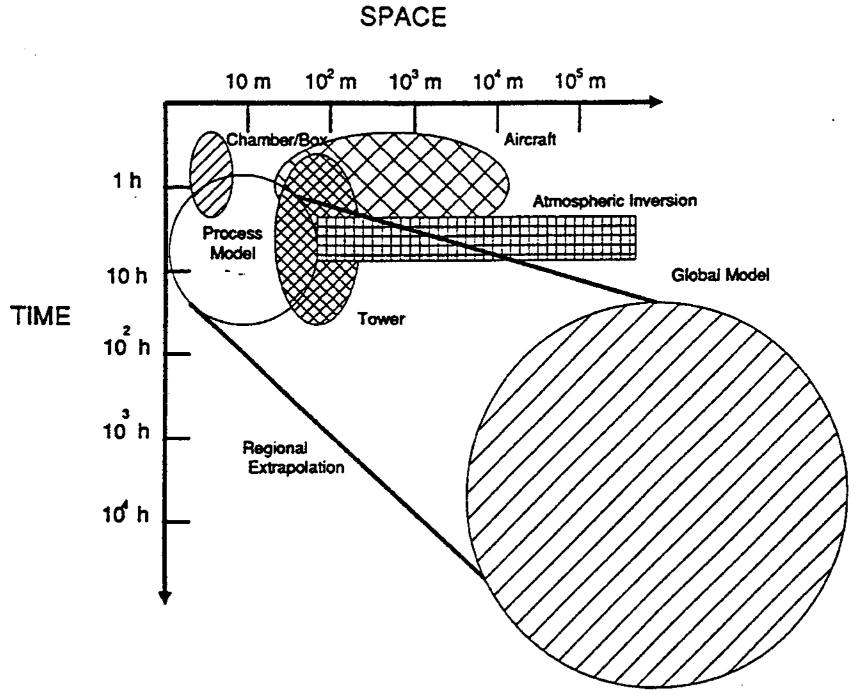


Figure 6.2 Visualization of the importance of time and space in the "scaling up" of biogenic gas fluxes from the site-level to the macro-level (Source: IGBP 1990 p. 60).

Descriptive terms such as "acid clay" or "forest soil" are commonly used in studies of trace gas emmissions from terrestrial ecosystems. These terms, however, form a very meagre basis for trying to decipher the role of the respective soil factors on the production (or consumption), transfer and eventual emission of particular trace gases from a well described terrestrial ecosystem. Soil profiles at the measurement sites therefore should be described according to uniform and internationally accepted standards, such as the guidelines for "Soil Profile Description" (FAO 1977), and classified according to the FAO legend (1988) as well as the national system of soil classification.

The WISE database should only include actually measured soil data. Where necessary, pedotransfer functions may later be constructed using the relevant data sets to fill in possible gaps in the actual data sets; these "derived" values must be stored in auxiliary files, i.e. not in WISE proper, so as to maintain the integrity of the database.

Given WISE's dependence upon existing soil data sources the accuracy of the spatial and attribute data will be largely predetermined and vary within and between the "source materials". The general lack of accuracy information in "traditional" as well as digital versions of cartographic products and their associated attribute data can lead to difficulties in spatial analyses, as the data will have to be taken at "face value" despite obvious errors inherent in assuming homogeneity (Goodchild 1988). This problem will be compounded in GIS-applications where thematic maps with different accuracy attributes are combined to produce new output (Smith et al. 1987). Logistic and computer-technical aspects of importance when building and managing large databases for global science have been discussed, amongst others, by Mounsey (1988) and Buchman *et al.* (1990).

6.5 Conclusion

The Soil Map of the World is a major global land resources data base created by FAO. Any regional updates to this map, as proposed in the context of WISE, should be carried out in close consultation/cooperation with FAO. This cooperation is also needed to avoid unnecessary duplication of efforts and to ensure standardization.

FAO in early 1992 "cleaned" and digitized its original version of Soil Map of the World. This exercise did not yet include any regional updates of soil information known to be inaccurate, nor comprise a revision of the classification according to the Revised Legend (FAO 1988). This means a substantial part of the data shown on the "cleaned" SMW by implication remains inaccurate. However, as there are no valid altenatives at the global level, it has been proposed to use the "cleaned", 1992 digital version of SMW as the basis for developing the WISE database.

Discussions between ISRIC and FAO relating to the gridding of the "cleaned" 1992 version of SMW have been initiated. FAO has proposed a computer based procedure for the inital 1/2 by 1/2 degree gridding of the map. Subsequently, ISRIC would recombine the relevant information according to the general procedure outlined in this Chapter. Subsequently, the spatially dominant soil units of each grid cell will be linked to a "regionally" representative profile in so far this is feasible with the available (and accessible) data. Regional updates of the 1992 SMW should first be carried out upon close consultation with FAO, keeping in mind the general time frame and funding allocated to the WISE project.

The final structure and list of soil attributes for the WISE database will be established upon consultation with a small forum of "global change" experts during the "August 1992" WISE workshop. During this meeting, the participants should also assess for which areas ISRIC can contribute to the necessary update of the Soil Map of the World. These discussions are especially important in view of the recent proposal of FAO to update the SMW. Depending on their financial resources, FAO proposes to upgrade the SMW for the whole globe, using a new standard topographic base (ONC series), geomorphological entries at the first level for differentiating mapping units, and the Revised Legend (see Velthuizen 1992). Cooperation with the 1:1 M SOTER programme would be very beneficial in this respect.

In order to create a flexible system in terms of data access, handling and processing, it is recommended to use a relational database management system (RDBMS) for WISE. SOTER has already demonstrated the merits of a RDBMS in designing large soil databases (Van Engelen & Pulles 1991).

Another crucial discussion point will be the "matching" of the data sets modellers would require for their respective studies of global change in relation to the soil data sets that can be readily obtained and meaningfully presented in a soil database which is linked with a 1:5 M scale, 1/2 x 1/2 degree grid map.

6.6 References

Bliss, N.B. 1990. A hierarchy of soil databases for calibrating models of global climate change. In: *Soils and the greenhouse effect* (ed. A.F. Bouwman). John Wiley and Sons, Chichester. p. 523-529.

Bouma, J. & A.K. Bregt (eds) 1989. *Land qualities in space and time*. Pudoc, Wageningen.

Bouwman, A.F. (ed.) 1990. *Soils and the greenhouse effect*. John Wiley & Sons, Chichester.

Bouwman, A.F., I. Fung & E. Matthews 1992. Global analysis of the potential for N_2O production in natural soils. *Global Biogeochemical Cycles (submitted).*

Brady, N.C. 1984. *The nature and properties of soils (Ninth edition)*. MacMillan Publishing Company, New York.

Bregt, A.K. 1992. *Processing of soil survey data.* Doctoral thesis, Agricultural University, Wageningen.

Buchman, A., O. Günther, T.R. Smith & Y.F. Wang (eds) 1990. *Design and implementation of large spatial databases*. Lecture notes in Computer Science No. 409, Springer Verlag, Berlin.

Burrough, P.A. 1989. Modelling land qualities in space and time: The role of geographical information systems. In: *Land qualities in space and time* (eds J. Bouma & A.K. Bregt). Pudoc, Wageningen. p. 45-59.

Duchaufour, P. 1982. *Pedology: Pedogenesis and classification* (translated by T.R. Parton). George Allen & Unwin, Boston.

FAO 1977. *Guidelines for soil profile description*. FAO, Rome.

FAO 1988. *Soil map of the world* (Revised legend). World Soil Resources Report No. 60, FAO, Rome.

FAO/Unesco 1971-1981. *Soil Map of the World (1:5 M)*. Vol. 1-10, FAO, Rome.

Fitzpatrick, E.A. 1983. *Soils: Their formation, classification and distribution*. Longman, London.

Glazovskaya, M.A. & V.M. Friedland 1982. *Soil Map of the World* (1:15 M). GUGK, Moscow.

Goodchild, M.F. 1988. The use and accuracy of global databases. In: *Building databases for global science* (ed. H. Mounsey). Proceedings of the First Meeting of the International Geographical Union Global Database Planning project. Taylor & Francis, London. p. 41-48.

IGBP 1990. *Terrestrial biosphere exchange with global atmospheric chemistry* (eds P.A. Matson & D.S. Ojima). Global Change Report No. 13, International Geosphere-Biosphere Programme, Stockholm.

ISSS 1986a. *Proceedings of an international workshop on the structure of a digital Soil Resource Map annex Data Base* (20-24 January 1986, ISRIC, Wageningen). M.F. Baumgardner & L.R.Oldeman (eds), SOTER Report No. 1. International Society of Soil Science, Wageningen.

ISSS 1986b. *Project proposal "World Soils and Terrain Digital Database at a scale of 1:1 M (SOTER)"*. Ed. by M.F. Baumgardner, International Society of Soil Science, Wageningen.

Matthews, E. 1990. Global databases for evaluating trace gas sources and sinks. In: *Soils and the greenhouse effect* (ed. A.F. Bouwman). John Wiley and Sons, Chichester. p. 311-325.

Mausbach, M.J. & L.P. Wilding (eds) 1991. *Spatial variabilities of soils and landforms*. SSSA Special Publication No. 28. Soil Science Society of America, Inc., Madison, Wisconsin.

Moore III, B., M.P. Gildea, C.J. Vorosmarty, D.L. Skolle, J.M. Mellilo, B.J. Peterson, E.B. Rastetter & P.A. Steudler 1989. Biogeochemical cycles. In: *Global ecology: Towards a science of the biosphere* (eds M.B. Ramble, L. Margulis & R. Festerer). Academic Press Inc., Boston. p. 113-141.

Mosier, A.R. 1990. Gas flux measurement techniques with special reference to techniques suitable for measurements over large ecologically uniform areas. In: *Soils and the Greenhouse Effect* (ed. A.F. Bouwman). John Wiley & Sons, Chichester, pp. 289-301.

Mounsey, H. (ed.) 1988. *Building databases for global science*. Taylor & Francis, London.

Msanya, B.M. 1987. *Soil resources inventories: Characterization, quality and evaluation of their adequacy for specific land use*. PhD. thesis, Faculty of Sciences, State University of Ghent.

Oldeman, L.R. & W.G. Sombroek 1990. Use of the SOTER database to model global change. *Transactions 14th International Congress of Soil Science, Kyoto. Volume V, 136-141.*

Rosswall, T., R.G. Woodmansee & P.G. Risser 1988. *Scales and global change: Spatial and temporal variability in biospheric and geospheric processes*. SCOPE 35, John Wiley & Sons, Chichester.

Smith, T.R., S. Menna, J.L. Star & J.E. Ester 1987. Requirements and principles for the implementation and construction of large scale geographic information systems. *Int. J. of Geographical Information Systems 1, 13-31.*

Sombroek, W.G. 1985. *Establishment of an International; Soil and Land Resources Information Base*. Discussion paper for the ISSS Working Group on Digital Mapping of Global Soil Resources. ISRIC, Wageningen.

Sombroek, W.G. 1990. Geographical quantification of soils and changes in their properties. In: *Soils and the greenhouse effect* (ed. A.F. Bouwman). John Wiley & Sons, Chichester. p. 225-244.

Tavernier, R. (ed.). *Soil map of the European Communities 1:1 M.* Directorate General for Agriculture, Coordination of Agricultural Research. Office for Official Publications of the EC, Luxembourg.

Townshend, J.R.G. (ed.) 1992. *Improved global data for land applications: a proposal for a high resolution data set.* Global Change Report No. 20, International Geosphere-Biosphere Programme, Stockholm.

USDA 1975. *Soil Taxonomy: A basic system of soil classification for making and interpreting soil surveys.* Agric. handbook 436, Soil Conservation Service, US. Dept. of Agriculture, Washington D.C.

USDA/SCS 1972. *Soils of the world: Distribution of orders and principal suborders (1:50 M).* Soil Geography Unit, Soil Conservation Service, Hyattsville.

Van Breemen, N. & T.C.J. Feijtel 1990. Soil processes and properties involved in the production of greenhouse gases, with special reference to soil taxonomic units. In: *Soils and the greenhouse effect* (ed. A.F. Bouwman). John Wiley & Sons, Chichester. p. 195-223.

Van Diepen, C.A. 1985. Wetland soils of the world, their characterization and distribution in the FAO/Unesco approach. In: *Wetland soils: Characterization, classification and utilization.* Proceedings of an IRRI workshop. International Rice Research Institute, Los Banos. p. 361-374.

Van Engelen, V.W.P. & J.H.M. Pulles 1992. *The SOTER Manual: Procedures for small scale digital map and database compilation of soil and terrain conditions.* Working Paper and Preprint 91/3, International Soil Reference and Information Centre, Wageningen.

Van Reeuwijk, L.P. (eds) 1992. *Procedures for soil analysis (3rd edition).* Technical Paper No. 19, International Soil Reference and Information Centre, Wageningen.

Van Waveren, E. & A.B. Bos 1988a. *Guidelines for the description and coding of soil data.* Technical Paper No. 14, International Soil Reference and Information Centre, Wageningen.

Van Waveren, E. & A.B. Bos 1988b. *ISRIC Soil Information System; User manual, Technical manual.* Technical Paper No. 15, International Soil Reference and Information Centre, Wageningen.

Van Veldhuizen, H.T. 1992. *Updating the World Soil Resources Database.* Project proposal prepared for FAO *(unpublished).*

Walker, B.H. & R.D. Graetz (eds) 1988. *Effects of atmosphere and climate change on terrestrial ecosystems.* Global Change Report No. 5, IGBP, Stockholm.

Zobler, L. 1986. *A world soil file for global climate.* NASA Technical Memorandum 87-802.

Glossary

Albedo: The fraction of the total solar radiation incident on a body that is reflected by it [1].

Assimilation: The incorporation of inorganic or organic substances into cell constituents [1].

Atmosphere: The mixture of gases that surrounds a planet (e.g., on the Earth the atmosphere is composed of approximately 79 percent nitrogen (N2) and 21 percent oxygen, with smaller quantities of argon, carbon dioxide, water vapour, hydrogen, methane, sulphur oxides, and other gases) [3].

Attribute: Non-graphic information associated with a point, line, or area element in a GIS [4].

Autocorrelation, autocovariance: Statistical concepts expressing the degree to which the value of an attribute at spatially adjacent points covaries with the distance separating the points [4].

Autotroph: Nutritional mode of organisms that can form their own macromolecules from inorganic compounds (such as carbon dioxide) and obtain energy from other inorganic compounds or light; an organism requiring no preformed organic compounds in the diet as sources of energy or carbon [3].

Autotrophic nitrification: Oxidation of ammonium to nitrate through the combined action of two chemoautotrophic organisms, one forming nitrite from ammonium and the other oxidizing nitrite to nitrate [2].

Auxiliary storage: Addressable memory devices outside the main memory of the computer such as disks and tape units [4].

Biogeochemical cycle: The chemical interactions among the atmosphere, biosphere, hydrosphere, and lithosphere [1].

Biomass: The total dry organic matter or stored energy content of living organisms that is present at a specific time in a defined unit (community, ecosystem, crop, etc.) of the Earth's surface [1].

Biome: A large, easily recognized community unit (ecological region) formed by the interaction of regional climates with regional biota and substrates. In a given the life form of the climax vegetation is uniform. Thus, the climax vegetation of the grassland biome is grass, although the dominant species of grass may vary in different parts of the biome [2].

Biosphere: The portion of the Earth and its atmosphere that can support life. The part (reservoir) of the global carbon cycle that includes living organisms (plants and animals) and life-derived organic matter (litter, detritus). The terrestrial biosphere includes the living biota (plants and animals) and the litter and soil organic matter on land, and the marine biosphere includes the biota and detritus in the oceans [1].

Biota: All living organisms of an area; the sum of all living things on Earth [3].

C3 plants: Plants (e.g. soybean, wheat and cotton) whose carbon-fixation products have three carbon atoms per molecule. Compared with C4 plants, C3 plants show a greater increase in photosynthesis with a doubling of CO2 concentration and less decrease in stomatal conductance, which results in an increase in leaf-level water-use efficiency [1].

C4 plants: Plants (e.g. maize and sorghum) whose carbon fixation products have four carbon atoms per molecule. Compared with C3 plants, C4 plants show little photosynthetic response to increased CO2 concentrations above 340 ppm but show a decrease in stomatal conductance, which results in an increase in photosynthetic water-use efficiency [1].

Caliche: An opaque, reddish brown to white calcareous material, which occurs in layers near the surface of (stony) soils in arid and semi-arid areas [1].

Carbon budget: The balance of the exchanges (inputs and losses) of carbon between the carbon reservoirs or between one specific loop (e.g., atmosphere - biosphere) of the carbon cycle. An examination of the carbon budget of a pool or reservoir can provide information about whether the pool or reservoir is functioning as a sink or source for CO2 [1].

Carbon cycle: All reservoirs and fluxes of carbon; usually thought of as a series of the four main reservoirs of carbon interconnected by pathways of exchange. The four reservoirs, regions of the Earth, in which carbon behaves in a systematic manner, are the atmosphere, terrestrial biosphere (usually includes fresh water systems), oceans, and sediments (includes fossil fuels). Each of these pools may be subdivided into smaller pools ranging in size from individual communities or ecosystems to the total of all living organisms (biota). Carbon exchange from reservoir to reservoir by various chemical, physical, geological, and biological processes [1].

Carbon density: The amount of carbon per unit area for a given ecosystem or vegetation type, based on climatic conditions, topography, vegetative cover type and amount, soils, and maturity of the vegetative stands [1].

Carbon dioxide fertilization: Enhancement of plant growth or of the net primary production by CO2 enrichment that could occur in natural or agricultural systems as a result of an increase in the atmospheric concentration of CO2 [1].

Carbon flux: The rate of exchange of carbon between pools [1].

Carbon isotope ration: Ratio of carbon-12 to either of the other, less common, carbon isotopes, carbon-13 or carbon-14 [1].

Carbon pool: The reservoir containing carbon as a principal element in the geochemical cycle [1].

Carbon sink: A pool (reservoir) that absorbs or takes up released carbon from another part of the carbon cycle. For example, if the net exchange between the biosphere and the atmosphere is towards the atmosphere, the biosphere is the source, and the atmosphere is the sink [1].

Chemodenitrification: Non-biological processes leading to the production of gaseous forms of nitrogen (molecular nitrogen or an oxide of nitrogen [2].

Chemotropy: Nutritional mode of organisms that obtain their energy from inorganic compounds [3].

Chlorofluorocarbons (CFCs): A family of inert nontoxic and easily liquified chemicals used in refrigerators, air conditioners, packaging, and insulation and as solvents or aerosol propellants. Because they are not destroyed in the lower atmosphere, they drift into the upper atmosphere where their chlorine components destroy ozone [1].

Clear cutting: A forest-management technique that involves harvesting all the trees in one area at one time [1].

Climate change: The long term fluctuations in temperature, precipitation, wind, and all other aspects of the Earth's climate. External processes, such as the Earth's orbital parameters (eccentricity, precession, and inclination), lithosphere motions, and volcanic activity, are factors of climate. Internal variations of the climate system also produce fluctuations of sufficient magnitude and variability through the feedback processes interrelating the components of the climate system [1].

Community: A unit in nature comprised of populations of organisms of different species in the same place at the same time; microbial communities are those lacking significant populations of animals and plants [3].

Database: A collection of interrelated information, usually stored on some form of mass-storage system such as magnetic tape or disk. A GIS database includes data about the position and the attributes of geographical features that have been coded as points, lines, areas, pixels or grid cells [4].

Database management system (DBMS): A set of computer programs for organizing the information in a database. Typically, a DBMS contains routines for data input, verification, storage, retrieval, and combination [4].

Decomposer: Small detritivores, usually bacteria and fungi, that consume such substances as cellulose and nitrogenous waste products. Their metabolic processes release inorganic nutrients, which are then available for reuse by plants and other organisms [3].

Denitrification: An anaerobic respiratory process characteristic of facultative aerobic bacteria growing under oxygen-depleted conditions (denitrifying bacteria). The reduction of nitrate to nitrite or to gaseous products such as nitrogen, nitrous oxide, and nitric oxygen [3].

Dissimilation: The release from cells of inorganic or organic substances formed by metabolism [2].

Ecosystem: The interacting system of a biological community and its non living environmental surroundings [1]. A community of organisms and the surroundings in which they live [2].
A visibly recognizable unit in nature, bounded by an ecotone and comprised of communities in which the biologically important chemical elements (C, N, S, P, and so on) are cycled; these elements cycle more rapidly within an ecosystem than between ecosystems [3].

Ecotone: Ecosystem boundary, transition zone between one ecosystem and another (e.g., field or forest edge, shoreline) [3].

Extrapolation: The act of extending the results of spatial sampling to points outside the area surveyed - not recommended [4].

General circulation models: Hydrodynamic models of the atmosphere on a grid or spectral resolution that determine the surface pressure and the vertical distributions of velocity, temperature, density, and water vapour as functions of time from the mass conservation and hydrostatic laws, the first law of thermodynamics, Newton's second law of motion, the equation of state, and the conservation law for water vapour. Abbreviated as GCM [1].

Global Warming Potential (GWP): Index which allows a comparison of the climate effects of the emissions of greenhouse gases. The GWP depends on the position and strength of the absorption bands of the gas, its lifetime in the atmosphere, its molecular weight and the time period over which the climate effects are of concern [5].

Greenhouse effect: A popular term used to describe the roles of water vapour, carbon dioxide, and other trace gases in keeping the Earth's surface warmer than it would be otherwise. The "radiatively active" gases are relatively transparent to incoming shortwave radiation, but are relatively opaque to outgoing longwave radiation. The latter radiation, which would otherwise escape to space, is trapped by these gases within the lower levels of the atmosphere. The subsequent reradiation of some of the energy back to the surface maintains surface temperatures higher that they would be if the gases were absent. There is concern that increasing concentrations of greenhouse gases, including carbon dioxide, methane and manmade chlorofluorocarbons, may enhance the greenhouse effect and cause global warming [1].

Grid map: A map in which the information is carried in the form of grid cells. See Raster [4].

Heterotrophy: Nutritional mode of organisms that gain both carbon and energy from organic compounds (ultimately produced by autotrophs) [3].

Heterotrophic nitrification: Biochemical oxidation of reduced forms of nitrogen (e.g., ammonium) to nitrate by heterotrophic microorganisms [2].

Hierarchical database structure: A method of arranging computer files or other information so that the units of data storage are connected in a hierarchically defined pathway. From above to below, relations are one-to-many [4].

Holdridge life zones: A climate classification system that can be derived from basic monthly temperature and precipitation. The 3 indicators upon which the system is based are: biotemperature (based on length of growing season and temperature during the growing season), mean annual precipitation, and a potential evapotranspiration ratio that links biotemperature with annual precipitation and defines different humidity provinces.

Hydrologic cycle: The process of evaporation, vertical and horizontal transport of vapour, condensation, precipitation, and the flow of water from continents to oceans. It is a major factor in determining climate through its influence on surface vegetation, the clouds, snow and ice, and soil moisture [1].

Hydrosphere: The Earth's waters, as distinguished from its rocks (lithosphere), it living things (biota), and its air (atmosphere) [3].

Humic substances: Any fraction or substance in or separated from humus [2].

Latent heat: Energy transferred from the Earth's surface to the atmosphere through the evaporation and condensation processes [1].

Layer: A logical separation of mapped information according to theme [4].

Map generalization: The process of reducing detail on a map as a consequence of reducing the map scale. The process can be semi-automated for certain kinds of data, such as topographical features, but requires more insight for thematic maps [4].

Mapping unit: A set of areas drawn on a mp to represent a well-defined feature or set of features. Mapping units are described by the map legend [4].

Mesobiota: See mesofauna [2].

Mesofauna: Nematodes, oligochaete worms, smaller insect larvae, and microarthropods [2].

Metabolism: The sum of all enzyme-mediated chemical conversion pathways characteristic of all autotrophic entities, cells, and organisms (e.g., the means by which energy and organic compounds are made available for use by microorganisms) [3].

Microbiota: Microflora and protozoa [2].

Modelling: An investigative technique that uses a mathematical or physical representation of a system or theory that counts for all or some of its known properties. Models are often used to test the effects of changes in system components on the overall performance of the system [1].

Net Primary Production: The part of the gross primary production (total product of photosynthesis) that remains stored in the producer organisms (primarily green plants) after deducting the amount used during the process of autotrophic respiration. Abbreviated as NPP [1].

Nitrate assimilation: Uptake of nitrogen by living organisms and conversion to cell substrates (e.g., protein) [2].

Nitrification: The oxidation of ammonia (in solution as a salt) to nitrite, often followed by the oxidation of nitrite to nitrate. An aerobic respiratory process characteristic of chemolithotrophs (nitrosofying and nitrifying bacteria) [3].

Nitrogen fixation: Metabolic process characteristic of some bacteria: incorporation of atmospheric nitrogen (N2) into organic nitrogen compounds; requires nitrogenase [3].

NPP: Net Primary Production.

Ozone layer: A region in the upper stratosphere containing high concentrations of ozone (O3), which protects the Earth's surface from harmful solar radiation [3].

Photosynthesis: Metabolic process involving the production of organic compounds from carbon dioxide and a hydrogen donor (e.g., hydrogen sulphide or water) by using light energy capture by chlorophyll [3].

Producer: An autotrophic organism, usually a photosynthesizer, that contributes to the net primary productivity of a community [3].

Q_{10}: Temperature coefficient. The increase in rate of a process (expressed as a multiple of initial rate) produced by raising temperature of 10 °C [6].

Radiatively active gases: Gases that absorb incoming solar radiation or outgoing infrared radiation, thus affecting the vertical temperature profile of the atmosphere. Most frequently being cited as being radiatively active gases are water vapour, CO2, CH4, N2O, chlorofluorocarbons, and ozone [1].

Radiation flux: Amount of radiation impinging on a given surface per unit time [3].

Relational database: A method of structuring data in the form of sets of records or tuples so that relations between different entities can be used for data access and information [4].

Residence time: The size of any specific reservoir or pool of mass (e.g., carbon) divided by the total flux of mass into or out of that pool [1].

Resolution: The smallest spacing between two display elements; the smallest size of feature that can be mapped or sampled [4].

Respiration: A biochemical process by which living organisms take up oxygen from the environment and breakdown organic matter - in plants, the organic matter in photosynthate produced during daylight hours -- , releasing both carbon dioxide and energy [1, 3]. The terminal electron acceptor is inorganic and may be oxygen or (in anaerobic organisms) nitrate, sulphate, or nitrite [3].

Semivariogram: A figure relating the variance of the difference in value of an attribute at pairs of sample points to separation distance [4].

Sensible heat: The excess radiative energy that has passed from the Earth's surface to the atmosphere through advection, conduction and convection processes [1].

Shortwave radiation: The radiation received from the sun and emitted in the spectral wavelengths less than 4 μm. It is also termed "solar radiation" [1].

Stomata: A minute opening bordered by guard cells in the epidermis of leaves and stems through which gases pass [3].

Stratosphere: The region of the upper atmosphere extending from the tropopause (8-15 km altitude) to about 50 km. The thermal structure is determined by its radiation balance and is generally very stable with low humidity [1]. Characterized by relatively uniform temperatures (about -75 °C) and horizontal winds (e.g., jet stream). The base of the stratosphere makes an upper limit to the general turbulence and convective activity of the troposphere [3].

Surface albedo: The fraction of solar radiation incident on the Earth;s surface that is reflected by it. Reflectivity varies with the ground cover, and during the winter month it varies greatly with the amount of snow cover (depth and areal extent). Roughness of terrain, moisture content, solar angle, and angular and spectral distribution of ground-level irradiations are other factors affecting surface albedo [1].

Trace gas: A minor constituent of the atmosphere. The most important trace gases contributing to the greenhouse effect are water vapour, CO2, O3, CH4, NH3, NO, NO2, N2O, ethylene, sulphur dioxide, dichlorofluormethane or Freon 12, thrichlorofluoromethane of Freon 11, methyl chloride, carbon monoxide, and carbon tetrachloride [1].

Topology: The way in which geographical elements are linked together [4].

Tropopause: The boundary between the troposphere and the stratosphere (about 8 km in polar regions and about 15 km in tropical regions), usually characterized by an abrupt change of lapse rate. The regions above the troposphere have higher atmospheric stability than those below. The tropopause marks the vertical limit of most clouds and storms [1].

Troposphere: The inner layer of the atmosphere below about 15 km, within which there is normally a steady decrease of temperature with increasing altitude. Nearly all clouds form and weather conditions manifest themselves within this region, and its thermal structure is caused primarily by the heating of the Earth's surface by solar radiation, followed by heat transfer by turbulent mixing and convection [1].

Vector: A quantity having both magnitude and direction [4].

This glossary was compiled from the following sources:

[1] ORNL 1990. *Glossary: Carbon dioxide and climate*. Env. Sciences Division Publication No. 3532, The Carbon Dioxide Information Analysis Centre, Oak Ridge National Laboratory.

[2] SSSA 1979. *Glossary of soil science terms*. Soil Science Society of America, Madison, Wisconsin.

[3] Rambler, M.B., L. Margulis & R. Fester (eds) 1989. *Global ecology: Towards a science of the biosphere*. Academic Press, Inc., Boston. p. 149-169.

[4] Burrough, P.A. 1986. *Principles of Geographical Information Systems for land resources assessment*. Monographs on Soil and Land Resources Survey No. 12, Clarendon Press, Oxford. p. 177-183.

[5] IPCC 1990. *Climate change: The IPCC scientific assessment*. Edited by J.T. Houghton, G.J. Jenkins & J.J. Ephraums. WMO/UNEP, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge.

[6] Abercombe, M., C.J. Hickman & M.L. Johnson 1973. *A dictionary of biology (6th edition)*. Penguin books, Harmondsworth.